City of Carlsbad
BMP Design Manual

Appendices

January 2, 2024

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Table of Contents

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Appendix

A

CARLSBAD BMP DESIGN MANUAL

Submittal Templates

Appendix A Submittal Templates

The following templates are available on the City's website and were developed to assist the project applicant and the plan reviewer:

A.1 See City's 'Standard Project' requirement checklist (Form E-36)

A.2 See City's SWQMP template (Form E-35)

A.3 See City's Trash Capture SWQMP template (Form E-35A)

Appendix

B

CARLSBAD BMP DESIGN MANUAL

Storm Water Pollutant Control Hydrologic Calculations and Sizing Methods

Jan. 2024

Appendix B Storm Water Pollutant Control Hydrologic Calculations and Sizing Methods

Table of Contents:

B.1 Step 1 – Determine DCV

The first step in performing storm water pollutant control calculations is to calculate the Design Capture Volume (DCV). The DCV represents the volume of storm water runoff that must be retained and/or biofiltered in order to satisfy pollutant control requirements. The DCV can be calculated through use of automated Worksheet B.1 depicted on the following page or can be calculated manually by following Steps 1A through 1D presented in this section.

$$DCV = \frac{D}{12}\ x\ A\ x\ C - R$$

<u>Where:</u>

DCV: Design Capture Volume (ft^3)
D: Rainfall Depth (inches), refer to section B.1.1.
A: Tributary Area (ft^2), refer to Section B.1.2.
C: Runoff Factor (unitless), refer to section B.1.3.
R: Site Design Volume Reductions (ft^3), refer to Section B.1.4.

Worksheet B.1 Calculation of Design Capture Volume

Category	#	Description	*i*	Units
Standard Drainage Basin Inputs	1	Drainage Basin ID or Name		unitless
	2	85th Percentile 24-hr Storm Depth		inches
	3	Impervious Surfaces Not Directed to Dispersion Area (C=0.90)		sq-ft
	4	Semi-Pervious Surfaces Not Serving as Dispersion Area (C=0.30)		sq-ft
	5	Engineered Pervious Surfaces Not Serving as Dispersion Area (C=0.10)		sq-ft
	6	Natural Type A Soil Not Serving as Dispersion Area (C=0.10)		sq-ft
	7	Natural Type B Soil Not Serving as Dispersion Area (C=0.14)		sq-ft
	8	Natural Type C Soil Not Serving as Dispersion Area (C=0.23)		sq-ft
	9	Natural Type D Soil Not Serving as Dispersion Area (C=0.30)		sq-ft
Dispersion Area, Tree Well & Rain Barrel Inputs (Optional)	10	Does Tributary Incorporate Dispersion, Tree Wells, and/or Rain Barrels?		yes/no
	11	Impervious Surfaces **Directed to Dispersion Area** per SD-B (Ci=0.90)		sq-ft
	12	Semi-Pervious Surfaces **Serving as Dispersion Area** per SD-B (Ci=0.30)		sq-ft
	13	Engineered Pervious Surfaces **Serving as Dispersion Area** per SD-B (Ci=0.10)		sq-ft
	14	Natural Type A Soil **Serving as Dispersion Area** per SD-B (Ci=0.10)		sq-ft
	15	Natural Type B Soil **Serving as Dispersion Area** per SD-B (Ci=0.14)		sq-ft
	16	Natural Type C Soil **Serving as Dispersion Area** per SD-B (Ci=0.23)		sq-ft
	17	Natural Type D Soil **Serving as Dispersion Area** per SD-B (Ci=0.30)		sq-ft
	18	Number of Tree Wells Proposed per SD-A		#
	19	Average Mature Tree Canopy Diameter		ft
	20	Number of Rain Barrels Proposed per SD-E		#
	21	Average Rain Barrel Size		gal
Initial Runoff Factor Calculation	22	Total Tributary Area		sq-ft
	23	Initial Runoff Factor for Standard Drainage Areas		unitless
	24	Initial Runoff Factor for Dispersed & Dispersion Areas		unitless
	25	Initial Weighted Runoff Factor		unitless
	26	Initial Design Capture Volume		cubic-feet
Dispersion Area Adjustments	27	Total Impervious Area Dispersed to Pervious Surface		sq-ft
	28	Total Pervious Dispersion Area		sq-ft
	29	Ratio of Dispersed Impervious Area to Pervious Dispersion Area		ratio
	30	Adjustment Factor for Dispersed & Dispersion Areas		ratio
	31	Runoff Factor After Dispersion Techniques		unitless
	32	Design Capture Volume After Dispersion Techniques		cubic-feet
Tree & Barrel Adjustments	33	Total Tree Well Volume Reduction		cubic-feet
	34	Total Rain Barrel Volume Reduction		cubic-feet
Results	35	Final Adjusted Runoff Factor		unitless
	36	Final Effective Tributary Area		sq-ft
	37	Initial Design Capture Volume Retained by Site Design Elements		cubic-feet
	38	Final Design Capture Volume Tributary to BMP		cubic-feet

Worksheet B.1 Line Item Notes
1. User Input from stormwater plans.
2. User input from BMPDM Figure B.1-1.
3. User Input from stormwater plans.
4. User Input from stormwater plans.
5. User Input from stormwater plans.
6. User Input from stormwater plans.
7. User Input from stormwater plans.
8. User Input from stormwater plans.
9. User Input from stormwater plans.
10. User Input. Default is "No". Select Yes if any of the referenced elements are proposed.
11. User Input from stormwater plans. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-B.
12. User Input from stormwater plans. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-B.
13. User Input from stormwater plans. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-B.
14. User Input from stormwater plans. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-B.
15. User Input from stormwater plans. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-B.
16. User Input from stormwater plans. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-B.
17. User Input from stormwater plans. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-B.
18. User Input. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-A.
19. User Input. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-A. Acceptable range from 0-30 feet.
20. User Input. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-E. Cannot provide more than a 25% reduction to initial DCV.
21. User Input. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-E. Acceptable range 0-100 gallons for generic volume reductions.
22. Sum of Lines 3 through 17.
23. [0.9(Line 3) + 0.3(Line 4 + Line 9) + 0.1(Line 5 + Line 6) + 0.14(Line 7) + 0.23(Line 8)] /(Sum of Lines 3 through Line 9)
24. [0.9(Line 11) + 0.3(Line 12 + Line 17) + 0.1(Line 13 + Line 14) + 0.14(Line 15) + 0.23(Line 16)] /(Sum of Lines 11 through Line 17)
25. [(Line 23 x (Sum of Lines 3 through 9) + Line 24 x (Sum of Lines 11 through 17)) / Line 22]
26. (Line 2/12) x Line 22 x Line 25
27. Line 11
28. Summation of Lines 12-17.
29. [Line 27 / Line 28]. If greater than 4.0 dispersion benefits are not quantified.
30. Lookup values from Table B.1-1 weighted with respect to distribution of dispersion areas specified in Lines 12-17.
31. [Line 23 x (Sum of Lines 3 through Line 9) + Line 24 x Line 30 x (Sum of Lines 11 through Line 17)] / Line 22
32. (Line 2/12) x Line 22 x Line 31
33. [Line 18 x Lookup value from Section B.1.4 of BMP Design Manual]
34. [Line 20 x Line 21/7.48]. If Line 21>100 or Line 10 is "n/a" or "no", then this value must be zero.
35. Line 31 x [1 - ((Line 33 + Line 34)/(Line 32))]. Value must be between zero and one.
36. Line 22 x Line 35
37. [(Line 26 - Line 32) + Line 33 + Line 34]
38. [Line 26 - Line 37]. Minimum result of 0.

B.1.1 Step 1A – Rainfall Depth

The rainfall depth (D) used to calculate the DCV is determined through examination of the 85th percentile, 24-hour isopluvial map provided in Figure B.1-1. The isopluvial map represents rainfall depths as blue line work provided at 0.02" intervals. Appropriate rainfall depths should be determined by plotting the project location on the map, examining adjacent rainfall depths, and interpolating an appropriate depth to the nearest hundredth of an inch (i.e. 0.71 inch). GIS versions of the map are also available on the County of San Diego website.

B.1.2 Step 1B – Tributary Area

Determine the total tributary area through evaluation of the drainage area delineations performed as outlined in Section 3. These areas will be analyzed in additional detail in Step 1C below.

B.1.3 Step 1C – Runoff Factor

Runoff factors (C) represent the ratio of storm water runoff over rainfall that is anticipated for a particular surface type. Impervious surfaces typically have high runoff factors (0.90) as nearly all rainfall is converted into runoff. Pervious surfaces typically have low runoff factors (0.10) as much of the rainfall is retained in natural surface features. Applicants should evaluate all of the surface coverages within a drainage area and assign runoff factors consistent with the values in Table B.1-1.

Table B.1-1: Runoff factors for surfaces draining to BMPs – Pollutant Control BMPs

Category	Surface Type	Runoff Factor (C)
Impervious Surfaces	Roofs, Concrete, Asphalt, Unit Pavers (grouted)	0.90
Semi-Pervious Surfaces	Decomposed Granite, Cobbles, Crushed Aggregate, Compacted soil (unpaved parking)	0.30
Engineered Pervious Surfaces	Green Roofs per SD-C Permeable Pavement per SD-D, Amended Soils per SD-F, Landscaped/Mulched Soils Permeable Pavement per INF-3	0.10
Natural Pervious Surfaces	Type A Soil	0.10
	Type B Soil	0.14
	Type C Soil	0.23
	Type D Soil	0.30
Dispersion Areas	Areas routed to or serving as a dispersion area per SD-B	See Dispersion Area

Category	Surface Type	Runoff Factor (C)
		Text Below

If a drainage area is comprised of more than one surface type, an area-weighted runoff factor must be calculated per the following equation where C represents the runoff coefficient and A represents the area of each surface.

$$C_{area-weighted} = \frac{\sum C_{surface\ 1}\ A_{surface\ 1} + C_{surface\ 2}\ A_{surface\ 2} + C_{surface\ x} A_{surface\ x}}{\sum A_{all\ surfaces}}$$

<u>Dispersion Area Runoff Factor Adjustments</u>

Adjustment to runoff factors may be permitted when storm water runoff from impervious surfaces is dispersed through pervious dispersion areas in accordance with the SD-B fact sheet located in Appendix E.

Runoff factor adjustments may be applied to drainage areas with a 4:1 maximum ratio of impervious to pervious area. In order to be eligible for runoff factor adjustments, impervious areas must have a runoff factor of 0.90 and must be directed towards a pervious dispersion area with a runoff factor of 0.30 or less.

Table B.1-2 presents runoff factor adjustments as a function of the ratio of impervious to pervious area and the hydrologic soil group of the pervious dispersion area. Applicants applying runoff factor adjustments must identify appropriate factors in the table below and multiply that factor by the original composite runoff factor of the impervious area and the dispersion area.

Table B.1-2: Impervious area adjustment factors that account for dispersion

Characteristics of Pervious Area	Ratio = Impervious area/Pervious area			
	<=1	2	3	4
Type A or Amended Soils	0.00	0.00	0.21	0.32
Type B Soils	0.00	0.24	0.38	0.48
Type C Soils	0.31	0.50	0.60	0.67
Type D Soils	0.77	0.84	0.87	0.90

When using adjustment factors from Table B.1-2:

a) The underlying soil group need not be considered if amended soils implemented per SD-F.

b) Linear interpolation must be performed if the impervious to pervious area ratio of the site is in between one of ratios for which an adjustment factor was developed;

c) Use adjustment factor for a ratio of 1 when the impervious to pervious area ratio is less than 1

B.1.4 Step 1D - Site Design Volume Reductions

Site design volume reductions (R) account for the effects of incorporating non-structural BMPs such as tree wells and rain barrels into the site design. Effective use of these site design elements can significantly reduce and/or completely eliminate the DCV requiring treatment through structural BMP strategies. Note that tree wells may be used to eliminate the DCV requiring treatment and thereby fully satisfy pollutant control requirements when designed as significant site design BMPs (SSD-BMPs). Refer to Appendix I for sizing methods and criteria to use tree wells as SSD-BMPs.

Tree wells designed per the SD-A fact sheet provide the following volume reductions to the DCV. The maximum volume reduction for any individual tree is 420 cubic feet.

Table B.1-3: Tree Well Volume Reductions

Mature Tree Canopy Diameter (ft)	Volume Reduction (cubic feet/tree)
0	0
5	10
10	40
15	100
20	180
25	290
30	420

Rain barrels designed per SD-E fact sheet can also provide limited volume reductions to the DCV. The effects of rain barrels are typically less substantial than tree wells and are subject to the following restrictions: 1) individual rain barrel volumes are no greater than 100 gallons, 2) the total rain barrel volume is no greater than 0.25 DCV, and 3) the site must have landscape areas of at least 30% of the project footprint. If the proposed rain barrels do not meet these criteria, design volume reductions may still be achieved through Cistern criteria presented in fact sheet HU-1.

Table B.1-4: Rain Barrel Volume Reductions

Rain Barrel Size (gallon)	Volume Reduction (cubic feet)
0	0.0
20	2.7
40	5.3
60	8.0
80	10.7
100	13.4

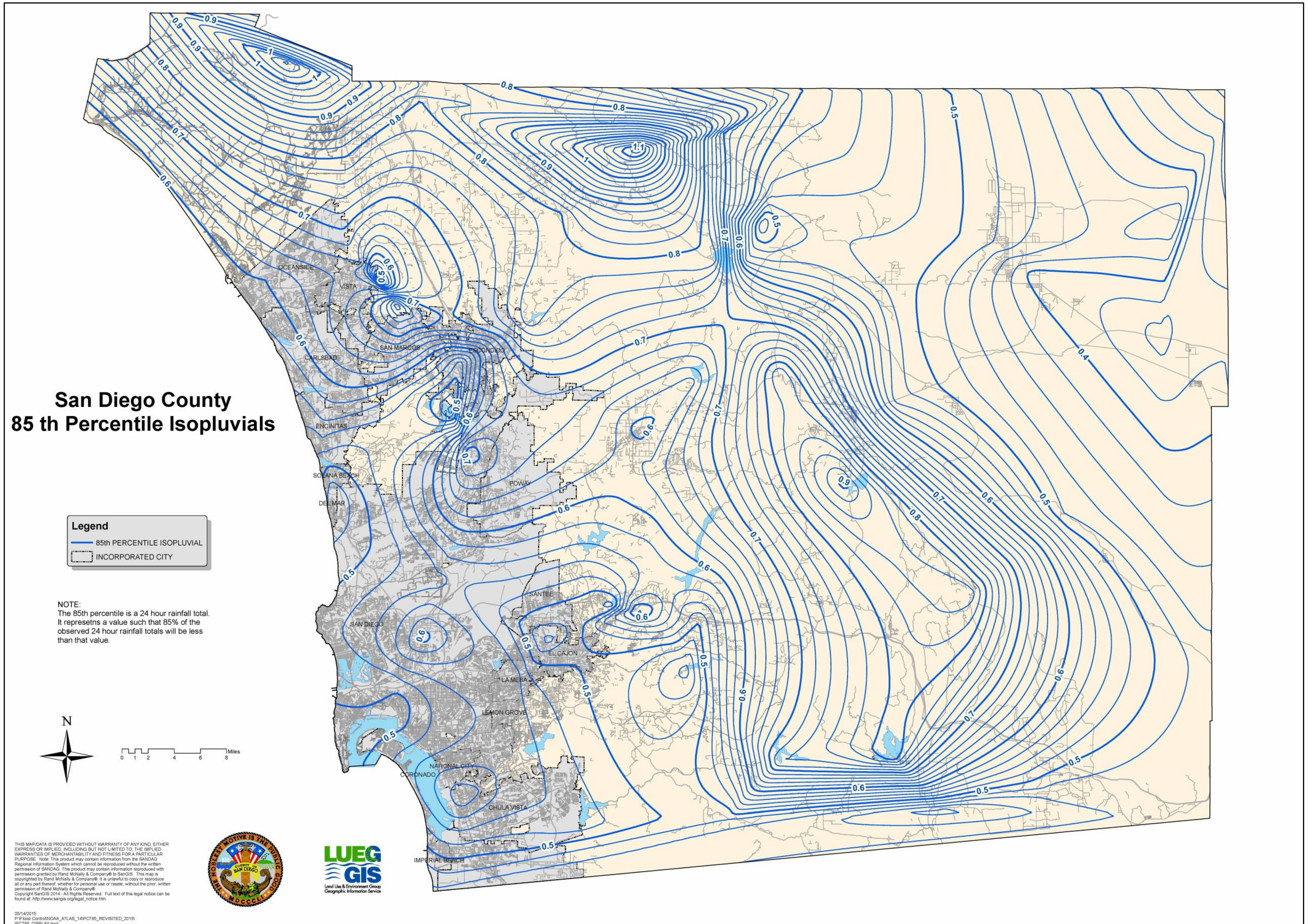


Figure B.1-1: 85th Percentile 24-hour Isopluvial Map

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

B.2 Step 2 – Determine Retention Requirements

The second step in performing storm water pollutant control calculations is to determine the retention requirements for each drainage area. Retention is intercepted storm water that is stored for harvest and use, infiltrated into native ground, evaporated, or utilized by vegetation through evapotranspiration. Retention requirements can be calculated through use of the automated Worksheet B.2 depicted below, or can be calculated manually by following Steps 2A through 2D presented in this section.

Worksheet B.2 Retention Requirements

Category	#	Description	*i*	Units
Basic Analysis	1	Drainage Basin ID or Name		uniless
	2	85th Percentile Rainfall Depth		inches
	3	Predominant NRCS Soil Type Within BMP Location		unitless
	4	Is proposed BMP location Restricted or Unrestricted for Infiltration Activities?		unitless
	5	Nature of Restriction		unitless
	6	Do Minimum Retention Requirements Apply to this Project?		yes/no
	7	Are Habitable Structures Greater than 9 Stories Proposed?		yes/no
Advanced Analysis	8	Has Geotechnical Engineer Performed an Infiltration Analysis?		yes/no
	9	Design Infiltration Rate Recommended by Geotechnical Engineer		in/hr
Result	10	Design Infiltration Rate Used To Determine Retention Requirements		in/hr
	11	Percent of Average Annual Runoff that Must be Retained within DMA		percentage
	12	Fraction of DCV Requiring Retention		ratio
	13	Required Retention Volume		cubic-feet

Worksheet B.2 Line Item Notes
1. User input from stormwater plans.
2. User input from BMPDM Figure B.1-1.
3. User input from stormwater plans.
4. User input from BMPDM Section B.2.2.
5. User input from BMPDM Section B.2.2.
6. Default value of "Yes" for Priority Development Projects.
7. User input from BMPDM Section B.2.1. If "Yes", separate capture and use evaluation must be provided.
8. User input from BMPDM Section B.2.3. If "Yes", geotechnical report excerpts must be provided.
9. User input from BMPDM Section B.2.3.
10. Rates of 0.300, 0.200, 0.100, 0.025, or 0.000 for A, B, C, D, or Restricted soils respectively. Or rate from Geotechnical Engineer.
11. Determined Per BMPDM Section B.2.4.
12. Determined Per BMPDM Section B.2.4.
13. Determined Per BMPDM Section B.2.4.

B.2.1 Step 2A – Capture and Use Analysis

Projects that do not propose habitable structures over 9 stories tall may skip this step (proceed to Step 2B).

Projects that propose habitable structures over 9 stories tall are required to perform a capture and use analysis to identify whether the DCV from the project site can be utilized for onsite toilet flushing and/or irrigation within 36 hours of the storm. If the results indicate capture and use is possible, then the project is required to implement capture and use. Guidance for performing this analysis is provided in B.3.8.

B.2.2 Step 2B – Infiltration Restrictions

The SWQMP Preparer is responsible for evaluating the infiltration restrictions in Table B.2-1 below and characterizing each drainage area as Restricted or Unrestricted for infiltration.

Restriction elements are divided into Mandatory Considerations and Optional Considerations. Mandatory Considerations include elements that may pose a significant risk to human health and safety. These elements must always be evaluated and discretion regarding the setbacks is not permitted. Optional Considerations include elements that are not necessarily associated with human health and safety, so analysis is not mandated through this guidance document.

Analysis of these elements is outside of the scope of typical geotechnical engineering investigations; therefore, it is the responsibility of the SWQMP Preparer to perform this evaluation. If a geotechnical engineer is consulted to complete this portion of the analysis, additional discretion on the mandatory considerations may be permitted if supported by the geotechnical reporting.

The following table summarizes public data sources available for the infiltration restriction analysis.

Table B.2-1: Public Data Sources for Infiltration Restriction Analysis

Resources	Description
Geotracker	**Website:** geotracker.waterboards.ca.gov **Reference Layers:** Groundwater Depths, Contaminated Sites/Soils
SANGIS	**Website:** sangis.org **Reference Layers:** Gas Stations, Wells, Groundwater Basins, Flowlines, Liquefaction, Soils, Steep Slopes, Sewer, Topography, Elevation Grids
Web Soil Survey (NRCS Soil Type)	**Website:** websoilsurvey.sc.egov.usda.gov/App **Reference Layers:** Hydrologic Soil Group, Map Unit Names
Watershed Management Area Analysis	**Website:** projectcleanwater.org/watershed-management-area-analysis-wmaa **Reference Layers:** Electronic Data from Appendix C of WMAA
City Records System	**Website:** http://edocs.carlsbadca.gov/ **Reference Layers:** Grading Plans, Surveys, Drainage Plans, Topography Maps
Applicant Plans	**Website:** n/a **Reference Layers:** Utility Plans, Grading Plans, Existing Site Conditions, Proposed Site Conditions, Nearby geotechnical reports.
Geotechnical Engineer	**Website:** n/a **Reference Layers:** At discretion of Geotechnical Engineer

B.2.3 Step 2C – Design Infiltration Rate

The design infiltration rate for each drainage area must be determined through either a basic or advanced analysis. The basic analysis allows the SWQMP Preparer to assign a default design infiltration rate based on the predominant NRCS soil type present within the proposed BMP footprint. The advanced analysis allows for a geotechnical engineer to assign a more specific design infiltration rate based on field testing outlined in Appendix D. Table B.2-3 below identifies the design infiltration rates that can be used for each analysis. Please note that the basic analysis is not permitted for BMPs that lack an underdrain.

Table B.2-2: Design Infiltration Rate

Infiltration Restrictions	Design Infiltration Rate (in/hr)	
	Option 1: Basic Analysis	Option 2: Advanced Analysis
Unrestricted	Type A Soil = 0.300	Rate recommended by geotechnical engineer (Reference Appendix D)
Unrestricted	Type B Soil = 0.200	
Unrestricted	Type C Soil = 0.100	
Unrestricted	Type D Soil = 0.025	
Restricted	Any Soil = 0.000	0.000

B.2.4 Step 2D - Retention Requirements

Using information determined in previous steps, the retention requirements for each drainage area can now be determined. Retention requirements can be expressed as a function of the DCV or as a percentage of annual runoff that must be retained within the drainage area.

Part 1) Using Figure B.2-1, locate the applicable Design Infiltration Rate (determined in Step 2A) along the x-axis. Trace vertically from the x-axis result to the intersect with the plot representing the project's 85th Percentile Rainfall Depth (determined in Step 1A).

> Note: Data presented in Figure B.2-1 represents ranges of rainfall depth. Users should choose the range that includes their specific rainfall depth rather than interpolating or extrapolating discrete values between the plotted lines.

Part 2) Trace horizontally from the intersect result to the right hand y-axis to identify the fraction of the DCV that must be retained to satisfy retention requirements (F).

> Note: Retention requirements can also be expressed as a fraction of annual runoff by tracing horizontally from the intersect result to the left hand y-axis. This method is appropriate if the proposed retention elements have drawdown times significantly different than 36-hours.

Part 3) Determine the total volume required to be retained for the drainage as follows.

$$V_{REQ} = DCV \ x \ F_{DCV}$$

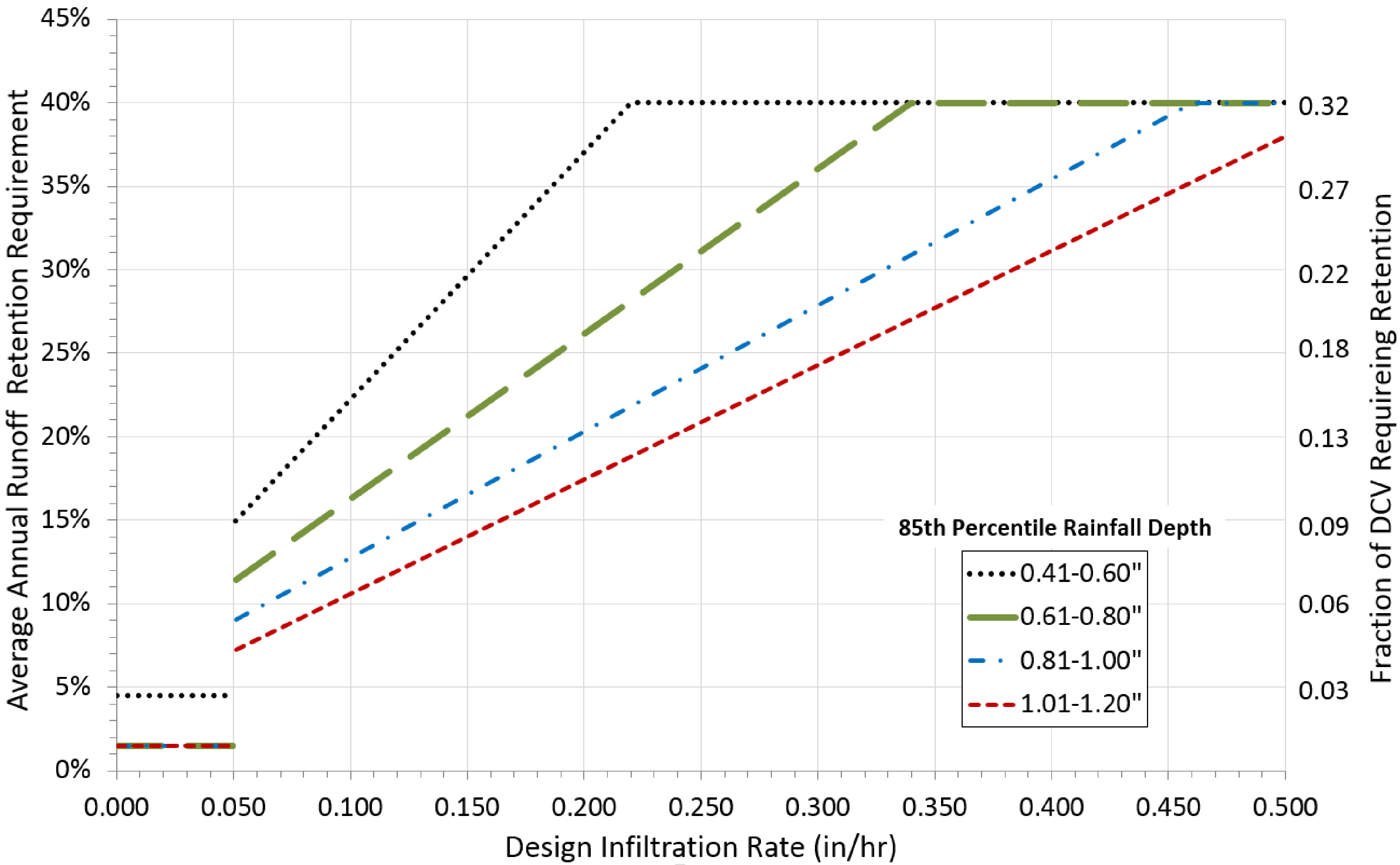
<u>Where:</u>
V_{REQ}: Total volume that must be retained within the drainage area (ft^3)
DCV: Design capture volume (ft^3)
F_{DCV}: Fraction of DCV requiring retention (unitless)

If a proprietary Biofiltration has a smaller BMP footprint, it cannot meet the retention requirements within the biofiltration area alone and must meet the retention requirements with other site design

BMPs, such as rain barrels or tree wells within the DMA of the proprietary BMP. In addition to the retention requirements above the proprietary biofiltration facility must meet all the criteria in Appendix F.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Figure B.2-1: Retention Requirements



Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes.

B.3 Step 3 – Determine BMP Performance

The third step in performing stormwater pollutant control calculations is to design a structural BMP with the characteristics that provide stormwater treatment for the DCV and meet the minimum retention requirements for the drainage area. Demonstration of appropriate BMP design can be calculated through use of automated Worksheet B.3 on the next page, or can be calculated manually by following Steps 3A through 3E presented in this section.

Worksheet B.3: BMP Performance

Category	#	Description	*i*	Units
BMP Inputs	1	Drainage Basin ID or Name		sq-ft
	2	Design Infiltration Rate Recommended		in/hr
	3	Design Capture Volume Tributary to BMP		cubic-feet
	4	Is BMP Vegetated or Unvegetated?		unitless
	5	Is BMP Impermeably Lined or Unlined?		unitless
	6	Does BMP Have an Underdrain?		unitless
	7	Does BMP Utilize Standard or Specialized Media?		unitless
	8	Provided Surface Area		sq-ft
	9	Provided Surface Ponding Depth		inches
	10	Provided Soil Media Thickness		inches
	11	Provided Gravel Thickness (Total Thickness)		inches
	12	Underdrain Offset		inches
	13	Diameter of Underdrain or Hydromod Orifice (Select Smallest)		inches
	14	Specialized Soil Media Filtration Rate		in/hr
	15	Specialized Soil Media Pore Space for Retention		unitless
	16	Specialized Soil Media Pore Space for Biofiltration		unitless
	17	Specialized Gravel Media Pore Space		unitless
Retention Calculations	18	Volume Infiltrated Over 6 Hour Storm		cubic-feet
	19	Ponding Pore Space Available for Retention		unitless
	20	Soil Media Pore Space Available for Retention		unitless
	21	Gravel Pore Space Available for Retention (Above Underdrain)		unitless
	22	Gravel Pore Space Available for Retention (Below Underdrain)		unitless
	23	Effective Retention Depth		inches
	24	Fraction of DCV Retained (Independent of Drawdown Time)		ratio
	25	Calculated Retention Storage Drawdown Time		hours
	26	Efficacy of Retention Processes		ratio
	27	Volume Retained by BMP (Considering Drawdown Time)		ratio
	28	Design Capture Volume Remaining for Biofiltration		cubic-feet
Biofiltration Calculations	29	Max Hydromod Flow Rate through Underdrain		CFS
	30	Max Soil Filtration Rate Allowed by Underdrain Orifice		in/hr
	31	Soil Media Filtration Rate per Specifications		in/hr
	32	Soil Media Filtration Rate to be used for Sizing		in/hr
	33	Depth Biofiltered Over 6 Hour Storm		inches
	34	Ponding Pore Space Available for Biofiltration		unitless
	35	Soil Media Pore Space Available for Biofiltration		unitless
	36	Gravel Pore Space Available for Biofiltration (Above Underdrain)		unitless
	37	Effective Depth of Biofiltration Storage		inches
	38	Drawdown Time for Surface Ponding		hours
	39	Drawdown Time for Effective Biofiltration Depth		hours
	40	Total Depth Biofiltered		inches
	41	Option 1 - Biofilter 1.50 DCV: Target Volume		cubic-feet
	42	Option 1 - Provided Biofiltration Volume		cubic-feet
	43	Option 2 - Store 0.75 DCV: Target Volume		cubic-feet
	44	Option 2 - Provided Storage Volume		cubic-feet
	45	Portion of Biofiltration Performance Standard Satisfied		ratio
Result	46	Do Site Design Elements and BMPs Satisfy Annual Retention Requirements?		yes/no
	47	Overall Portion of Performance Standard Satisfied (BMP Efficacy Factor)		ratio
	48	**Deficit of Effectively Treated Stormwater**		cubic-feet

Worksheet B.3 Line Item Notes
1. Populated per user input from Worksheet B.1.
2. Populated per user input from Worksheet B.1.
3. Populated per result of Worksheet B.1.
4. User input. Unvegetated may be permitted in full infiltration conditions and/or Green Infrastructure Projects.
5. User input in reference to the bottom of the BMP.
6. User input.
7. User input. Default is "Standard" If specialized media is proposed, refer to BMPDM Sections F.1 - F.3 for guidance.
8. User input.
9. User input.
10. User input, 18 inches minimum.
11. User input. Value represents the total gravel thickness above and below the underdrain.
12. User input. Offset represents the distance between the bottom of the gravel layer to the invert of the underdrain.
13. User input. Select underdrain diameter or hydromod orifice diameter, whatever is smallest.
14. User input. If specialized media is proposed, refer to BMPDM Sections F.1 - F.3 for guidance.
15. User input. If specialized media is proposed, refer to BMPDM Sections F.1 - F.3 for guidance.
16. User input. If specialized media is proposed, refer to BMPDM Sections F.1 - F.3 for guidance.
17. User input. If specialized media is proposed, refer to BMPDM Sections F.1 - F.3 for guidance.
18. For unlined BMPs: Minimum of Line 3 or [Line 8 x (Line 2/12) x 6.00]. For Lined BMPs use zero.
19. Populated per Table B.3-1 of BMPDM. Values vary with respect to BMP elements such as vegetation, underdrain, liners.
20. Populated per Table B.3-1 of BMPDM. Values vary with respect to BMP elements such as vegetation, underdrain, liners.
21. Populated per Table B.3-1 of BMPDM. Values vary with respect to BMP elements such as vegetation, underdrain, liners.
22. Populated per Table B.3-1 of BMPDM. Values vary with respect to BMP elements such as vegetation, underdrain, liners.
23. (Line 9 x Line 19) + (Line 10 x Line 20) + ((Line 11-Line12) x Line 21) + (Line 12 x Line 22)
24. [(Line 23/12) x Line 8 + Line 18 / Line 3]. Maximum value of 1.
25. [Line 23 / Line 2]. Assume 120 hours for all lined biofiltration BMPs.
26. Look up value from Retention Percent Capture Curves, and divide by 0.80. Maximum of 1.00.
27. Line 26 x Line 3
28. Line 3 - Line 27
29. If flow controls are provided, calculate per orifice equation: $Q=CA\sqrt{2gh}$
30. If flow controls are provided, calculate as [(Line 29 x 12 x 3600)/Line 8]
31. Default = 5.00. If specialized media is proposed, refer to BMPDM Section Sections F.1 - F.3 for guidance.
32. Minimum of Line 30 or Line 31
33. [Line 32 x 6]
34. Populated per Table B.3-2 of BMPDM. Values vary with respect to BMP elements such as vegetation, underdrain, liners.
35. Populated per Table B.3-2 of BMPDM. Values vary with respect to BMP elements such as vegetation, underdrain, liners.
36. Populated per Table B.3-2 of BMPDM. Values vary with respect to BMP elements such as vegetation, underdrain, liners.
37. [(Line 9 x Line 34) + (Line 10 x Line 35) + ((Line 11 - Line 12) x Line 36))]
38. For lined basins use [Line 9/Line 32]. For unlined basins use [Line 9/(Line 32 + Line 2)]
39. For lined basins use [Line 37/Line 32]. For unlined basins use [Line 37/(Line 32 + Line 2)]
40. [Line 33 + Line 37]
41. [1.50 x Line 28]
42. [Minimum of Line 41 or ((Line 40/12) x Line 8))]
43. [0.75 x Line 28]
44. [Minimum of Line 43 or [(Line 37/12) x Line 8]]
45. [Maximum of (Line 42/Line 41) or (Line 44/Line 43)]
46. Yes/No. Determined per BMPDM Section B.3.5.
47. [Line 26 + Line 45]. Maximum of 1.00.
48. [Line 47 x Line 3] - Line 3

B.3.1 Step 3A – BMP Characteristics

The performance of a BMP is a function of its retention and biofiltration processes, which are directly related to the proposed BMP geometry and design components. The SWQMP Preparer should design the BMP characteristics summarized below to satisfy pollutant control performances standards for treatment of the DCV and minimum retention requirements.

- BMP geometries identify the area and depth over which retention and/or biofiltration processes occur. Critical BMP geometries include: BMP surface area, surface ponding depth, biofiltration soil media depth (including depth of mulch), gravel depth (including depth of filter course), underdrain depth, and underdrain diameter.

- BMP components dictate how retention and biofiltration processes occur over the BMP footprint. Critical BMP components include: vegetation vs no vegetation, standard biofiltration soil media vs non-standard biofiltration soil media, impermeable liner vs no impermeable liner, underdrain vs no underdrain, and design infiltration rates.

The most common BMPs proposed for storm water compliance are infiltration BMPs, bioretention BMPs, and biofiltration BMPs. By default, these BMPs must be sized to provide a surface area that is equal to at least 3% of the tributary area multiplied by the weighted run-off coefficient. Increased maintenance frequency does not provide justification to reduce the area under 3%.

B.3.2 Step 3B – Retention Processes

BMP retention processes include infiltration and evapotranspiration occurring within the BMP. This section presents how to calculate the retention processes.

Part 1) Determine the volume of infiltration occurring within the BMP during a 6 hour storm event. This volume is a function of the design infiltration rate, BMP surface area, and duration of the storm event as shown below.

$$V_{R6} = \frac{I}{12} x\ B\ x\ 6\ hours$$

Where:
V_{R6}: Volume infiltrated during a 6 hour storm event (ft^3)
I: Design infiltration rate (in/hr)
B: BMP surface area (ft^2)

Part 2) Determine the static retention capacity of the BMP assuming it is entirely full. This volume is a function of the BMP surface area and the effective retention depth as shown below.

$$V_{RS} = B\ x\ E_D$$

Where:
V_{RS}: Static retention capacity of the BMP (ft^3)
B: BMP surface area (ft^2)
E_D: The effective retention depth within all layers of the BMP (ft). This depth is calculated by multiplying the geometric depth (ft) of each BMP layer by the appropriate retention pore space factor in Table B.3-1 below and summing all of the layers.

Table B.3-1: Retention Pore Space Factors

BMP Characteristics	Unlined BMPs Without Underdrain	All Other Biofiltration/Retention BMPs
Ponding Pore Space	1.00	0.00
Media Pore Space	0.25 vegetated 0.40 non-vegetated	0.05
Gravel Pore Space Above Underdrain	0.40	0.00
Gravel Pore Space Below Underdrain	n/a	0.40*

*BMPs with an impermeable liner, must provide 3" of gravel beneath the underdrain invert (no more or no less is permitted in this case).

Part 3) Determine the fraction of the DCV retained by the BMP. This value is a function of the DCV, volume infiltrated during the 6 hour storm event, and static retention capacity of the BMP as shown below.

$$F_{DCV} = \frac{V_{R6} + V_{RS}}{DCV}$$

Where:
F_{DCV}: Fraction of the DCV retained by the BMP (decimal)
V_{R6}: Volume infiltrated during a 6 hour storm event (ft^3)
V_{RS}: Static retention capacity of the BMP (ft^3)
DCV: Design Capture Volume (ft^3)

Part 4) Determine the drawdown time for the effective retention depth. This value is a function of the effective retention depth and the design infiltration rate of the BMP as shown below.

$$T_R = \frac{E_D}{I/12}$$

Where:
T_R: Drawdown time for effective retention depth (hrs)
E_D: The effective retention depth within all layers of the BMP (ft).

I: Design infiltration rate (in/hr). If this rate is 0.000 (i.e. lined BMP), a 120 hour drawdown time for the effective retention depth may be assumed.

Part 5) Determine the average annual percent capture provided by the BMP using Figure B.3-1.

a) Identify the fraction of the DCV retained by the BMP (F_{DCV}) on the x axis.
b) Trace vertically from the x-axis result to the intersect with the plot representing the drawdown time for the effective retention depth (T_R). Interpolation between the plotted drawdown times may be necessary.
c) Trace horizontally from the intersect result to identify the average annual percent capture of the proposed BMP.

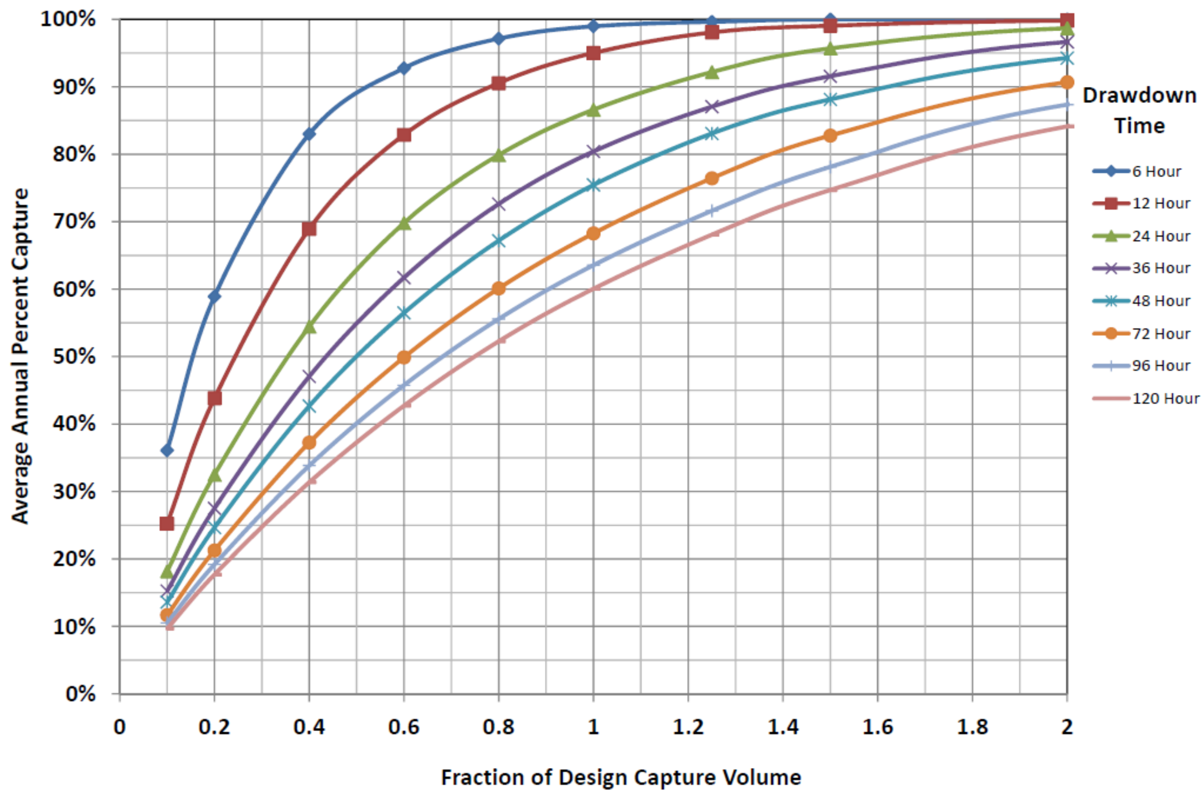


Figure B.3-1: Percent Capture Nomograph

Part 6) Determine the efficacy of the retention processes provided by the BMP. This value represents the portion of the pollutant control performance standard that is satisfied through retention processes of the BMP and is calculated as follows.

$$E_R = \frac{P_C}{80\%}$$

<u>Where:</u>
E_R: Efficacy of retention processes (decimal)
P_C: Average Annual Percent Capture (%)

Part 7) Determine the total volume retained by the proposed BMP.

$$V_{RBMP} = \text{DCV x } E_R$$

<u>Where:</u>
V_{RBMP}: Total volume retained by BMP (ft^3)
DCV: Design capture volume (ft^3)
E_R: Efficacy of retention processes (decimal)

Part 8) Determine the volume of storm water runoff still available for biofiltration treatment as shown below. If the entire volume is retained, then consideration of biofiltration processes in the next step are not required.

$$V_A = \text{DCV} - V_{RBMP}$$

<u>Where:</u>
V_A: Volume of storm water runoff still available for biofiltration treatment (ft^3)
DCV: Design capture volume (ft^3)
V_{RBMP}: Total volume retained by BMP (ft^3)

B.3.3 Step 3C – Biofiltration Processes

Any portion of the DCV that has not been retained within site design or structural BMP elements must be biofiltered. BMP biofiltration processes include filtration, sedimentation, sorption, biochemical processes and/or vegetative uptake. This section presents how to calculate the biofiltration processes occurring within the proposed BMP.

Part 1) Determine the filtration rate (in/hr) of the proposed BMP. This is the rate in which storm water biofilters through the BMP and exits through the underdrain. Filtration rates can be governed by characteristics of the biofiltration soil media or by flow restrictions experienced due to the design of the BMP underdrain/orifice. Applicants must evaluate the rates associated with each of these components per the equations below and then <u>select the lowest filtration rate</u> for use in determining the BMP performance.

$$F_{underdrain} = \left(43{,}200 C A_0 \sqrt{2GH}\right)/B$$

$$F_{soil} = 5\ in/hr$$

$$F_{BMP} = Minimum\ (F_{underdrain,}\ F_{soil})$$

<u>Where:</u>
$F_{underdrain}$: The filtration rate (in/hr) accommodated by the proposed BMP underdrain/orifice.
C: Orifice Coefficient (default 0.60)
A_o: Area of Underdrain/Orifice (ft^2)
G: Gravitational acceleration (32.2 ft/sec^2)

H: Height of water from underdrain invert to top of surface ponding (ft)
B: BMP Surface Area (ft^2)
F_{soil}: The filtration rate (in/hr) accommodated by the proposed biofiltration soil media in typical conditions. The default soil media filtration rate is 5 in/hr; however, a higher rate may be used if supported per criteria in Section F.2.
F_{BMP}: The filtration rate (in/hr) of the proposed BMP

Part 2) Determine the volume of biofiltration occurring within the BMP during a 6 hour storm event. This volume is a function of the BMP filtration rate, BMP surface area, and the rainfall duration as shown below.

$$V_{B6} = \frac{F_{BMP}}{12}\ x\ B\ x\ 6\ hours$$

Where:
V_{B6}: Volume of water (ft^3) biofiltered during a 6 hour storm event.
F_{BMP}: Filtration rate (in/hr) of the proposed BMP.
B: BMP surface area (ft^2)

Part 3) Determine the static biofiltration capacity of the BMP assuming it is entirely full. This volume is a function of the BMP surface area and the effective biofiltration depth as shown below.

$$V_{BS} = B\ x\ E_{DB}$$

<u>Where:</u>
V_{BS}: Static biofiltration capacity of the BMP (ft^3)
B: BMP surface area (ft^2)
E_{DB}: The effective <u>biofiltration</u> depth within all layers of the BMP (ft). This depth is calculated by multiplying the geometric depth (ft) of each BMP layer by the appropriate biofiltration pore space factor in Table B.3-2 below and summing all of the layers.

Table B.3-2: Biofiltration Pore Space Factors

BMP Characteristics	Unlined BMPs Without Underdrain	All Other Biofiltration/Retention BMPs
Ponding Pore Space	n/a	1.00
Media Pore Space	n/a	0.20 vegetated 0.35 non-vegetated
Gravel Pore Space Above Underdrain	n/a	0.40
Gravel Pore Space Below Underdrain	n/a	0.00

Part 4) Determine the drawdown time (hours) for surface ponding. This is the ponding depth divided by the sum of the design infiltration rate and BMP filtration rate. Surface ponding depths of 24 hours or less are typically required; however, longer drawdown times up to 96 hours may be proposed if supported by a landscape architect/agronomist and no safety hazards are anticipated due to excessive ponding. Surface ponding drawdown times over 96 hours are not permitted due to vector concerns.

$$T_P = \frac{D_P}{I + F_{BMP}}$$

Where:
T_p: Time (hours) for the BMP surface ponding depth to draw down.
D_P: Surface ponding depth (inches) of the proposed BMP.
I: Design infiltration rate (in/hr)
F_{BMP}: BMP filtration rate (in/hr)

Part 5) Determine the efficacy of the biofiltration processes provided by the BMP. This value represents the portion of the pollutant control standard that is satisfied through the biofiltration processes of the BMP. There are two options available for establishing the biofiltration performance standard. Applicants may select the option of their choice. Option 1 requires that the BMP treat 1.5 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite (assuming a 6 hour routing period). Option 2 requires that the BMP treat 1.0 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite; and additionally check that the system has a total static (i.e., non-routed) storage volume, including pore spaces and pre-filter detention volume, equal to at least 0.75 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite.

$$E_{B1} = \frac{V_{B6} + V_{BS}}{1.50\,DCV - V_{RT}}$$

$$E_{B2} = \frac{V_{BS}}{0.75\,DCV - V_{RT}}$$

$$E_B = Maximum\,(E_{B1}, E_{B2})$$

Where:
E_{B1}: Efficacy of biofiltration processes under option 1 (decimal).
V_{B6}: The volume biofiltered (ft^3) during the 6 hour storm event.
V_{BS}: The static biofiltration capacity (ft^3) of the BMP.
DCV: Design capture volume (ft^3) delivered to BMP.
V_{RT}: The volume retained (ft^3) within the BMP.
E_{B2}: Efficacy of biofiltration processes under option 2 (decimal).
E_B: Efficacy of biofiltration processes provided by the BMP (decimal).

B.3.4 Step 3D - Satisfaction of Pollutant Control Requirements

The performance of a BMP with respect to the pollutant control performance standards is referred to as the BMP efficacy. The total BMP efficacy is a function of the previously calculated retention efficacy and biofiltration efficacy as shown below.

$$E_T = E_R + (1.00 - E_R)\ x\ E_B$$

Where:
E_T: Total BMP Efficacy (decimal)
E_R: Efficacy of retention processes (decimal)
E_B: Efficacy of biofiltration processes (decimal)

To satisfy pollutant control performance standards, the total BMP efficacy must be 100%. If this level of efficacy is not achieved, applicants should consider reconfiguring drainage layout and/or BMP designs as needed.

B.3.5 Step 3E - Satisfaction of Minimum Retention Requirements

Minimum retention requirements can be satisfied by demonstrating that the all of the retention elements incorporated within a drainage area (rain barrels, tree wells, dispersion areas, and BMPs) retain a volume of water that is greater than or equal to what is required.

Part 1) Determine the total volume retained through site design and structural BMP elements as follows.

$$V_{RT} = V_{RRB} + V_{RTW} + V_{RD} + V_{RBMP}$$

Where:
V_{RT}: Total volume retained within the drainage area (ft^3)
V_{RRB}: Volume retained by rain barrels (ft^3)
V_{RTW}: Volume retained by tree wells (ft^3)
V_{RD}: Volume retained by dispersion areas (ft^3)
V_{RBMP}: Volume retained by the BMP (ft^3)

Part 2) Demonstrate that the total volume retained through site design and structural BMP elements meets retention requirements.

$$V_{RT} \geq V_{REQ}$$

Where:
V_{RT}: Total volume retained within the drainage area (ft^3)
V_{REQ}: Total volume that must be retained within the drainage area (ft^3)

B.4 Less Common Pollutant Control Calculations

This section presents methodologies for performing less common pollutant control calculations including: capture and use evaluation, use of offline BMPs, and BMPs located downstream of a storage unit.

B.4.1 Capture and Use Evaluation

If the proposed project includes habitable structures over 9 stories in height, the applicant must perform a capture and use evaluation as outlined herein.

The capture and use evaluation should be performed at the project-scale, and not be limited to a single DMA. This evaluation must identify the potential demand for using stormwater for indoor toilets and outdoor irrigation use and determine if this demand is sufficient to drawdown the DCV within a 36 hour time period.

B.4.1.1 Toilet and Urinal Flushing Demand Calculations*

The following guidelines should be followed for computing harvested water demand from toilet and urinal flushing:

- If reclaimed water is planned for use for toilet and urinal flushing, then the demand for harvested storm water is equivalent to the total demand minus the reclaimed water supplied, and should be reduced by the amount of reclaimed water that is available during the wet season.
- Demand calculations for toilet and urinal flushing should be based on the average rate of use during the wet season for a typical year.
- Demand calculations should include changes in occupancy over weekends and around holidays and changes in attendance/enrollment over school vacation periods.
- For facilities with generally high demand, but periodic shut downs (e.g., for vacations, maintenance, or other reasons), a project specific analysis should be conducted to determine whether the long term storm water capture performance of the system can be maintained despite shut downs.
- Such an analysis should consider the statistical distributions of precipitation and demand, most importantly the relationship of demand to the wet seasons of the year.

Table B.4-3 provides planning level demand estimates for toilet and urinal flushing per resident, or employee, for a variety of project types. The per capita use per day is based on daily employee or resident usage. For non-residential types of development, the "visitor factor" and "student factor" (for schools) should be multiplied by the employee use to account for toilet and urinal usage for non-employees using facilities.

Note: At the time of publication of this document, there is not a program in place to permit the use of storm water for indoor use. Check with the City of Carlsbad Land Development Department prior to calculating indoor water use.

Table B.4-1: Toilet and Urinal Water Usage per Resident or Employee

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Land Use Type</th><th rowspan="2">Toilet User Unit of Normalization</th><th colspan="2">Per Capita Use per Day</th><th rowspan="2">Visitor Factor[4]</th><th rowspan="2">Water Efficiency Factor</th><th rowspan="2">Total Use per Resident or Employee</th></tr>
<tr><th>Toilet Flushing[1,2]</th><th>Urinals[3]</th></tr>
<tr><td>Residential</td><td>Resident</td><td>18.5</td><td>NA</td><td>NA</td><td>0.5</td><td>9.3</td></tr>
<tr><td>Office</td><td>Employee (non-visitor)</td><td>9.0</td><td>2.27</td><td>1.1</td><td>0.5</td><td rowspan="2">7 (avg)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Retail</td><td>Employee (non-visitor)</td><td>9.0</td><td>2.11</td><td>1.4</td><td>0.5</td></tr>
<tr><td>Schools</td><td>Employee (non-student)</td><td>6.7</td><td>3.5</td><td>6.4</td><td>0.5</td><td>33</td></tr>
<tr><td>Various Industrial Uses (excludes process water)</td><td>Employee (non-visitor)</td><td>9.0</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td>0.5</td><td>5.5</td></tr>
</table>

1 - Based on American Waterworks Association Research Foundation, 1999. Residential End Uses of Water. Denver, CO: AWWARF

2 - Based on use of 3.45 gallons per flush and average number of per employee flushes per subsector, Table D-1 for MWD (Pacific Institute, 2003)

3 - Based on use of 1.6 gallons per flush, Table D-4 and average number of per employee flushes per subsector, Appendix D (Pacific Institute, 2003)

4 - Multiplied by the demand for toilet and urinal flushing for the project to account for visitors. Based on proportion of annual use allocated to visitors and others (includes students for schools; about 5 students per employee) for each subsector in Table D-1 and D-4 (Pacific Institute, 2003)

5 - Accounts for requirements to use ultra low flush toilets in new development projects; assumed that requirements will reduce toilet and urinal flushing demand by half on average compared to literature estimates. Ultra low flush toilets are required in all new construction in California as of January 1, 1992. Ultra low flush toilets must use no more than 1.6 gallons per flush and Ultra low flush urinals must use no more than 1 gallon per flush. Note: If zero flush urinals are being used, adjust accordingly.

B.4.1.2 Planning Level Irrigation Demands

To simplify the planning process, the method described above has been used to develop daily average wet season demands for a one-acre irrigated area based on the plant/landscape type. These demand estimates can be used to calculate the drawdown of harvest and use systems for the purpose of LID BMP sizing calculations.

Table B.4-2: Planning Level Irrigation Demand by Plant Factor and Landscape Type

General Landscape Type	36-Hour Planning Level Irrigation Demand (gallons per irrigated acre per 36 hour period)
Hydrozone – Low Plant Water Use	390
Hydrozone – Moderate Plant Water Use	1,470
Hydrozone – High Plant Water Use	2,640
Special Landscape Area	2,640

B.4.2 BMPs Downstream of a Storage Unit

Incorporation of upstream storage units (cisterns, vaults, etc) into a project's design can regulate flows to downstream biofiltration BMPs and potentially optimize the required BMP footprints. Use of this approach is not supported by County automated worksheets, but compliance with stormwater pollutant control requirements can be demonstrated through the following steps.

- Step 1) Determine the flow rate from the upstream storage unit
  - Use the orifice equation to determine outflow from the storage unit when it is filled to the depth associated with the DCV.
- Step 2) Demonstrate that the proposed BMP can accommodate flows from the storage unit
  - Multiply the BMP surface area (ft^2) by the filtration rate of the biofiltration soil media (in/hr) and divide by 43,200 to convert the units into CFS. For proprietary BMPs, this rate should correspond with the rates from certified testing the manufacturer has performed.
- Step 3) Demonstrate that the proposed BMP biofilters 92% of the annual runoff volume
  - If continuous simulation modeling has been performed, provide output reports from SWMM or SDHM modeling.
  - If continuous simulation modeling has not been performed, reference the percent capture nomographs in Figure B.3-1 to determine the percentage of annual runoff that is biofiltered. To use the nomographs, applicants must represent the BMP storage capacity as a fraction of the DCV along the x-axis, trace a line vertically to the colored

line representing the drawdown time of the system, and then determine the percentage of annual runoff biofiltered by tracing horizontally to the y-axis.

- Step 4) If the downstream biofiltration BMP is <3% of the effective tributary area, provide information supporting use of compact biofiltration as generally outlined below.
    - Retention Requirements: Demonstrate that minimum retention requirements from Section B.2 are satisfied.

    - Proprietary Requirements (if applicable): Provide proprietary information demonstrating that the device meets biofiltration criteria outlined in Appendices F.1-F.2.

B.4.3 DMA Swapping

If desired, a PDP applicant may generate stormwater pollutant control and/or hydromodification flow control benefits by managing stormwater flows from "excess areas" that are conveyed to the site. Management of flows from these excess areas may be used to offset flows from "required areas" that lack management.

Required areas are the areas of a project for which the Permit mandates pollutant control and/or HMP flow control requirements. Excess areas are the areas of a project for which the Permit does <u>not</u> mandate pollutant control and/or HMP flow control requirements. Areas of offsite run-on to the PDP site may always be considered excess areas. Additionally, for redevelopment projects falling under the 50% redevelopment threshold, onsite areas that are not being redeveloped may also be considered excess areas.

Compliance with stormwater pollutant control requirements using this onsite alternative compliance approach can be demonstrated as outlined below.

- Step 1) Determine the untreated DCV from the required area
- Step 2) Determine the treated DCV from the excess area
    - If required areas and excess areas contain different land uses, a land use factor must be applied to account for variations in pollutant concentrations. In most cases, this factor results in a lower treatment volume being credited.
- Step 3) Demonstrate compliance
    - Show that the treated DCV from the excess area is greater than or equal to the untreated DCV from the required area (Step 2 ≥ Step 1).
    - Use of this onsite alternative compliance approach does not mandate flow-thru treatment of untreated flows from required areas; however, applicants are encouraged to do so where feasible.

B.4.4 Offline BMPs

Diversion flow rates for offline BMPs must be sized to convey the maximum flow rate of runoff produced from a rainfall intensity of 0.2 inch of rainfall per hour, for each hour of every storm event. The following hydrologic method must be used to calculate the diversion flow rate for off-line BMPs:

$$Q = C \times i \times A$$

Where:

Q = Diversion flow rate in cubic feet per second
C = Runoff factor, area weighted estimate using Table B.1-1
i = Rainfall intensity of 0.2 in/hr
A = Tributary area (acres)

B.5 Backup Information on Pollutant Control Standards

This sections presents backup information describing the rationale for the following elements relating to pollutant control: establishment of the pollutant control performance standard, establishment of retention requirements, establishment of 85th percentile rainfall depths, backup information on tree well retention values, and backup information on BMP major maintenance frequency calculations.

B.5.1 Pollutant Control Performance Standard Backup

Storm water BMPs can be conceptualized as having a storage volume and a treatment rate, in various proportions. Both are important in the long-term performance of the BMP under a range of actual storm patterns, depths, and inter-event times. Long-term performance is measured by the operation of a BMP over the course of multiple years and provides a more complete metric than the performance of a BMP during a single event, which does not take into account antecedent conditions, including multiple storms arriving in short timeframes. A BMP that draws down more quickly would be expected to capture a greater fraction of overall runoff (i.e., long-term runoff) than an identically sized BMP that draws down more slowly. This is because storage is made available more quickly, so subsequent storms are more likely to be captured by the BMP. In contrast a BMP with a long drawdown time would stay mostly full, after initial filling, during periods of sequential storms. The volume in the BMP that draws down more quickly is more "valuable" in terms of long-term performance than the volume in the one that draws down more slowly. The MS4 permit definition of the DCV does not specify a drawdown time, therefore the definition is not a complete indicator of a BMP's level of performance. An accompanying performance-based expression of the BMP sizing standard is essential to ensure uniformity of performance across a broad range of BMPs and helps prevents BMP designs from being used that would not be effective.

An evaluation of the relationships between BMP design parameters and expected long term capture efficiency has been conducted to address the needs identified above. Relationships have been developed through a simplified continuous simulation analysis of precipitation, runoff, and routing, that relate BMP design volume and storage recovery rate (i.e., drawdown time) to an estimated long-term level of performance using United States Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) SWMM and parameters listed in Appendix G for Oceanside rain gages.

Figure B.4-1 demonstrated that a BMP sized for the runoff volume from the 85th percentile, 24-hour storm event (i.e., the DCV), which draws down in 36 hours is capable of managing approximately 80 percent of the average annual. There is long precedent for 80 percent capture of average annual runoff as approximately the point at which larger BMPs provide decreasing capture efficiency benefit (also known as the "knee of the curve") for BMP sizing. The characteristic shape of the plot of capture efficiency versus storage volume in Figure B.3-1 illustrates this concept.

As such, this equivalency (between DCV draw down in 36-hours and 80 percent capture) has been utilized to provide a common currency between volume-based BMPs with a wide range of drawdown rates. This approach allows flexibility in the design of BMPs while ensuring consistent performance.

B.5.2 Retention Requirement Backup

In May 2016, the RWQCB provided clarification on the 2013 MS4 Permit requirement for the BMPDM to "…provide guidance for hydraulic loading rates and other biofiltration design criteria necessary to maximize the storm water retention and pollutant removal of treatment control BMPs." Through coordination with the RWQCB, a quantifiable minimum retention requirement for treatment control BMPs was established based on the assumption that BMPs would be sized at 3% of the effective tributary area and be unlined where feasible.

The retention curves presented in Figure B.2-1 were developed using Version 1.4 automated pollutant control worksheets assuming various rainfall depths (0.60 to 1.20 inches) and design infiltration rates (0.000 to 0.500 in/hr). BMPs were sized at 3% of the effective impervious tributary area, provided 18" soil media depth, 3" of gravel above the underdrain, 6" underdrains with no hydromodification management orifices, 3" of gravel beneath the underdrain, and varied surface ponding depths as needed to fully satisfy pollutant removal standards.

B.5.3 Rainfall Depth Backup

The method of calculating the 85th percentile is to produce a list of values, order them from smallest to largest, and then pick the value that is 85 percent of the way through the list. Only values that are capable of producing run off are of interest for this purpose. Lacking a legislative definition of rainfall values capable of producing runoff, Flood Control staff in San Diego County have observed that the point at which significant runoff begins is rather subjective, and is affected by land use type and soil moisture. In highly-urbanized areas, the soil has a high impermeability and runoff can begin with as little as 0.02" of rainfall. In rural areas, soil impermeability is significantly lower and even 0.30" of rain on dry soil will frequently not produce significant runoff. For this reason, San Diego County has chosen to use the more objective method of including all non-zero 24-hour rainfall totals when calculating the 85th percentile. To produce a statistically significant number, only stations with 30 years or greater of daily rainfall records are used.

A collection of 56 precipitation gage points was developed with 85th percentile precipitation values based on multiple years of gage data. A raster surface (grid of cells with values) was interpolated from that set of points. The surface initially did not cover the County's entire jurisdiction. A total of 13 dummy points were added. Most of those were just outside the County boundary to enable the software to generate a surface that covered the entire County. A handful of points were added to enforce a plausible surface. In particular, one point was added in the desert east of Julian, to enforce a gradient from high precipitation in the mountains to low precipitation in the desert. Three points were added near the northern boundary of the County to adjust the surface to reflect the effect of elevation in areas lacking sufficient operating gages.

Several methods of interpolation were considered. The method chosen is named by Environmental Systems Research Institute as the Natural Neighbor technique. This method produces a surface that is highly empirical, with the value of the surface being a product of the values of the data points nearest each cell. It does not produce peaks or valleys of surface based on larger area trends, and is free of artifacts that appeared with other methods.

B.5.4 Tree Well Backup

Tree Well credit volume is estimated based on typical characteristics of Tree Wells as follows:

It is assumed that each tree is considered a single BMP, with calculations based on the soil media reservoir volume and/or the individual tree within the tree BMP as appropriate. Tree Well credit volume is calculated as:

$$\boldsymbol{TWCV = TIV + TCIV + TETV}$$

Where:

- *TWCV* = Tree Well credit volume (ft^3)
- *TIV* = Total infiltration volume of all storage layers within tree BMPs (ft^3)
- *TCIV* = Total canopy interception volume of tree BMPs (ft^3)
- *TETV* = Total evapotranspiration volume, sums the media evapotranspiration storage within each tree BMP (ft^3)

Total infiltration volume is calculated as the total volume stored within the tree BMP soil media reservoir. Infiltration volume was assumed to be 20% of the total BMP soil media reservoir volume, the available pore space in the soil media reservoir (porosity – field capacity).

Total canopy interception volume was calculated as the average interception capacity for the entire mature tree canopy projection area. Interception capacity was determined to be 0.04 inches per square foot for all tree sizes, an average from the findings published by Breuer et al (2003) for coniferous and deciduous trees.

Total evapotranspiration volume is the available evapotranspiration storage volume (field capacity – wilting point) within the BMP storage layer media. TEVT is assumed to be 10% of the minimum soil volume. The minimum soil volume as required by SD-A fact sheet of 2 cubic feet per unit canopy projection area was assumed for estimating reduction in DCV.

There may be rain events that generate more runoff than the tree well can handle. Installing an overflow above the design storm water retention level of the reservoir can prevent system failure during extreme weather events. Placement of the overflow should be determined based on the infiltration rate of the subsoil. If infiltration is not adequate to remove water from the rooting zone (the top 18 to 24 inches of soil media reservoir) within 48 hours, the depth of the soil media reservoir may be increased, and the overflow should be placed such that if water rises to the level of the rooting zone it will drain in less than 48 hours.

B.5.5 Sediment Clogging Backup

Under the 2011 Model SUSMP, a sizing factor of 4 percent was used for sizing biofiltration BMPs. This value was derived based on the goal of treating the runoff from a 0.2 inch per hour uniform precipitation intensity at a constant media flow rate of 5 inches per hour. While this method was simple, it was considered to be conservative as it did not account for significant transient storage present in biofiltration BMPs (i.e., volume in surface storage and subsurface storage that would need to fill before overflow occurred). Under this manual, biofiltration BMPs will typically provide subsurface storage to promote infiltration losses; therefore typical BMP profiles will tend to be somewhat deeper than those provided under the 2011 Model SUSMP. A deeper profile will tend to provide more transient storage and allow smaller footprint sizing factors while still providing similar or better treatment capacity and pollutant removal. Therefore a reduction in the minimum sizing factor from the factor used in the 2011 Model SUSMP is supportable. However, as footprint decreases, issues related to potential performance, operations, and/or maintenance can increase for a number of reasons:

1) As the surface area of the media bed decreases, the sediment loading per unit area increases, increasing the risk of clogging. While vigorous plant growth can help maintain permeability of soil, there is a conceptual limit above which plants may not be able to mitigate for the sediment loading. Scientific knowledge is not conclusive in this area.
2) With smaller surface areas and greater potential for clogging, water may be more likely to bypass the system via overflow before filling up the profile of the BMP.
3) As the footprint of the system decreases, the amount of water that can be infiltrated from subsurface storage layers and evapotranspire from plants and soils tends to decrease.
4) With smaller sizing factors, the hydraulic loading per unit area increases, potentially reducing the average contact time of water in the soil media and diminishing treatment performance.

The MS4 Permit requires that volume and pollutant retention be maximized. Therefore, a minimum sizing factor was determined to be needed. This minimum sizing factor does not replace the need to conduct sizing calculations as described in this manual; rather it establishes a lower limit on required size of biofiltration BMPs as the last step in these calculations. Additionally, it does not apply to alternative biofiltration designs that utilize the checklist in Appendix F (Biofiltration Standard and Checklist). Acceptable alternative designs (such as proprietary systems meeting Appendix F criteria) typically include design features intended to allow acceptable performance with a smaller footprint and have undergone field scale testing to evaluate performance and required O&M frequency.

Sediment Clogging Calculations

As sediment accumulates in a filter, the permeability of the filter tends to decline. The lifespan of the filter bed can be estimated by determining the rate of sediment loading per unit area of the filter bed. To determine the media bed surface area sizing factor needed to provide a target lifespan, simple sediment loading calculations were conducted based on typical urban conditions. The inputs and results of this calculation are summarized in Table B.5-1.

Table B.5-1: Inputs and Results of Clogging Calculation

Parameter	Value	Source
Representative TSS Event Mean Concentration, mg/L	100	Approximate average of San Diego Land Use Event Mean Concentrations from San Diego River and San Luis Rey River WQIP
Runoff Coefficient of Impervious Surface	0.90	Table B.1-1
Runoff Coefficient of Pervious Surface	0.10	Table B.1-1 for landscape areas
Imperviousness	40% to 90%	Planning level assumption, covers typical range of single family to commercial land uses
Average Annual Precipitation, inches	11 to 13	Typical range for much of urbanized San Diego County
Load to Initial Maintenance, kg/m^2	10	Pitt, R. and S. Clark, 2010. Evaluation of Biofiltration Media for Engineered Natural Treatment Systems.
Allowable period to initial clogging, yr	10	Planning-level assumption
Estimated BMP Footprint Needed for 10-Year Design Life	2.8 to 3.3%	Calculated

This analysis suggests that a 3 percent sizing factor, coupled with sediment source controls and careful system design, should provide reasonable protection against premature clogging. However, there is substantial uncertainty in sediment loading and the actual load to clog that will be observed under field conditions in the Carlsbad climate. Additionally this analysis did not account for the effect of plants on maintaining soil permeability. Therefore this line of evidence should be considered provisional, subject to refinement based on field scale experience. As field scale experience is gained about the lifespan of biofiltration BMPs in Carlsbad and the mitigating effects of plants on long term clogging, it may be possible to justify lower factors of safety and therefore smaller design sizes in some cases. If a longer lifespan is desired and/or greater sediment load is expected, then a larger sizing factor may be justified.

Generally, the purpose of a minimum sizing factor is to help improve the performance and reliability of standard biofiltration systems and limit the use of sizing methods and assumptions that may lead to designs that are less consistent with the intent of the MS4 Permit.

Ultimately, this factor is a surrogate for a variety of design considerations, including clogging and associated hydraulic capacity, volume reduction potential, and treatment contact time. A prudent design approach should consider each of these factors on a project-specific basis and identify whether site conditions warrant a larger or smaller factor. For example, a system treating only rooftop runoff in an area without any allowable infiltration may have negligible clogging risk and negligible volume reduction potential – a smaller sizing factor may not substantially reduce performance in either of these areas. Alternatively, for a site with high sediment load and limited pre-treatment potential, a larger sizing factor may be warranted to help mitigate potential clogging risks. City staff has discretion to accept alternative sizing factor(s) based on project-specific considerations. Additionally, the recommended minimum sizing factor may change over time as more experience with biofiltration is obtained.

Appendix

C

CARLSBAD BMP DESIGN MANUAL

Baseline BMP Fact Sheets for Site Design and Source Control

Jan. 2024

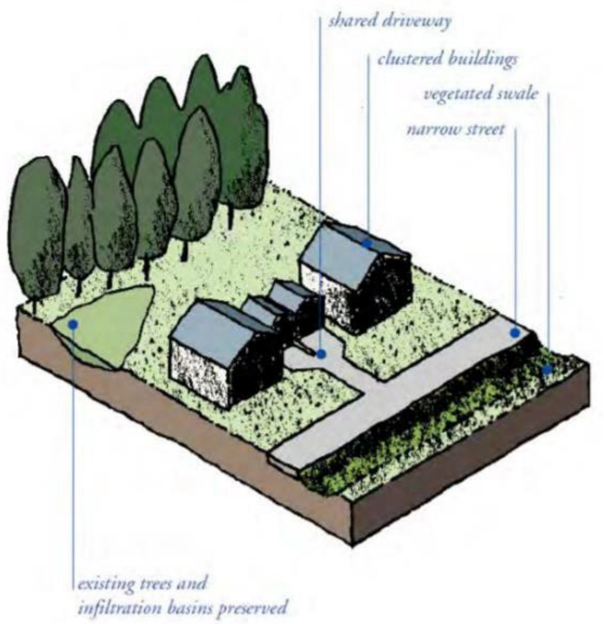
Appendix C Baseline BMP Fact Sheets for Site Design and Source Control

The following fact sheets were developed to assist the project applicants with designing BMPs to meet Site Design and Source Control MS4 Permit requirements.

MS4 Category	Baseline BMP Fact Sheet	BMP ID	Page
Site Design	BL-1: Existing Natural Site Features	**SD-G:** Conserve Natural Features **SD-H:** Buffers	C-2
Site Design	BL-2: Outdoor Impervious Areas	**SD-B:** *Impervious Area Dispersion* **SD-I:** Permeable Surfaces	C-8
Site Design	BL-3: Rooftop Areas	**SD-B**: *Impervious Area Dispersion* **SD-C:** *Green Roofs* **SD-E:** *Rain Barrels*	C-13
Site Design	BL-4: Landscaped Areas	**SD-K:** Sustainable Landscaping	C-16
Source Control	BL-5: Work and Storage Areas	**SC-A**: Overhead Covering **SC-B:** Berms and Grade Breaks **SC-C:** Wind Protection	C-19
Source Control	BL-6: Mgt of Storm Water Discharges	**SC-D:** Sanitary Sewer **SC-E:** Containment Areas	C-28
Source Control	BL-7: Mgt of Non-Storm Water Discharges	**SC-F:** Storm Drain Signage **SC-G:** Educational BMP Signage	C-34

*BMP IDs *in italics* have a standalone fact sheet in Appendix E

C.1 BL-1: Existing Natural Site Features



MS4 Permit Category
Site Design
BMP IDs
SD-G: Conserve Natural Features SD-H: Buffers

Applicable Site Features

Baseline BMPs are required where feasible and applicable for the following types of natural site features:

- ***Natural waterbodies***[1] can include any significant accumulation of water on a project site. This includes both larger bodies, such as lakes and rivers, and smaller features such as intermittent and ephemeral streams, creeks, swales, springs, ponds, and wetlands. Applicants should account for any feature containing water for any portion of the year – even if the feature is usually dry.

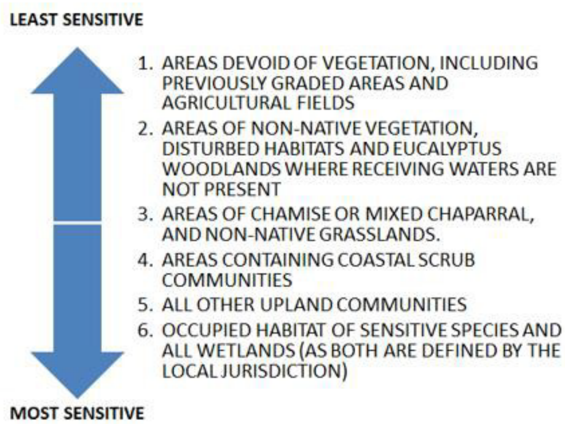
Note: If existing waterbodies can't be avoided, consultations with the US Army Corps of Engineers, Regional Water Quality Control Board, and California Department of Fish and Wildlife may be required along with their respective permits. Development in or near Waters of the U.S. may be subject to Clean Water Act Section 401 Water Quality Certification requirements. Consult the Army Corps of Engineers regarding any work potentially impacting Waters of the U.S. or for determining if a waterbody is a Water of the U.S.

- ***Natural storage reservoirs and drainage corridors***. Storage reservoirs are areas where

[1] For PDPs, Structural BMPs may not be located within a waterbody.

rainfall and runoff flow downhill and collect in low points such as valleys, basins, and other depressions in the landscape. Storage reservoirs can also include areas of permeable soils in topographic depressions. These features may or may not also be waterbodies. Drainage corridors are areas where concentrated or channelized runoff flows from higher elevation to lower elevation on the site. Examples include channels, creeks, swales and gullies. Flows can also concentrate around grade breaks (steep changes in elevation) such as banks and hillsides.

- ***Natural areas, soils, and vegetation (including trees)*** include undisturbed areas with beneficial soils and vegetation such as undeveloped hillsides, meadows, other non-agricultural vegetated areas, or riparian habitat. Preserving natural features such as existing trees, other vegetation, and soils will decrease the amount of storm water that leaves the project site and reduce its long-term impacts.



SWQMP Baseline BMP Requirements

The following baseline BMPs are required where applicable and feasible for the features described above:

SD-G: Conserve natural features
SD-H: Buffers

These baseline BMPs are documented in Table 1, Section A of the Standard Project Requirement Checklist, E-36 Form as shown below.

A. **Existing Natural Site Features (see Fact Sheet BL-1)**		
1. Check the boxes below for each existing feature on the site.	*1. Select the BMPs to be implemented for each identified feature. Explain why any BMP not selected is infeasible in the area below.*	
	SD-G Conserve natural features	**SD-H** Provide buffers around waterbodies
☐ Natural waterbodies	☐	☐
☐ Natural storage reservoirs & drainage corridors	☐	--
☐ Natural areas, soils, & vegetation (incl. trees)	☐	--

C.1.1 SD-G: CONSERVE NATURAL AREAS

Description

Conservation means preserving, maintaining, or enhancing existing natural areas and features. For example, avoiding the removal of trees, or incorporating an existing stream or other open space area(s) into the project design. Leaving soil, vegetation, and other natural features in place promotes natural processes that help reduce runoff and aid in pollutant uptake. Natural areas are often well suited to retain rainwater through infiltration and evapotranspiration, allowing the project to maintain the predevelopment time of concentration and peak flow rate of runoff. Designs that emphasize natural features are often environmentally preferable and can be more appealing to buyers.

Design Considerations

- ***Identify and avoid natural features***: Identify features as early as possible to allow the development to be designed around them. This limits overall impacts during and after construction and can avoid unnecessary redesign costs.

Natural features have formed over time in response to existing conditions (location, climate, soil type, etc.). Allow them to function naturally by avoiding removal or modification.

- Locate buildings, driveways, and other impervious features away from natural features. Where possible concentrate development in the least sensitive portions of the site.
- Avoid areas containing sensitive plant or animal species. Areas such as wetlands, biological open space areas, biological mitigation sites, streams, floodplains, and vegetation communities (coastal sage scrub, intact forest, etc.) may require additional regulatory protections.

Where possible, conserve areas with the highest ecological or water quality value. Avoid development in areas with thick, undisturbed vegetation because these areas tend to foster ecological diversity and protect water quality. Likewise, native trees and shrubs provide aesthetic, recreational, and air quality benefits.

- ***Maintain existing site drainage and hydrology***: Maintain existing drainage patterns and pathways, topographical depressions, and potential storage areas to maximize natural infiltration and preserve the predevelopment hydrologic characteristics of the site. Avoid creating new concentrated discharge points on hillsides or other locations where drainage is not naturally concentrated. Diversion (changing the discharge location of stormwater runoff from a given land area from one concentration point to another, thereby increasing the area draining to an existing feature) can significantly impact drainage, even without the addition of new impervious area. Even small modifications can significantly impact drainage. Pay special attention to changes in the rates, duration, and volume of flows directed to storage reservoirs and drainage corridors. Increased flows can overwhelm existing natural features, potentially causing flooding, oversaturation, or other unintended consequences in downstream areas.

- *Restore or improve impacted features*: In some cases, existing features are impacted or degraded prior to development of the site. For example, previous use of the site may have caused a loss of vegetation and subsequent erosion of open space areas. Even if these areas are conserved in the final design, replanting or restoration may be necessary to ensure they function properly.

- *Prevent construction phase impacts to soils*: Natural site features can be particularly vulnerable during grading and construction. Isolate these features as necessary to prevent access by construction equipment and personnel (e.g., by staking or fencing off areas). Also consider minimizing grading as practicable.

Plan Requirements

For each required construction plan, provide the information indicated below for each applicable feature or BMP.

SD-G: Conserve Natural Areas
Plan View Requirements
• Show locations and boundaries of the features (or portions of features) to be conserved • Label features with BMP ID: SD-G
Detail Sheets
N/A
Typical Construction Notes
• USE A CONSTRUCTION FENCE AROUND THE CONSERVED AREAS TO PREVENT CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT AND WORKERS FROM ENTERING.

Maintenance Considerations

During construction of the project, fences that have been placed to prevent construction equipment and workers from entering conserved areas must be maintained. After construction of the project is complete, generally conservation and protection of natural features does not require routine maintenance because the features are intended to remain in their natural condition. The following may be required in accordance with applicable maintenance plans or observations:

- Removal of trash and debris;
- Landscaping only when necessary to restore or improve impacted features; and
- Other maintenance activities indicated in applicable maintenance plans or in accordance with observations.

Also consider the following: Maintenance of areas with sensitive plants and animals may be subject to restrictions or requirements imposed by federal, state, and local laws.

C.1.2 SD-H Buffers

Description

Buffers are measures to limit access or prevent impacts to natural features. They are encouraged for all features but required for conserved waterbodies where feasible. Buffers can be effective in protecting resources from pollutants; increased runoff flows; physical disturbances from pedestrian use; vehicle parking; or equipment storage; or other potential stressors. Depending on site characteristics and the project layout, the following options should be considered.

Design Considerations

- **Buffer zones** provide physical separation between natural features and adjacent land uses or pollutant sources. Buffer zones such as a strip of landscape between a development and protected feature can effectively retain or transform pollutants and flows to produce a more favorable environment for natural systems. Buffer zones must be provided for natural water bodies whenever technically feasible. When buffer zones are not technically feasible, other types of buffers, such as access restrictions must be considered.
- **Setbacks** are buffer zones that establish minimum distances between pollutant sources and resources. For example, Waters of the U.S. typically require from 50 to 200 feet of separation from potential sources. Setbacks can be maintained landscaping or vegetated areas that provide passive treatment of runoff from a development before it reaches the protected feature.
- **Access restrictions** are buffers that protect an area from intrusion or activity (walking, driving, parking, etc.) either through physical barriers such as fences, walls, or vegetation (trees, etc.), or through legal restrictions such as easements or covenants. Physical barriers can be styled to suit the development architecture while providing the desired level of restriction.
- **Hydraulic disconnection** uses curbs, berms, grading, etc. to prevent natural areas from receiving storm water or non-storm water flows from upgradient sources. However, stormwater runoff that has been redirected from a natural area via hydraulic disconnection must ultimately be returned to the system in a safe, non-erosive manner, such as an outfall placed downstream of the protected area in a location that the runoff would have naturally arrived at without redirection. The design of these features should be part of the site drainage plan, with structures appropriately sized for the anticipated runoff.
- **Different buffer types** or combinations of those listed above may be proposed.

Plan Requirements

For each required construction plan, provide the information indicated below for each applicable feature or BMP.

SD-H: Buffers
Plan View Requirements
• Show locations and boundaries of buffers • Label features with BMP ID: SD-H
Detail Sheets
N/A
Typical Construction Notes
• A SETBACK OF [##] FEET IS REQUIRED FOR DEVELOPMENT ADJACENT TO WATERS OF THE U.S.. NO STRUCTRAL BMPS ARE TO BE PLACED IN BUFFER AREAS. • USE A CONSTRUCTION FENCE AROUND THE BUFFER ZONE TO PREVENT CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT AND WORKERS FROM ENTERING.

Maintenance Considerations

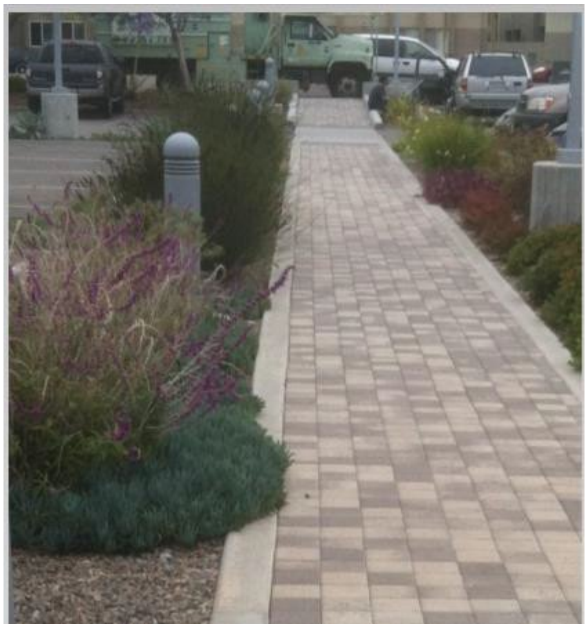
During construction of the project, fences that have been placed to prevent construction equipment and workers from entering buffer zones must be maintained. After construction of the project is complete, the following may be required in accordance with applicable maintenance plans or observations:

- Removal of trash and debris;
- Landscaping; and
- Other maintenance activities indicated in applicable maintenance plans or in accordance with observations.

Also consider the following:

- Maintenance of areas with sensitive plants and animals may be subject to restrictions or requirements imposed by federal, state, and local laws;
- Buffer areas may be maintained as part of normal landscaping practices unless other requirements apply;
- Maintenance of physical structures associated with buffers (fences, walls, curbs, berms, etc.) can be addressed as part of the normal facilities maintenance.

C.2 BL-2: Outdoor Impervious Area



Source: County of San Diego's Green Streets Guidelines

MS4 Permit Category
Site Design
BMP IDs
SD-B: Impervious Area Dispersion SD-I: Permeable Surfaces

Applicable Site Features

Baseline BMPs are required to minimize impervious areas where applicable and feasible for the following common types of outdoor impervious features.

- ***Sidewalks & walkways*** include surfaces intended for pedestrian uses (walking, wheelchairs, etc.). Sidewalks are often at the side of a street, road, or structure, while walkways (including paved footpaths and trails) may occur throughout a property. Any proposed permeable surfaces in city's right-of-way or easements requires special approval from the City Engineer.
- ***Parking areas & lots*** includes any area, space, or lot designated for the temporary or long- term parking or storage of automobiles or other vehicles. They do not include parking areas within streets or roads.
- ***Driveways*** are surfaces that provide vehicles access from offsite to a building or other portion of the property. Unlike streets and roads, driveways normally serve a single property and are privately owned.
- ***Patios, decks, & courtyards*** are outdoor areas, typically unroofed, associated with a building, and supporting outdoor use (walking, gathering, leisure, etc.). They may be adjacent to or independent of other structures. They are normally exposed to the elements
- ***Hardcourt recreation areas*** are impermeable surfaces intended primarily for sports or recreation. Examples include basketball, tennis, or volleyball courts, and playgrounds.

- *Other proposed outdoor impervious features not otherwise listed*

SWQMP Baseline BMP Requirements

The following baseline BMPs are required where applicable and feasible for the features described above:

SD-B: Impervious Area Dispersion

SD-I: Permeable Surfaces

These baseline BMPs are documented in Table 1, Section B of the Standard Project Requirement Checklist, E-36 Form as shown below.

B. BMPs for Common Impervious Outdoor Site Features (see Fact Sheet BL-2)			
1. Check the boxes below for each proposed feature.	*2. Select the BMPs to be implemented for each proposed feature. If neither BMP **SD-B** nor **SD-I** is selected for a feature, explain why both BMPs are infeasible in the area below.*		
	SD-B Direct runoff to pervious areas	**SD-I** Construct surfaces from permeable materials	Minimize size of impervious areas
☐ Streets and roads	☐	☐	☐ *Check this box to confirm that all impervious areas on the site will be minimized where feasible.* *If this box is not checked, identify the surfaces that cannot be minimized in area below, and explain why it is infeasible to do so.*
☐ Sidewalks & walkways	☐	☐	
☐ Parking areas & lots	☐	☐	
☐ Driveways	☐	☐	
☐ Patios, decks, & courtyards	☐	☐	
☐ Hardcourt recreation areas	☐	☐	
☐ Other: _______________	☐	☐	

a. Direct runoff to pervious areas (SD-B)

For impervious surfaces covered in this Fact Sheet, impervious area dispersion refers to the practice of effectively disconnecting impervious areas from directly draining to the storm drain system by routing runoff from impervious areas such as walkways, and driveways onto the surface of adjacent pervious areas. The intent is to slow runoff discharges and reduce volumes and sources of pollutants. Dispersion with partial or full infiltration results in significant volume reduction by means of infiltration, retention and evapotranspiration. PDPs may claim Design Capture Volume (DCV) reductions if dispersion areas meet specific design criteria described in Fact Sheet SD-B. However, dispersion should still be implemented where applicable and feasible even when the area available for dispersion does not meet the criteria to claim DCVreduction.

Typical dispersion components include:

- An impervious surface from which runoff flows will be routed with minimal piping to limit concentrated inflows;

- Splash blocks, flow spreaders, or other means of dispersing concentrated flows and providing energy dissipation as needed;
- Dedicated pervious area, typically vegetated, with soil infiltration capacity for partial or full infiltration;
- Mulch, compost and/or soil amendments to improve water retention, vegetation support, maintain infiltration rates and enhance treatment of routed flows; and
- Overflow route for excess flows to be conveyed from dispersion area to the storm drain.

Impervious area dispersion primarily functions as a site design BMP for reducing the effective imperviousness of a site by providing partial or full infiltration of the flows that are routed to pervious dispersion areas and otherwise slowing down excess flows that eventually reach the storm drain system. For PDPs, this can significantly reduce the DCV and flow control requirements for the site.

b. Construct surfaces from non-engineered permeable materials (SD-I)

See BMP ID SD-I Permeable Surfaces below.

c. Minimize the size of impervious areas

Minimizing the overall impervious area created by a development project can reduce the impacts of environmental degradation on receiving waterbodies. Implementing this practice limits the potential for both transportation of pollutants in runoff and increased risk of erosion due to increased flows associated with impervious development.

This BMP applies broadly to any traditional impervious areas associated with land development including sidewalks and walkways, parking lots, driveways, patios, decks, courtyards, hardcourt recreation areas, and the building footprints.

C.2.1 SD-I: PERMEABLE SURFACES

Description

This BMP consists of substituting permeable (or pervious) materials in the place of traditional impervious materials in a development. Using permeable materials on a development site helps reduce the overall effective impervious area, thereby decreasing total runoff volume and better mimicking predevelopment hydrologic characteristics when compared to the same development using traditional impervious materials. Limiting the total runoff volume from a site has a significant impact on storm water quality by limiting the total amount of pollutants transported offsite to receiving waterbodies.

Design Considerations

Features constructed of materials like concrete, asphalt, and grouted pavers have higher runoff factors causing a higher percentage of rain falling on them to become runoff. Substituting other more porous materials such as decomposed granite, cobbles, crushed aggregate, and soils (natural, compacted, or amended), which have lower runoff factors than impervious materials, can greatly reduce the amount of runoff from a project. See Appendix B, Section B.1.3 for runoff factors (C) for a variety of different construction materials. For PDPs, use of more porous materials with lower runoff factors where feasible within the project can reduce the total design capture volume (DCV) for the project.

Permeable materials should be used for outdoor hard surfaces wherever it is feasible to do so.

Applicants should consider the feasibility of using permeable materials for all impervious surfaces proposed as part of the project. All permeable surfaces that have potential traffic loading shall be designed by a civil engineer.

Typical non-engineered permeable surfaces that shall be designed and labeled with SD-I are the following:

- Decomposed Granite
- Cobbles
- Crushed Aggregate

Typical engineered permeable surfaces that shall be designed and labeled with SD-D (*Existing Fact Sheet in Appendix E*) are the following:

- Modular Paver Units or Paver Blocks
- Pervious Concrete
- Porous Asphalt
- Turf Pavers
- Reinforced Geotextile Features

Plan Requirements

For each required construction plan, provide the information indicated below for each applicable feature or BMP.

SD-I: Permeable Surfaces
Plan View Requirements
• Show locations and boundaries of the features (or portions of features) constructed of permeable material. • Label non-engineered permeable surfaces with BMP ID: SD-I • Label engineered permeable surfaces with BMP ID: SD-D
Detail Sheets
• Varies depending on permeable surface. • Engineered permeable surfaces must include a cross section showing and clearly labeling all required layers (e.g., paver blocks, bedding, filter course, etc.) from pavement surface to subgrade; and include specifications for each material layer that is required as part of the engineered permeable surface.
Typical Construction Notes
• Varies depending on permeable surface

Maintenance Considerations

Routine maintenance of permeable surfaces includes: removal of materials such as trash and debris accumulated on the surface, inspect tributary area for exposed soil or other sources of sediment and apply stabilization measures to sediment source areas. Apply source control measures as applicable to sources of litter or debris. Engineered permeable pavement surfaces (SD-D) require routine preventive vacuum/regenerative air sweeping.

C.3 BL-3: Rooftop Areas

Source: County of San Diego's Climate Action Plan

MS4 Permit Category
Site Design (SD)
BMP IDs
SD-B: Impervious Area Dispersion SD-C: Green Roofs SD-E: Rain Barrels

Applicable Site Features

Baseline BMPs are required for common outdoor impervious features. **Rooftop Areas** include all permanent, impervious coverings on buildings or other structures (e.g., patios or decks) within the project footprint. Rooftops normally account for much of the runoff generated on a typical project. Coverings need only be counted as rooftops if rainfall will flow over or across them rather than passing through to the ground (e.g., permeable shade coverings need not be considered as rooftops).

SWQMP Baseline BMP Requirements

The following baseline BMPs are required where applicable and feasible for the features described above:

SD-B: Impervious Area Dispersion
SD-C: Green Roofs
SD-E: Rain Barrels

These baseline BMPs are documented in Table 1, Section C of the Standard Project Requirement Checklist, E-36 Form as shown below:

C. ☐ **BMPs for Rooftop Areas:** *Check this box if rooftop areas are proposed and select at least one BMP below. If no BMPs are selected, explain why they are infeasible in the area below.*		**(see Fact Sheet BL-3)**
☐ **SD-B** Direct runoff to pervious areas	☐ **SD-C** Install green roofs	☐ **SD-E** Install rain barrels

a. Direct Runoff to Pervious Areas (SD-B)

For rooftop areas, impervious area dispersion refers to the practice of effectively disconnecting the rooftop from directly draining to the storm drain system by routing runoff onto the surface of adjacent pervious areas. The intent is to slow runoff discharges and reduce volumes. Dispersion with partial or full infiltration results in significant volume reduction by means of infiltration, retention and evapotranspiration. Priority Development Projects (PDPs) may claim Design Capture Volume (DCV) reductions if dispersion areas meet specific design criteria described in Fact Sheet SD-B. However, dispersion should still be implemented where applicable and feasible even when the area available for dispersion does not meet the criteria to claim DCV reduction.

Typical dispersion components for rooftop areas include:

- A rooftop surface from which runoff flows will be routed using downspout disconnection to limit concentrated inflows;
- Splash blocks, flow spreaders, or other means of dispersing concentrated flows and providing energy dissipation as needed;
- Dedicated pervious area, typically vegetated, with soil infiltration capacity for partial or full infiltration;
- Optional mulch, compost and/or soil amendments to improve water retention, vegetation support, maintain infiltration rates and enhance treatment of routed flows; and
- Overflow route for excess flows to be conveyed from dispersion area to the storm drain.

Impervious area dispersion primarily functions as a site design BMP for reducing the effective imperviousness of a site by providing partial or full infiltration of the flows that are routed to pervious dispersion areas and otherwise slowing down excess flows that eventually reach the storm drain system. For PDPs, this can significantly reduce the DCV and flow control requirements for the site.

b. Install Green Roofs (SD-C)

Green Roofs are rooftops covered with vegetation and a growing medium over a waterproofing membrane. They reduce runoff volumes and rates, treat storm water pollutants through filtration and plant uptake, provide additional landscape amenity, and create wildlife habitat. Additionally, green roofs reduce the heat island effect and provide acoustical control, air filtration and oxygen production. In terms of building design, they can protect against ultraviolet rays and extend the roof lifetime, as well as increase the building insulation, thereby decreasing heating and cooling costs.

Typical green roof components include, from top to bottom:

- Vegetation that is appropriate to the type of green roof system, climate, and watering conditions;
- Media layer (planting mix or engineered media) capable of supporting vegetation growth;
- Filter fabric to prevent migration of fines (soils) into the drainage layer;
- Optional drainage layer to convey excess runoff;
- Optional root barrier;
- Optional insulation layer;
- Waterproof membrane; and
- Structural roof support capable of withstanding the additional weight of a green roof.

See **Fact Sheet SD-C** for additional detailed information on Green Roofs.

c. Install Rain Barrels (SD-E)

Rain barrels are containers that can capture rooftop runoff and store it for future use. With controlled timing and volume release, the captured rainwater can be used for irrigation or alternative grey water between storm events, thereby reducing runoff volumes and associated pollutants to downstream waterbodies. Rain barrels tend to be smaller systems, less than 100 gallons, and have low installation costs. Treatment can be achieved when rain barrels are used as part of a treatment train along with other BMPs that use captured flows in applications that do not result in discharges into the storm drain system. Rooftops are the ideal tributary areas for rain barrels.

Rain barrels can be used as a site design feature to reduce the effective impervious area of the site by removing roof runoff from the site discharge. This can reduce the DCV and flow control requirements for the site.

See **Fact Sheet SD-E** for additional detailed information on Rain Barrels.

C.4 BL-4: Landscaped Areas

Source: San Diego Sustainable Landscapes Guidelines

MS4 Permit Category
Site Design (SD)
BMP IDs
SD-K: Sustainable Landscaping

Applicable Site Features

Baseline BMPs are required for landscaped areas. A landscape includes all planting areas, turf areas (artificial or natural), and water features in a landscape design. The landscape area does not include footprints of buildings or structures, sidewalks, driveways, parking lots, decks, patios, gravel or stone walks, other pervious or non-pervious hardscapes and other non-irrigated areas designated for non-development (e.g., open spaces and existing native vegetation).

Landscaped Areas includes Baseline BMP Requirements

The following baseline BMPs are required where applicable and feasible for the features described above:

SD-K: Sustainable Landscaping

These baseline BMPs are documented in Table 1, Section D of the Standard Project Requirement Checklist, E-36 Form as shown below:

D. ☐ **BMPs for Landscaped Areas:** *Check this box if landscaping is proposed and select the BMP below* ☐ **SD-K Sustainable Landscaping** *If SD-K is not selected, explain why it is infeasible in the area below.*	**(see Fact Sheet BL-4)**

C.4.1 SD-K SUSTAINABLE LANDSCAPING

Description

Sustainable landscaping uses native and drought tolerant plant species to limit the total water demand of landscaped areas and create a living sponge to soak up rainfall. Native and drought tolerant plants are well suited to the long-term climate in San Diego County; able to withstand extended dry periods and typically require less water to remain healthy compared to non-native alternatives. An additional benefit is reduced need for fertilizer and/or pesticides.

Sustainable landscaping must be evaluated for all landscaped areas of a project to meet water quality requirements and should also be considered for any plantings associated with natural areas or areas identified for revegetation.

Design Considerations

The Carlsbad Landscape Manual provides a detailed watershed friendly approach to landscaping. These guidelines will guide you through important principles such as:

- Selecting drought tolerant and native plants for City of Carlsbad.
- Creating healthy soils to encourage moisture retention.
- Designing water efficient irrigation systems that reduce the likelihood of irrigation runoff.

The City's Landscape Manual generally applies to any new construction for which the City issues a building permit, grading permit or a discretionary review where the aggregate landscaped area is 500 square feet or more to obtain outdoor water use authorization. The City's Landscape Manual explains how people can comply with the city's landscape requirements by detailing water efficient irrigation systems, drought tolerant plant selection, fire-resistant designs, and other considerations.

Plan Requirements

For each required construction plan, provide the information indicated below for each applicable feature or BMP.

SD-K: Sustainable Landscaping
Plan View Requirements
• Show locations and boundaries of the features (or portions of features) designed as Sustainable Landscaping. • Label Sustainable Landscaping with BMP ID: SD-K
Detail Sheets
• Shall be shown on Landscape Plans if applicable.
Typical Construction Notes
• Grading plans need to refer to the approved landscape plan for construction notes.

Maintenance Considerations

Routine maintenance of the landscaped areas is essential to making them sustainable. The following are some maintenance considerations after installation:

- Maintain 2" – 4" of mulch and/or compost add more annually
- Practice Integrated Pest Management
- Check and adjust irrigation to eliminate runoff
- Regularly flush drip irrigation lines.
- Move drip irrigation and add emitters as tree growth occurs in order to maintain the wetting zone at outside edge of tree canopy (Dripline)

C.5 BL-5: Work and Storage Areas

MS4 Permit Category
Source Control (SC)
BMP IDs
SC-A: Overhead Covering SC-B: Berms and Grade Breaks SC-C: Wind Protection

Applicable Site Features

Baseline BMPs are required for the following common types of outdoor work areas:

- Trash and refuse storage,
- Materials and equipment storage,
- Loading and unloading,
- Fueling,
- Maintenance and repair,
- Vehicle and equipment cleaning, and
- Other areas, not identified above, that have the potential to generate pollutants.

SWQMP Baseline BMP Requirements

The following baseline BMPs are required where applicable and feasible for the features described above. All three of these BMPs should be implemented together in all areas where storage of materials and trash will be located:

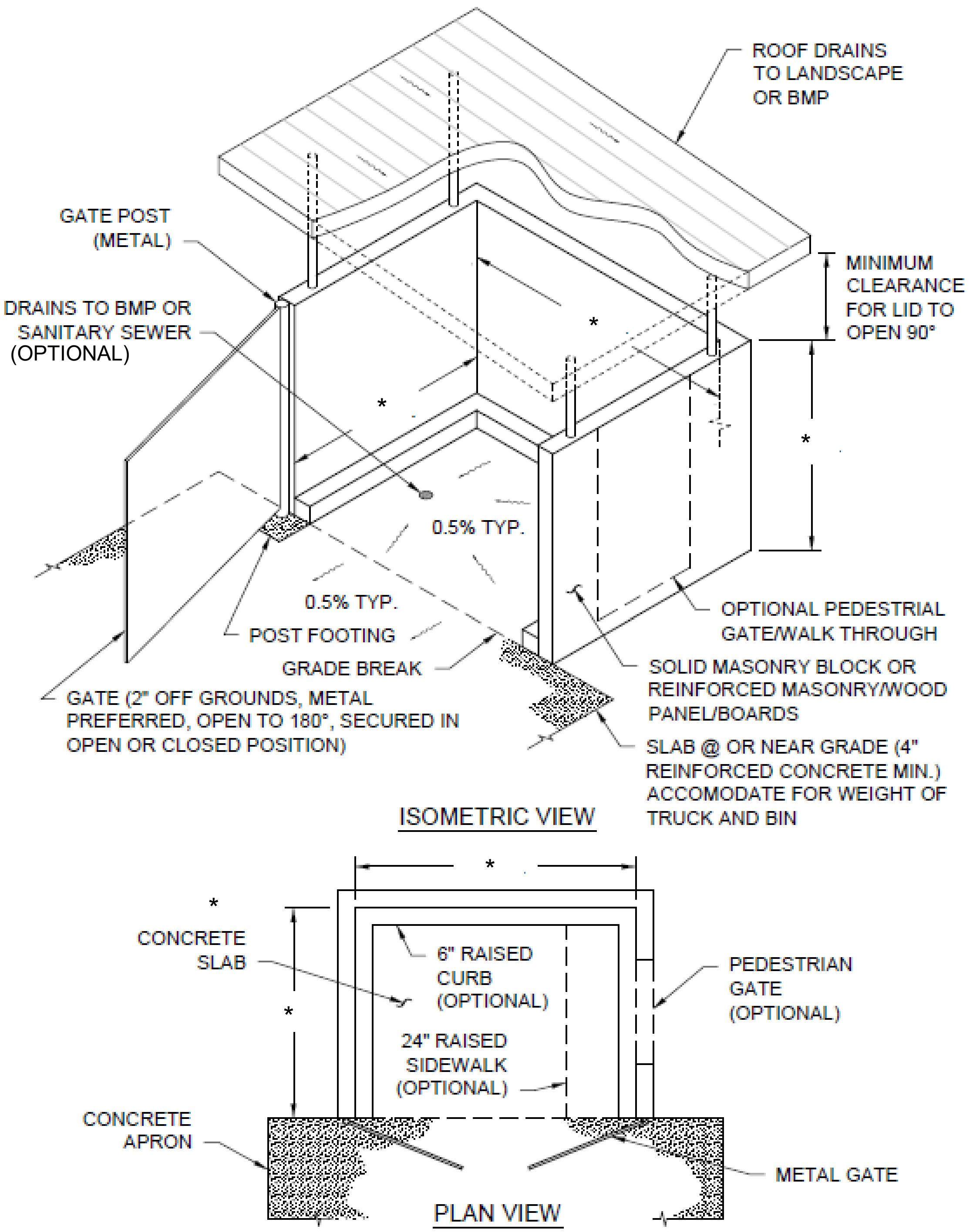
SC-A: Overhead Covering
SC-B: Berm and Grade Breaks
SC-C: Wind Protection

These baseline BMPs are documented in Table 2, Section A, Step 2 of the Standard Project

Requirement Checklist, E-36 Form as shown below:

A. Management of Storm Water Discharges						
1. Identify all proposed outdoor work areas below ☐ *Check here if none are proposed*	**2. Which BMPs will be used to prevent materials from contacting rainfall or runoff?** **(See Fact Sheet BL-5)** *Select all feasible BMPs for each work area*			**3. Where will runoff from the work area be routed?** **(See Fact Sheet BL-6)** *Select one or more option for each work area*		
	SC-A Overhead covering	**SC-B** Separation flows from adjacent areas	**SC-C** Wind protection	**SC-D** Sanitary sewer	**SC-E** Containment system	Other
☐ Trash & Refuse Storage	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
☐ Materials & Equipment Storage	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
☐ Loading & Unloading	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
☐ Fueling	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
☐ Maintenance & Repair	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
☐ Vehicle & Equipment Cleaning	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
☐ Other: _______________	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

A typical isometric and plan view of a trash enclosure is shown on the next page.



* REFER TO CITY'S ENGINEERING STANDARD DRAWING GS-16 FOR TRASH ENCLOSURE DIMENSIONS

Typical Isometric and Plan View of a Trash Enclosure BMP

C.5.1 SC-A: OVERHEAD COVERING

Description

The Roofs or other permanent covers can be constructed over outdoor areas where pollutant-generating materials or activities are concentrated. This helps prevent rainfall from contacting materials and carrying pollutants with it into the storm drain system.

This BMP can be applied to any material or activity that will regularly be located in the same place on a site and contact with rainfall would result in pollutants being transported by storm water.

Temporary covers, such as tarps, are not considered part of this BMP but may also be an effective solution for preventing contact with rainwater when permanent covers are not feasible. For example, for pollutant-generating materials or activities that are not regularly located in the same place on a site.

Note: Permanent overhead structures must comply with the City's Building Code.

Design Considerations

- When initially planning a site, identify any area on the site where a pollutant-generating activity will regularly be occurring in a specific location or where pollutant-generating materials will be stored in a designated area. Consider constructing permanent overhead coverage for these areas, if feasible.
- Typical structures include roofs, awnings, and permanent canopies. Design covers with sufficient overhang to help prevent rain from contacting materials even when there are moderate winds.
- When designing permanent overhead coverage for these areas, the cover must extend at least to the edge of the berm or grade break and ideally will extend slightly beyond it.
- Projects are required to construct trash enclosures meeting various design requirements, one of which is a roof that fully covers the enclosure and is sufficiently high to allow dumpster lids to open to the full 90-degree position.
- If a downspout is used to drain a rooftop or cover over a designated washing, fueling, or trash area, it should be routed away from the designated area to avoid run-on.

Many food service facilities have storage bins for used cooking oil (i.e. "grease bins"). Storing these bins indoors, when done in accordance with City requirements and County Health Department regulations, is preferable from a storm water pollution perspective. When grease bins must be stored outdoors, permanent roofs or awnings may be used when compliant with the fire code. Outdoor cooking areas may be designed with fire code compliant roofs or awnings as well.

Plan Requirements

SC-A: Overhead Covering
Plan View Requirements
• Show locations and boundaries of the features (or portions of features) designed with overhead covering • Label with BMP ID: SC-A
Detail Sheets
• Provide details in the applicable plan set where the feature is being designed and constructed.
Typical Construction Notes
• Storage of non-hazardous liquids must be covered by a roof and be contained by berms, dikes, liners, or vaults. • Storage of hazardous materials and wastes must be in compliance with local, state and federal hazardous materials regulations, ordinances and hazardous materials management plan for the site.

Maintenance Considerations

Repair permanent covers as needed should any damage occur.

C.5.2 SC-B: BERMS AND GRADE BREAKS

Description

Berms and grade breaks can be used to physically separate designated storage and activity areas and prevent storm water surface flows from transporting pollutants from these areas to the storm drain system. A berm or grade break can prevent run-on from flowing through a pollutant generating area and becoming contaminated. Additionally, berms and grade breaks can effectively prevent contaminated water or spilled liquids from leaving a designated pollutant-generating area when the area is designed with a sump or sewer connection; reducing the likelihood of an illicit discharge of pollutants.

This BMP can be applied to any material or activity that will regularly be located in the same place on a site and where storm water surface flows would be likely to pick up pollutants from the work or storage area and transport them to the storm drain system.

Areas for activities, such as washing or fueling, must be designed with berms or grade breaks around their perimeters to ensure that runoff from these activities does not drain to the storm drain system or receiving waters.

Design Considerations

When initially planning a site, identify any area on the site where a pollutant generating activity will regularly be occurring in a specific location or where pollutant-generating materials will be stored in a designated area. If storm water run-on flowing through this area would be likely to pick up pollutants and carry them to a storm drain, consider modifying the site grading or construct a berm around the area to route run-on around the area.

Constructing concrete slab and curbing around an area is often an effective way to prevent run-on from contacting materials. Lower, rounded berms can also be constructed and are often better suited for areas where vehicular access is needed. Alternatively, strategic grading of a site may achieve the same benefits without requiring construction of berms. For example, locating an activity or storage area on an elevated pad or other high point can prevent run-on from entering the area. Whether using berming or grading, the feature should be designed with sufficient height to be able to redirect anticipated flows at the site. Strategically designing surface drainage features, such as ribbon gutters, in conjunction with the planned berms and/or grade breaks can help minimize the risk of breaching.

Berms and grade breaks should also be considered for areas where water or other liquids are meant to be contained within a designated space. Designing a berm or grade break around such an area is important not only for keeping run-on out of the area, but also for ensuring that any water within the area flows to the designated sewer drain or sump rather than flowing to a storm drain outside the area. When designing washing areas, ensure that the berm or grade break has sufficient height to contain the anticipated volumes of wash water. Also ensure that the berm or grade break is positioned far enough away from the anticipated wash area so that all incidental sprays fall within the designated area. For drive-thru style car washes, consider that incidental sprays and drips are likely to fall on the areas immediately adjacent to the car wash entrance and exit. Design the car wash entrance and exit areas with grade breaks or berms to ensure that incidental drips and spills are directed back to the car wash clarifier rather than flowing to nearby storm drains. Berms can also be used around designated liquid storage areas. These berms should be constructed with sufficient height to contain the volume of liquids that could potentially be spilled in the area.

Plan Requirements

SC-B: Berms and Grade Breaks
Plan View Requirements
• Show locations and boundaries of the features (or portions of features) designed with Berm and Grade Breaks • Label with BMP ID: SC-B
Detail Sheets
• Provide details in the applicable plan set where the feature is being designed and constructed.

Maintenance Considerations

Minimal maintenance is typically required for berms and grade breaks.

- Periodically clean bermed areas to reduce the chance of contaminated storm water discharges.
- Inspect and repair or reconstruct berms if they are damaged or begin to deteriorate.

C.5.3 SC-C: WIND PROTECTION

Description

Windbreaks are physical barriers that block wind, preventing it from impacting designated areas. They can be used to protect storage or collection areas where materials might be transported by wind. This prevents wind from blowing lightweight materials out of the designated storage area to adjacent areas where they would be more likely to be washed into a storm drain.

This BMP can be implemented wherever there is a designated area for storage of a material that is light enough to be blown away by wind. Trash storage areas are the most common areas for implementation of this BMP, as litter around trash receptacles can easily be transported by wind. Windbreaks should also be considered for protecting material storage areas whenever the stored material is lightweight. Windbreaks can also be used around outdoor work areas where work activities may generate powders or dust or where extremely lightweight materials, such as expanded polystyrene foam may be present.

Design Considerations

Identify whether the materials anticipated to be on the site can be transported by wind. If these materials will be used or stored in a designated outdoor location, consider building windbreaks to protect the area. Windbreaks can be solid walls that completely block wind, or they may be semi-solid barriers such as fences or screens that allow airflow but still trap and prevent transport of materials when used to create an enclosure around the materials. Privacy windscreens can be added to chain link fences to provide wind protection. Solid walls can also serve a dual purpose as both a windbreak and as protection against run-on. All areas shall have secured lids and/or coverings to close when not in use.

Since wind may come from different directions, it is optimal to place wind breaks on all sides of a storage area. This can be accomplished by placing fixed walls on three sides and having a gate on the fourth side. Where it is not feasible to place windbreaks on all sides of a storage area, it is often still possible to place them on three sides, leaving one side open to allow access. For example, designated stockpile storage areas may be designed with walls on three sides and one open side to allow clear access for vehicles or equipment.

At large trash-generating facilities, trash areas should be designed with three solid-sided walls and a solid gate on the fourth side.

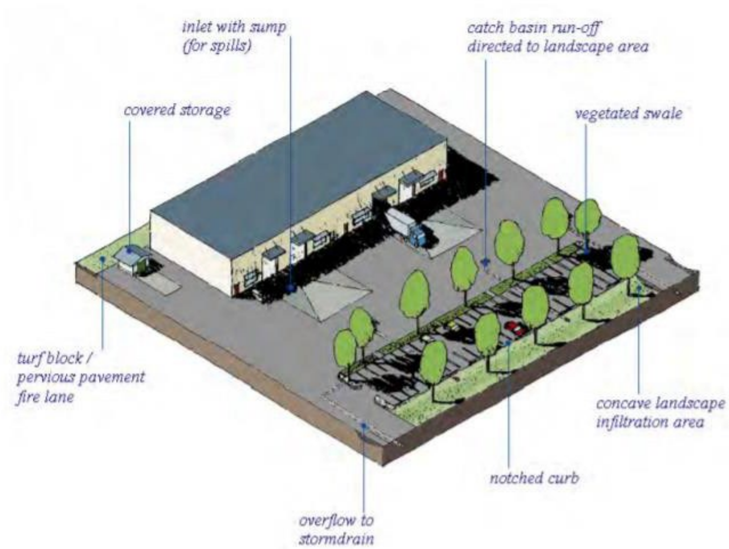
Plan Requirements

SC-C: Wind Protection
Plan View Requirements
• Show locations and boundaries of the features (or portions of features) designed with Wind Protection • Label Wind Protection with BMP ID: SC-C
Detail Sheets
• Provide details in the applicable plan set where the feature is being designed and constructed.

Maintenance Considerations

Windbreaks should be repaired or reconstructed if they are damaged or begin to deteriorate.

C.6 BL-6: Management of Storm Water Discharges



MS4 Permit Category
Source Control (SC)
BMP IDs
SC-D: Sanitary Sewer SC-E: Containment Areas

Applicable Site Features

Baseline BMPs are required to prevent illicit discharge into the storm drain system. This Fact Sheet describes baseline Best Management Practices (BMPs) for managing storm water discharges originating from outdoor work areas. While the baseline BMPs described in Fact Sheet BL-5, Work and Storage Areas (Baseline BMPs for Outdoor Work Areas) are intended to effectively minimize pollutant generation from work areas, projects must also be designed to ensure that storm water runoff generated from these areas is properly managed.

The discharge options described below apply to the following types of outdoor work areas:

- Trash and refuse storage,
- Materials and equipment storage,
- Loading and unloading,
- Fueling,
- Maintenance and repair,
- Vehicle and equipment cleaning, and
- Other areas, not identified above, that have the potential to generate pollutants.

SWQMP Baseline BMP Requirements

The following baseline BMPs are required where applicable and feasible for the features described above:

SC-D: Sanitary Sewers
SC-E: Containment Areas
Storm Water S-BMP or SSD-BMP

These baseline BMPs are documented in Table 2, Section A, Step 3 of the Standard Project Requirement Checklist, E-36 Form, as shown below:

1. Identify all proposed outdoor work areas below ☐ *Check here if none are proposed*	**2. Which BMPs will be used to prevent materials from contacting rainfall or runoff?** **(See Fact Sheet BL-5)** *Select all feasible BMPs for each work area*			**3. Where will runoff from the work area be routed?** **(See Fact Sheet BL-6)** *Select one or more option for each work area*		
	SC-A Overhead covering	**SC-B** Separation flows from adjacent areas	**SC-C** Wind protection	**SC-D** Sanitary sewer	**SC-E** Containment system	Other
☐ Trash & Refuse Storage	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
☐ Materials & Equipment Storage	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
☐ Loading & Unloading	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
☐ Fueling	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
☐ Maintenance & Repair	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
☐ Vehicle & Equipment Cleaning	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
☐ Other: _______________	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

C.6.1 SC-D: SANITARY SEWER

Description

Connections to sanitary sewer may only be allowed with approval by Sanitary Sewer Agency with authority over the proposed receiving sanitary sewer. See additional information below.

One option for eliminating pollutant discharges to the MS4 or receiving waters is to route storm water flows from the work area to the sanitary sewer. Discharges to the sanitary sewer are treated at a publicly owned treatment facility.

This option should be considered for any pollutant source (e.g., material storage area or activity) that has the potential to routinely generate liquid waste with a high concentration of storm water pollutants.

Design Considerations

Unless otherwise noted, the following guidelines assume that discharges to the sanitary sewer are approved.

- Pollutant sources with piping and/or collection systems designed to convey waste, waste byproducts, or wash water, or with a defined discharge point, should be connected to sanitary sewer through a direct connection to the facility sanitary plumbing.
- Pollutant sources that are permanent with passive discharge systems, such as interior floor drains and sumps, drain lines, and water feature overflows should be connected to sanitary sewer through a direct connection to the facility sanitary plumbing.
- Pollutant sources occupying a defined area, such as trash and refuse areas, material and equipment storage, loading and unloading areas, fueling, maintenance and repair, vehicle and equipment cleaning, and outdoor food preparation areas may drain to a sump within the area that is connected to sanitary sewer through a direct connection to the facility sanitary plumbing. Every effort should be made to prevent discharges of storm water to the sanitary sewer. Therefore, outdoor areas connected to sewer should be protected from direct rainfall and from storm water run-on.

Note: Work areas should not be discharged to an onsite wastewater treatment system (e.g. septic) unless the system is specifically designed to accommodate them. This includes being designed to handle the increased flow volumes and rates as well as being designed to process the particular type of pollutant in its anticipated concentrations. These systems are typically designed specifically for household waste. Introduction of additional flows or pollutant types outside the originally intended design can result in failure of the onsite wastewater treatments system and lead to significant public health issues.

All approved connections are subject to the design and pretreatment requirements (e.g. clarifiers or oil-water separators for wash racks and interior floor drains) of the applicable approving agency. A list of agencies is provided below for reference.

City of Carlsbad Sewer Agencies	
City of Carlsbad/Carlsbad Municipal Water District 5950 El Camino Real Carlsbad, CA 92008	760-438-2722 www.carlsbadca.gov/water
Encinas Wastewater Authority 6200 Avenida Encinas Carlsbad, CA 92011	760-438-3941 www.encinajpa.com
Leucadia Wastewater District 1960 La Costa Avenue Carlsbad, CA 92009	760-753-0155 www.lwwd.org
Vallecitos Water District 201 Vallecitos De Oro San Marcos, CA 92069	760-744-0460 www.vwd.org

Plan Requirements

SC-D: Sanitary Sewer
Plan View Requirements
• Show locations and boundaries of the features (or portions of features) discharging to Sanitary Sewer • Label with BMP ID: SC-D
Detail Sheets
• Provide details in the applicable plan set where the feature is being designed and construction. Typically shown on utility sheet on building plan

Maintenance Considerations

All approved connections are subject to the design, pretreatment and maintenance requirements (e.g. clarifiers or oil-water separators for wash racks and interior floor drains) of the applicable approving agency.

C.6.2 SC-E: CONTAINMENT AREAS

Description

Containment areas are specifically designed storage or activity areas that prevent spills, leaks, and other discharges, that would otherwise pollute storm water, from leaving the designated area. Spills leaks and other discharges from storage and activity areas can have high concentrations of pollutants that will contaminate storm water and impact receiving waterbodies if allowed to discharge from the site.

This BMP can be applied to any material or activity that will regularly be located in the same place on a site that could reasonably experience or result in spills, leaks, or other discharges.

Design Considerations

When initially planning a site, identify any area on the site where a pollutant generating activity will regularly be occurring in a specific location or where pollutant-generating materials will be stored in a designated area. If these pollutant-generating activities or materials could result in spills, leaks, or other discharges consider constructing or providing containment for the area.

Containment areas should be designed to hold the entire volume of spilled, leaked, or discharged material without overflowing.

Containment of a pollutant-generating activity can be accomplished by berming the area with a concrete curb, or other sealed linear barrier that prevents all material from flowing out of the area. Individual liquid storage containers can be effectively contained using manufactured containment pallets or sheds.

Containment areas should be completely isolated from storm drains. Do not construct storm drain inlets within containment areas, and do not allow site drainage to be directed through a containment area. If approved by the permitting sanitary sewer agency (see SC-D Sanitary Sewer), a containment area may be drained to the facility sanitary sewer plumbing. Designing containment around a pollutant-generating area is important for ensuring that any water within the area flows to the designated sewer drain rather than flowing to a storm drain outside the area.

Design of washing areas should ensure that containment has sufficient height to accommodate the anticipated volumes of wash water. Also ensure that the containment barrier is positioned far enough away from the anticipated wash area so that all incidental sprays fall within the designated area. For drive-thru style car washes, consider that incidental sprays and drips are likely to fall on the areas immediately adjacent to the car wash entrance and exit. Design the car wash entrance and exit with grade breaks or berms to ensure that incidental drips and spills are directed back to the car wash clarifier rather than flowing to nearby storm drains.

Plan Requirements

SC-E: Containment Areas
Plan View Requirements
• Show locations and boundaries of the features (or portions of features) that discharge to containment areas. • Label with BMP ID: SC-E
Detail Sheets
• Provide details in the applicable plan set where the feature is being designed and constructed.

Maintenance Considerations

Containment areas should be kept clean of spills, leaks and debris as they occur and repaired or reconstructed if they are damaged or begin to deteriorate.

C.7 BL-7: Management of Non-Storm Water Discharges

MS4 Permit Category
Source Control (SC)
BMP IDs
SC-F: Storm Drain Signage SC-G: Educational BMP Signage

Applicable Site Features

Baseline BMPs are required for the management of non-storm water discharges to prevent illicit discharges from entering the storm drain system. This Fact Sheet describes baseline BMPs for the labeling of all storm drain inlets and catch basins; educational signage; and practices for interior work surfaces, floor drains and sumps, drain lines, and fire sprinkler test water.

SWQMP Baseline BMP Requirements

The following baseline BMPs are required where applicable and feasible for the features described above:

a. Storm Drain Inlets and Catch Basins (SC-F)

See BMP ID SC-F: Storm Drain Signage (SC-F) below.

b. Educational BMP signage (SC-G)

See BMP ID SC-G: Educational BMP Signage (SC-G) below.

c. Interior work surfaces, floor drains & sumps

All interior work surfaces, floor drains and sumps shall not be directly connected to the MS4 or receiving waters. All discharges should be directed to sanitary sewer, if feasible, and with approvals by the Sanitary Sewer Agency with authority over the proposed receiving sanitary sewer.

d. Drain lines (e.g., air conditioning, boiler, etc.)

All drain lines shall not be directly connected to the MS4 or receiving waters. All discharges should be directed to sanitary sewer, if feasible, and with approvals by the Sanitary Sewer Agency with authority over the proposed receiving sanitary sewer, or discharge to landscaped areas on site.

e. Fire sprinkler test water

Fire sprinkler test water shall not be directly connected to the MS4 or receiving waters.

These baseline BMPs are documented in Table 2, Section B of the Standard Project Requirement Checklist, E-36 Form as shown below:

B. Management of Storm Water Discharges (see Fact Sheet BL-7) *Select one option for each feature below:*		
• Storm drain inlets and catch basins …	☐ are not proposed	☐ will be labeled with stenciling or signage to discourage dumping **(SC-F)**
• Interior work surfaces, floor drains & sumps …	☐ are not proposed	☐ will not discharge directly or indirectly to the MS4 or receiving waters
• Drain lines (e.g. air conditioning, boiler, etc.) …	☐ are not proposed	☐ will not discharge directly or indirectly to the MS4 or receiving waters
• Fire sprinkler test water …	☐ are not proposed	☐ will not discharge directly or indirectly to the MS4 or receiving waters

C.7.1 SC-F STORM DRAIN SIGNAGE

Description

Storm drain signs and stencils are visible source controls typically placed adjacent to inlets. Posting notices regarding discharge prohibitions at storm drain inlets can prevent waste dumping. Storm drain signage must be provided for all storm water conveyance system inlets and catch basins within the project area. Storm drain signage may include concrete stamping, concrete painting, placards, or other methods approved by the City. These may be modified and used as educational pieces promoting improved water quality. In addition to storm drain signage at storm water conveyance system inlets and catch basins, applicants are encouraged to post signs and prohibitive language (with graphical icons) which prohibit illegal dumping at trailheads, parks, building entrances, and public access points along channels and creeks within the project area. See City of Carlsbad Engineering Standards, Volume 3 Standard Drawings and Specifications, Standard Drawing DS-1 for design, unless otherwise approved by the City Engineer.

Design Considerations

Storm drain stenciling and signage may be implemented using a painted stencil or a sign or placard affixed to the structure. Signage should be located in plain sight of someone observing a storm drain inlet. The signage may include a combination of graphics and prohibitive language that identifies the inlet as a storm drain, prohibits dumping, and explains that storm drains discharge directly to receiving waterbodies.

Stencils and placards can be purchased from a number of suppliers. The non- profit organization, I Love A Clean San Diego, loans out stencil sets for labeling storm drains. They can be contacted at (619) 291-0103 or found online at https://ilacsd.org.

Plan Requirements

SC-F: STORM DRAIN SIGNAGE
Plan View Requirements
• Label each storm drain with BMP ID: SC-F
Detail Sheets
• Provide details on grading or improvement plans associated with the construction of applicable inlet or drainage feature.
Typical Construction Notes
• MARK ALL INLETS WITH THE WORDS "NO DUMPING DRAINS TO WATERWAYS" OR SIMILAR. SEE STENCIL TEMPLATE PROVIDED ON THE SHEET.

Maintenance Considerations

Signage should be repainted or replaced if it is damaged or begins to deteriorate.

C.7.2 SC-G: EDUCATIONAL BMP SIGNAGE

Description

Educational BMP Signage are visible source controls typically placed adjacent to a structural BMP. Signage educates workers, homeowners and/or the public to raise awareness of storm water issues and educate about the benefits of these watershed protection measures.

Educational BMP Signage is an effective source control BMP to alert the public of the function and maintenance requirements of the BMPs. Below is a typical Educational BMP Signage:

1. **Temporary BMP Signage:** The purpose of temporary BMP signage is to alert contractors during construction that this permanent BMP has been completed and to ensure this BMP does not get disturbed during subsequent grading and building construction activities. It is good practice to divert sediment-laden water to temporary construction BMPs (e.g., sediment traps, etc.) around the permanent structural BMP until all drainage areas have been stabilized. If sediment and/or construction activities infringe on the permanent BMP, the facility will most likely need to be rehabilitated prior to project close-out. Figure 1 below provides a typical temporary BMP signage for use during the construction process that reads "Boundary of Structural Best Management Practice. DO NOT DISTURB"

2. **Permanent BMP Signage:** Educational BMP Signage for development projects subject to permanent storm water quality BMPs provides the public and the property owners a description of the benefits and responsibilities of the BMPs constructed on their property. See Figure 2 below of Educational BMP Signage for permanent BMPs.

BOUNDARY OF STRUCTURAL BEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICE.

DO NOT DISTURB

Figure 1 – Temporary BMP Signage

Figure 2 – Permanent BMP Signage

Design Considerations

Temporary BMP Signage should be designed to be highly visible to construction crews. Materials should ensure the sign is effective through planned construction activities within the drainage area to the permanent BMP.

Permanent BMP Signage see Section 8.2.2.1 for design requirements.

Plan Requirements

SC-G: PERMANENT BMP SIGNAGE
Plan View Requirements
Label with BMP ID: SC-G
Detail Sheets
Provide details in the applicable plan set of signage design and language.
Typical Construction Notes
INSTALL BMP SIGNAGE. DETAIL ON SHEET [ ].

SC-G: TEMPORARY BMP SIGNAGE
Plan View Requirements
Label with BMP ID: SC-G
Detail Sheets
Provide details in the applicable erosion control sheet of signage design and language.
Typical Construction Notes
INSTALL BMP SIGNAGE. DETAIL ON SHEET [ ].

Maintenance Considerations

Signage should be repainted or replaced if it is damaged or begins to deteriorate.

Temporary BMP Signage may be removed once all contributing drainage areas have been completed and stabilized and all permits within the drainage area have been closed out. Signage should only be removed with the approval of City staff.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Appendix

D

CARLSBAD BMP DESIGN MANUAL

Geotechnical Engineer Analysis

D.1 Analysis of Infiltration Restrictions

D.2 Determination of Design Infiltration Rates

D.3 Geotechnical Reporting Requirements

Appendix D Geotechnical Engineer Analysis

D.1 Analysis of Infiltration Restrictions

This section is only applicable if the analysis of infiltration restrictions is performed by a licensed engineer practicing in geotechnical engineering. The SWQMP Preparer and Geotechnical Engineer must work collaboratively to identify any infiltration restrictions identified in Table D.1-1 below. Upon completion of this section, the Geotechnical Engineer must characterize each DMA as Restricted or Unrestricted for infiltration and provide adequate support/discussion in the geotechnical report. A DMA is considered restricted when one or more restrictions exist which cannot be reasonably resolved through site design changes.

Table D.1-1: Considerations for Geotechnical Analysis of Infiltration Restrictions

Restriction Element		Is Element Applicable? (Yes/No)
Mandatory Considerations	BMP is within 100' of Contaminated Soils	
	BMP is within 100' of Industrial Activities Lacking Source Control	
	BMP is within 100' of Well/Groundwater Basin	
	BMP is within 50' of Septic Tanks/Leach Fields	
	BMP is within 10' of Structures/Tanks/Walls	
	BMP is within 10' of Sewer Utilities	
	BMP is within 10' of Groundwater Table	
	BMP is within Hydric Soils	
	BMP is within Highly Liquefiable Soils and has Connectivity to Structures	
	BMP is within 1.5 Times the Height of Adjacent Steep Slopes (≥25%)	
	County Staff has Assigned "Restricted" Infiltration Category	
Optional Considerations	BMP is within Predominantly Type D Soil	
	BMP is within 10' of Property Line	
	BMP is within Fill Depths of ≥5' (Existing or Proposed)	
	BMP is within 10' of Underground Utilities	
	BMP is within 250' of Ephemeral Stream	
	Other (Provide detailed geotechnical support)	
Result	Based on examination of the best available information, I have **not identified any restrictions** above.	☐ **Unrestricted**
	Based on examination of the best available information, I have **identified one or more restrictions** above.	☐ **Restricted**

Table D.1-1 is divided into Mandatory Considerations and Optional Considerations. Mandatory

Considerations include elements that may pose a significant risk to human health and safety and must always be evaluated. Optional Considerations include elements that are not necessarily associated with human health and safety, so analysis is not mandated through this guidance document. All elements presented in this table are subject to the discretion of the Geotechnical Engineer if adequate supporting information is provided.

Applicants must evaluate infiltration restrictions through use of the best available data. A list of resources available for evaluation is provided in Section B.2

D.2 Determination of Design Infiltration Rates

This section is only applicable if the determination of design infiltration rates is performed by a licensed engineer practicing in geotechnical engineering. The guidance in this section identifies methods for identifying observed infiltration rates, corrected infiltration rates, safety factors, and design infiltration rates for use in structural BMP design. Upon completion of this section, the Geotechnical Engineer must recommend a design infiltration rate for each DMA and provide adequate support/discussion in the geotechnical report.

Table D.2-1: Elements for Determination of Design Infiltration Rates

Item	Value	Unit
Initial Infiltration Rate Identify per Section D.2.1		in/hr
Corrected Infiltration Rate Identify per Section D.2.2		in/hr
Safety Factor Identify per Section D.2.3		unitless
Design Infiltration Rate Corrected Infiltration Rate ÷ Safety Factor		in/hr

D.2.1 Initial Infiltration Rate

For purposes of this manual, the initial infiltration rate is the infiltration rate that has been identified based on the initial testing methods. Some of the acceptable methods for determining initial infiltration rates are presented in Table D.2-2 below, though other testing methods may be acceptable as evaluated by the geotechnical engineer. This table identifies what methods require application of correction factors, safety factors, and what BMPs types are ultimately acceptable for each testing method. The geotechnical engineer should use professional discretion when selecting a testing method as it may ultimately impact the types of BMPs that are permitted.

Table D.2-2: Acceptable Initial Infiltration Rate Methods

Category	Test	Correction Factor	Safety Factor	Suitable for Following BMPs
Desktop Methods*	NRCS Soil Survey Maps	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	BMPs with Underdrains
Correlation Methods	Grain Size Analysis	Not Applicable	**Required (See Section D.2.3)**	BMPs with Underdrains
	Cone Penetrometer Testing			
	Laboratory Permeability Tests			
Percolation Tests	Simple Open Pit Test	**Required (See Section D.2.2)**	**Required (See Section D.2.3)**	Any BMP Type
	Open Pit Falling Head Test			
	Well Permeameter Method			
	Borehole Percolation Tests			
Infiltration Tests	Double Ring Infiltrometer Test	Not Applicable	**Required (See Section D.2.3)**	Any BMP Type
	Single Ring Infiltrometer Test			
	Large-scale Pilot Infiltration Test			
	Smaller-scale Pilot Infiltration Test			

*Desktop methods may be performed without a geotechnical engineer. Refer to Basic Infiltration Analysis guidance in Section B.2.3 for more information.

NRCS Soil Survey Maps: NRCS Soil Survey maps can be used to establish approximate infiltration rates for use in BMP design. Under this method, default design infiltration rates may be applied based on the predominant NRCS soil type present within a proposed BMP location. Default design infiltration rates (in/hr) for each NRCS soil type are: A=0.300, B=0.200, C=0.100, D=0.025, Restricted=0.000. Use of these default design infiltration rates does not require application of any correction factors or safety factors.

Grain Size Analysis Testing: Hydraulic conductivity can be estimated indirectly from correlations with soil grain-size distributions. While this method is approximate, correlations have been relatively well established for some soil conditions. One of the most commonly used correlations between grain size parameters and hydraulic conductivity is the Hazen (1892, 1911) empirical formula (Philips and Kitch, 2011), but a variety of others have been developed. Correlations must be developed based on testing of site-specific soils. For purposes of this manual, saturated hydraulic conductivity and infiltration rate can be assumed to be equal.

Cone Penetrometer Testing: Hydraulic conductivity can be estimated indirectly from cone penetrometer testing (CPT). A cone penetrometer test involves advancing a small probe into the soil and measuring the relative resistance encountered by the probe as it is advanced. The signal returned from this test can be interpreted to yield estimated soil types and the location of key transitions between soil layers. If this method is used, correlations must be developed based on testing of site-specific soils. For purposes of this manual, saturated hydraulic conductivity and infiltration rate can be assumed to be equal.

Laboratory Permeability Testing: Laboratory testing can be performed to help evaluate the infiltration rates. The laboratory tests should be in accordance with ASTM or other approved procedures (e.g. ASTM D 5084 or D 5856). Several tests may be required from samples at different elevations to help evaluate the permeability characteristics of the soil strata.

Simple Open Pit Test: The Simple Open Pit Test is a falling head test in which a hole at least two feet in diameter is filled with water to a level of 6" above the bottom. Water level is checked and recorded regularly until either an hour has passed or the entire volume has infiltrated. The test is repeated two more times in succession and the rate at which the water level falls in the third test is used as the infiltration rate. This test identifies a percolation rate that should be converted to an infiltration rate using the Porchet method.

Open Pit Falling Head Test: This test is similar to the Simple Open Pit Test, but covers a larger footprint, includes more specific instructions, returns more precise measurements, and generally should be overseen by a geotechnical professional. Nonetheless, it remains a relatively simple test.

To perform this test, a hole is excavated at least 2 feet wide by 4 feet long (larger is preferred) and to a depth of at least 12 inches. The bottom of the hole should be approximately at the depth of the proposed infiltrating surface of the BMP. The hole is pre-soaked by filling it with water at least a foot above the soil to be tested and leaving it at least 4 hours (or overnight if clays are present). After pre-soaking, the hole is refilled to a depth of 12 inches and allow it to drain for one hour (2 hours for slower soils), measuring the rate at which the water level drops. The test is then repeated until successive trials yield a result with less than 10 percent change.

Well Permeameter Method (USBR 7300-89): Well permeameter methods were originally developed for purposes of assessing aquifer permeability and associated yield of drinking water wells. This family of tests is most applicable in situations in which infiltration facilities will be placed substantially below existing grade, which limits the use of surface testing methods.

In general, this test involves drilling a 6 inch to 8 inch test well to the depth of interest and maintaining a constant head until a constant flow rate has been achieved. Water level is maintained with down-hole floats. A smaller diameter boring may be adequate, however this then requires a different correction factor to account for the increased variability expected. The Porchet method or the nomographs provided in the USBR Drainage Manual (United States Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation, 1993) are used to convert the measured rate of percolation to an estimate of vertical hydraulic conductivity.

While these tests have applicability in screening level analysis, considerable uncertainty is introduced in the step of converting direct percolation measurements to estimates of vertical infiltration. Additionally, this testing method is prone to yielding erroneous results cases where the vertical horizon of the test intersects with minor lenses of sandy soils that allow water to dissipate laterally at a much greater rate than would be expected in a full-scale facility. To improve the interpretation of this test method, a continuous bore log should be inspected to determine whether thin lenses of material may be biasing results at the strata where testing is conducted. Consult USBR procedure 7300-89 for more details.

Source: (United States Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation, 1990, 1993)

Borehole Percolation Tests: Borehole percolation tests were originally developed as empirical tests to estimate the capacity of onsite sewage disposal systems (septic system leach fields), but have more recently been adopted into use for evaluating storm water infiltration. Similar to the well permeameter method, borehole percolation methods primarily measure lateral infiltration into the walls of the boring and are designed for situations in which infiltration facilities will be placed well below current grade. The percolation rate obtained in this test should be converted to an infiltration rate using a technique such as the Porchet method.

This test is generally implemented similarly to the USBR Well Permeameter Method. Per the Riverside

County Borehole Percolation method, a hole is bored to a depth at least 5 times the borehole radius. The hole is presoaked for 24 hours (or at least 2 hours if sandy soils with no clay). The hole is filled to approximately the anticipated top of the proposed infiltration basin. Rates of fall are measured for six hours, refilling each half hour (or 10 minutes for sand). Tests are generally repeated until consistent results are obtained.

The same limitations described for the well permeameter method apply to borehole percolation tests, and their applicability is generally limited to initial screening. To improve the interpretation of this test method, a continuous soil core can be extracted from the hole and below the test depth, following testing, to determine whether thin lenses of material may be biasing results at the strata where testing is conducted.

Sources: Riverside County Percolation Test (2011), California Test 750 (Caltrans, 1986), San Bernardino County Percolation Test (1992); USEPA Falling Head Test (USEPA, 1980).

In comparison to a double-ring infiltrometer, this test has the advantage of measuring infiltration over a larger area and better resembles the dimensionality of a typical small scale BMP. This test identifies a percolation rate that should be converted to an infiltration rate using the Porchet method. However, if this method is used to identify rates for a drywell BMP, the correction factor can be omitted at the discretion of the geotechnical engineer.

Double Ring Infiltrometer Test (ASTM 3385): The Double Ring Infiltrometer was originally developed to estimate the saturated hydraulic conductivity of low permeability materials, such as clay liners for ponds, but has seen significant use in storm water applications. The most recent revision of this method from 2009 is known as ASTM 3385-09. The testing apparatus is designed with concentric rings that form an inner ring and an annulus between the inner and outer rings. Infiltration from the annulus between the two rings is intended to saturate the soil outside of the inner ring such that infiltration from the inner ring is restricted primarily to the vertical direction.

To conduct this test, both the center ring and annulus between the rings are filled with water. There is no pre-wetting of the soil in this test. However, a constant head of 1 to 6 inches is maintained for 6 hours, or until a constant flow rate is established. Both the inner flow rate and annular flow rate are recorded, but if they are different, the inner flow rate should be used. There are a variety of approaches that are used to maintain a constant head on the system, including use of a Mariotte tube, constant level float valves, or manual observation and filling. This test must be conducted at the elevation of the proposed infiltrating surface; therefore application of this test is limited in cases where the infiltration surface is a significant distance below existing grade at the time of testing.

This test is generally considered to provide a direct estimate of vertical infiltration rate for the specific point tested and is highly replicable. However, given the small diameter of the inner ring (standard diameter is 12 inches, but it can be larger), this test only measures infiltration rate in a small area.

Additionally, given the small quantity of water used in this test compared to larger scale tests, this test may be biased high in cases where the long term infiltration rate is governed by groundwater mounding and the rate at which mounding dissipates (i.e., the capacity of the infiltration receptor). Finally, the added effort and cost of isolating vertical infiltration rate may not necessarily be warranted considering that BMPs typically have a lateral component of infiltration as well. Therefore, while this method has the advantages of being technical rigorous and well standardized, it should not necessarily be assumed to be the most representative test for estimating full-scale infiltration rates. Source: American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) International (2009).

Single Ring Infiltrometer Test: The single ring infiltrometer test is not a standardized ASTM test, however it is a relatively well-controlled test and shares many similarities with the ASTM standard double ring infiltrometer test (ASTM 3385-09). This test is a constant head test using a large ring (preferably greater than 40 inches in diameter) usually driven 12 inches into the soil. Water is ponded above the surface. The rate of water addition is recorded and infiltration rate is determined after the flow rate has stabilized. Water can be added either manually or automatically.

The single ring used in this test tends to be larger than the inner ring used in the double ring test. Driving the ring into the ground limits lateral infiltration; however some lateral infiltration is generally considered to occur. Experience in Riverside County (CA) has shown that this test gives results that are close to full-scale infiltration facilities. The primary advantages of this test are that it is relatively simple to conduct and has a larger footprint (compared to the double-ring method) and restricts horizontal infiltration and is more standardized (compared to open pit methods). However, it is still a relatively small scale test and can only be reasonably conducted near the existing ground surface.

Large Scale Pilot Infiltration Test: As its name implies, this test is closer in scale to a full-scale infiltration facility. This test was developed by Washington State Department of Ecology specifically for storm water applications.

To perform this test, a test pit is excavated with a horizontal surface area of roughly 100 square feet to a depth that allows 3 to 4 feet of ponding above the expected bottom of the infiltration facility. Water is continually pumped into the system to maintain a constant water level (between 3 and 4 feet about the bottom of the pit, but not more than the estimated water depth in the proposed facility) and the flow rate is recorded. The test is continued until the flow rate stabilizes. Infiltration rate is calculated by dividing the flow rate by the surface area of the pit.

This test has the advantage of being more resistant to bias from localized soil variability and being more similar to the dimensionality and scale of full scale BMPs. It is also more likely to detect long term decline in infiltration rates associated with groundwater mounding. As such, it remains the preferred test for establishing design infiltration rates in Western Washington (Washington State Department of Ecology, 2012). In a comparative evaluation of test methods, this method was found to provide a more reliable estimate of full-scale infiltration rate than double ring infiltrometer and borehole percolation tests (Philips and Kitch 2011).

The difficulty encountered in this method is that it requires a larger area be excavated than the other methods, and this in turn requires larger equipment for excavation and a greater supply of water. However, this method should be strongly considered when less information is known about spatial variability of soils and/or a higher degree of certainty in estimated infiltration rates is desired.

Smaller-Scale Pilot Infiltration Test: The smaller-scale PIT is conducted similarly to the large-scale PIT but involves a smaller excavation, ranging from 20 to 32 square feet instead of 100 square feet for the large-scale PIT, with similar depths. The primary advantage of this test compared to the full-scale PIT is that it requires less excavation volume and less water. It may be more suitable for small-scale distributed infiltration controls where the need to conduct a greater number of tests outweighs the accuracy that must be obtained in each test, and where groundwater mounding is not as likely to be an issue.

D.2.2 Corrected Infiltration Rate

For purposes of this manual, the corrected infiltration rate is the initial infiltration rate as modified by appropriate correction factors needed to convert from percolation to infiltration or to correct for effects of water temperature. The sections below present discussion on correction factors that should be considered by the Geotechnical Engineer.

D.2.2.1 Percolation Rate Correction Factor

A common misunderstanding is that the “percolation rate” obtained from a percolation test is equivalent to the “infiltration rate” obtained from tests such as a single or double ring infiltrometer test which is equivalent to the “saturated hydraulic conductivity”. In fact, these terms have different meanings. Saturated hydraulic conductivity is an intrinsic property of a specific soil sample under a given density. It is a coefficient in Darcy’s equation (Darcy 1856) that characterizes the flux of water that will occur under a given gradient. The measurement of saturated hydraulic conductivity in a laboratory test is typically referred to as “permeability”, which is a function of the density, structure, stratification, fines, and discontinuities of a given sample under given controlled conditions. In contrast, infiltration is the downward entry of water into the soil. The velocity at which water enters the soil is infiltration rate. Infiltration rate is typically expressed in inches per hour. For the purposes of this manual, saturated hydraulic conductivity and infiltration rate can be assumed to be equal. Similarly, to permeability, infiltration rate can be limited by a number of factors including the layering of soil, density, discontinuities, and initial moisture content. These factors control how quickly water can move through a soil. However, infiltration rate can also be influenced by mounding of groundwater, and the rate at which water dissipates horizontally below a BMP – both of which describe the “capacity” of the “infiltration receptor” to accept this water over an extended period. For this reason, an infiltration test should ideally be conducted for a relatively long duration resembling a series of storm events so that the capacity of the infiltration receptor is evaluated as well as the rate at which water can enter the system. Infiltration rates are generally tested with larger diameter holes, pits, or apparatuses intended to enforce a primarily vertical direction of flux.

In contrast, percolation is tested with small diameter holes, and it is mostly a lateral phenomenon. The direct measurement yielded by a percolation test tends to overestimate the infiltration rate, except perhaps in cases in which a BMP has similar dimensionality to the borehole, such as a dry well. Adjustment of percolation rates may be made to an infiltration rate using a technique such as the Porchet Method. For drywell BMPs this adjustment may be determined per other methods, (i.e. USBR 7300-89), or may be omitted entirely at the discretion of the geotechnical engineer.

Percolation Rate Conversion Example

Problem:

Apply the Porchet Method (Inverse Borehole Method) to determine the corrected infiltration rate from the following inputs:

- Total depth of test hole, D_T = 60 inches
- Initial depth to water, D_O = 12.25 inches
- Final depth to water, D_f = 13.75 inches
- Test hole radius, r = 4 inches
- Time interval, Δt = 10 minutes

Solution:

1. Solve for the height of water at the beginning of the selected time interval, H_O:

   $H_O = D_T - D_O = 60 - 12.25 = 47.75$ inches

2. Solve for the height of water at the end of the selected time interval, Hf:

   $Hf = DT - Df = 60 - 13.75 = 46.25$ inches

3. Solve for the change in height of water over the selected time interval, ΔH:

   $\Delta H = HO - Hf = 47.75 - 46.25 = 1.50$ inches

4. Calculate the average head over the selected time interval, Havg:

   $Havg = (Ho + Hf)/2 = (47.75 + 46.25)/2 = 47.00$ inches

5. Calculate the tested infiltration rate, It, using the following equation:

   $It = (\Delta H*60*r) / (\Delta t*(r+2Havg))$

   It = (1.50 in * 60 min/hr * 4 in) / (10 min * (4 inch + (2 * 47 in))) = 0.37 in/hr

D.2.2.2 Temperature Correction Factor

The rate of infiltration through soil is affected by the viscosity of water, which in turn is affected by the temperature of water. As such, infiltration rate is strongly dependent on the temperature of the infiltrating water (Cedergren, 1997). For example, Emerson (2008) found that wintertime infiltration rates below a BMP in Pennsylvania were approximately half their peak summertime rates. As such, it is important to consider the effects of temperature when planning tests and interpreting results.

If possible, testing should be conducted at a temperature that approximates the typical runoff temperatures for the site during the times when rainfall occurs. If this is not possible, then the results of infiltration tests should be adjusted to account for the difference between the temperature at the time of testing and the typical temperature of runoff when rainfall occurs. The measured infiltration can be adjusted by the ratio of the viscosity at the test temperature versus the typical temperature when rainfall occurs (Cedergren, 1997), per the following formula:

$$K_{Typical} = K_{Test} \times \left(\frac{\mu_{Test}}{\mu_{Typical}} \right)$$

Where:

$K_{Typical}$ = the typical infiltration rate expected at typical temperatures when rainfall occurs
K_{Test} = the infiltration rate measured or estimated under the conditions of the test
$\mu_{Typical}$ = the viscosity of water at the typical temperature expected when rainfall occurs
μ_{Test} = the viscosity of water at the temperature at which the test was conducted

D.2.3 Safety Factors

A safety factor between 2.0 and 9.0 must be applied to the infiltration rates determined above[1]. Application of a safety factor reduces initial or corrected infiltration rates in order to account for various considerations that can impact infiltration rates measured rates over time. In order to minimize safety factor impacts, applicants should consider performing rigorous site investigation, incorporating pretreatment and resiliency into the site design, and taking steps to reduce incidental compaction within BMP footprints.

If the proposed BMP utilizes an underdrain, a default safety factor of 2.0 may be applied or a more detailed safety factor may be determined per Table D.2-3. If the proposed BMP does not utilize an underdrain, then the safety factor must be determined through completion of Table D.2-3.

[1] Use of default design infiltration rates based on NRCS soil type does not require application of safety factor.

Table D.2-3: Determination of Safety Factor

Consideration		Assigned Weight (w)	Factor Value (v)	Product (p) $p = w \times v$
Suitability Assessment (A)	Infiltration Testing Method	0.25	Refer to Table D.2-4	
	Soil Texture Class	0.25		
	Soil Variability	0.25		
	Depth to Groundwater/Obstruction	0.25		
	Suitability Assessment Safety Factor, $S_A = \Sigma p$			
Design (B)	Pretreatment	0.50	Refer to Table D.2-4	
	Resiliency	0.25		
	Compaction	0.25		
	Design Safety Factor, $S_B = \Sigma p$			
Safety Factor, $S = S_A \times S_B$ (Must be always greater than or equal to 2)				

The geotechnical engineer should reference Table D.2-4 below in order to determine appropriate factor values for use in the table above. The values in the table below are subjective in nature and the geotechnical engineer may use professional discretion in how the points are assigned.

Table D.2-4: Guidance for Determining Individual Factor Values

Consideration	High Concern (3 points)	Medium Concern (2 points)	Low Concern (1 point)
Infiltration Testing Method	Any	At least 2 tests of any kind within 50' of BMP.	At least 4 tests within BMP footprint, OR Large/Small Scale Pilot Infiltration Testing over at least 5% of BMP footprint.
Soil Texture Class	Unknown, Silty, or Clayey	Loamy	Granular/Slightly Loamy
Soil Variability	Unknown or High	Moderately Homogeneous	Significantly Homogeneous
Depth to Groundwater/ Obstruction	<5' below BMP	5-15' below BMP	>15' below BMP
Pretreatment	None/Minimal	Provides good pretreatment OR does not receive significant runoff from unpaved areas	Provides excellent pretreatment OR only receives runoff from rooftops and road surfaces.
Resiliency	None/Minimal	Includes underdrain/backup drainage that ensures ponding draws down in <96 hours	Includes underdrain/backup drainage AND supports easy restoration of impacted infiltration rates.
Compaction	Moderate Likelihood	Low Likelihood	Very Low Likelihood

D.3 Geotechnical Reporting Requirements

This section is only applicable if a licensed engineer practicing in geotechnical engineering has performed the determination of infiltration restrictions and/or design infiltration rates. The geotechnical report must document the following items in the geotechnical report.

- **Date of site analysis**
- **Scope and results of testing**
- **Public health and safety requirements that affect infiltration locations**
  - Must address Mandatory Considerations presented in Appendix D.1
- **Conclusions**
  - Characterize DMAs as Restricted or Unrestricted for Infiltration
  - Identify Design Infiltration Rates for DMAs
- **Correspondence between City Staff and Geotechnical Engineer (if applicable)**
  - Development status of site prior to the project application (i.e. new development with raw ungraded land, or redevelopment with existing graded conditions)
  - The history of design discussions for the site proposed project
  - Site design alternatives considered to achieve infiltration or partial infiltration on site
  - Physical impairments and public safety concerns (i.e. fire road egress, sewer lines, etc)
  - The extent low impact development BMP requirements were included in the project design

It is ultimately the responsibility of the SWQMP Preparer (not the geotechnical engineer) to interpret the conclusions made in the geotechnical report and ensure they are appropriately supported/reflected in associated SWQMP submittal materials such as checklists, narratives, calculations, exhibits, and supplemental reports.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Appendix

E

CARLSBAD BMP DESIGN MANUAL

Fact Sheets for Enhanced Site Design, Structural and Flow thru-BMPs

Jan. 2024

Appendix E Fact Sheets for Enhanced Site Design, Structural and Flow-thru BMPs

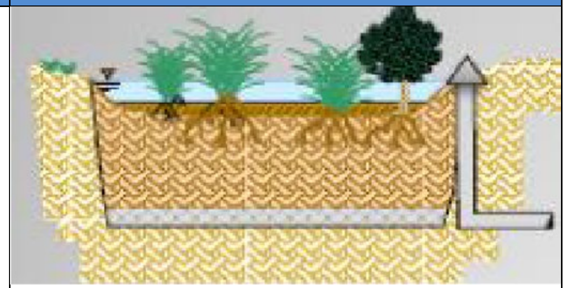
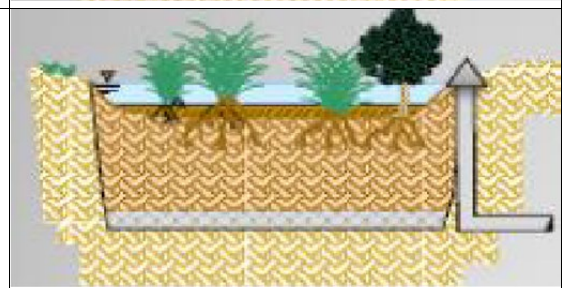
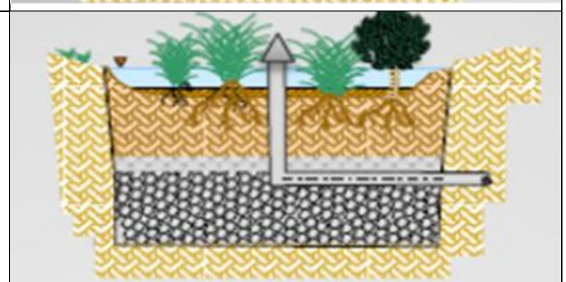
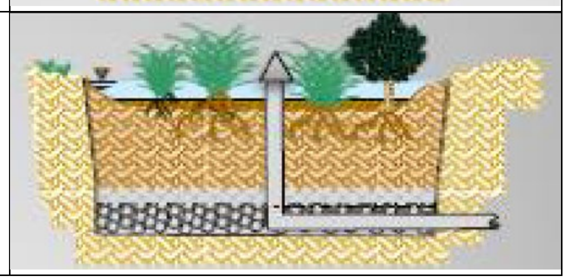
The following fact sheets were developed to assist the project applicants with designing BMPs to meet the storm water obligations.

	MS4 Category	Manual Category	Design Fact Sheet
Enhanced Site Design BMPs	Site Design	Site Design	SD-A: Tree Wells[1] SD-B: Impervious Area Dispersion[1] SD-C: Green Roofs SD-D: Permeable Pavement (Site Design BMP) SD-E: Rain Barrels SD-F: Amended Soils
Structural BMPs	Retention	Harvest and Use	HU-1: Cistern
		Infiltration	INF-1: Infiltration Basins INF-2: Bioretention INF-3: Permeable Pavement (Pollutant Control) INF-4: Dry Wells
		Partial Retention	PR-1: Biofiltration with Partial Retention
	Biofiltration	Biofiltration	BF-1: Biofiltration BF-2: Nutrient Sensitive Media Design BF-3: Proprietary Biofiltration
	Flow-thru Treatment Control[2]	Flow-thru Treatment Control with Alternative Compliance	FT-1: Vegetated Swales FT-2: Media Filters FT-3: Sand Filters FT-4: Dry Extended Detention Basin FT-5: Proprietary Flow-thru Treatment Control
	NA	NA	PL: Plant List

1 – SD-A Tree Wells and SD-B Impervious Area Dispersion can function as Significant Site Design BMPs when sized according to Section 5.2.3

2 – Flow-thru treatment control BMP is not an option as a structural BMP. Carlsbad has not adopted an Alternative Compliance Program.

BMP Comparison Table

BMP Type	Soil Media	Underdrain present?	Bottom Impermeable Liner Present ?	Typical Design
Infiltration (INF-1)	Optional	No	No	
Bioretention (INF-2)	BSM	No	No	
Biofiltration with Partial Retention (PR-1)	BSM	Yes	No	
Biofiltration (BF-1)	BSM	Yes	Yes	

E.1 SD-A Tree Well

(Source: County of San Diego LID Manual – EOA, Inc.)

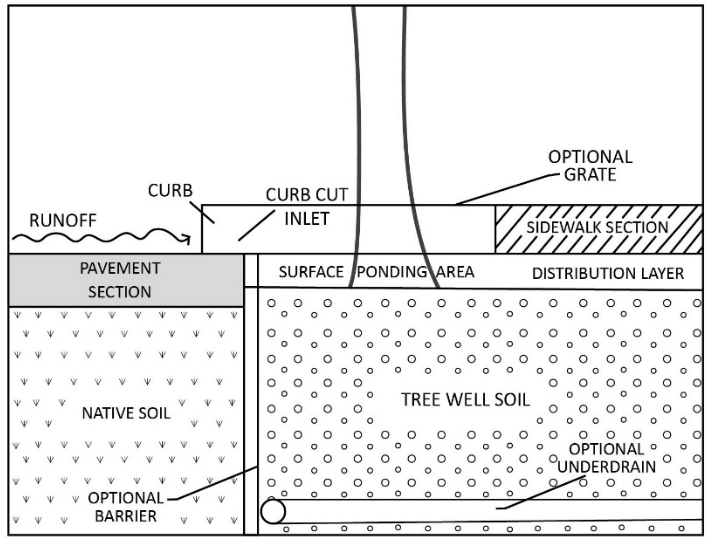
MS4 Permit Category
Site Design Retention
Manual Category
Site Design Infiltration
Applicable Performance Standard
Site Design Pollutant Control Flow Control
Primary Benefits
Volume Reduction

Description

Trees planted to intercept rainfall and runoff as described in this fact sheet may be used as storm water management measures to provide runoff reduction of the DCV per Appendix B.1.4. Additional benefits associated with tree wells, include energy conservation, air quality improvement, and aesthetic enhancement. Tree wells located in the City's Right-of-Way are subject to the discretion of City Engineer and Parks and Recreation Director. Typical storm water management benefits associated with trees include:

- **Treatment of storm water** – Storm water from impervious area should be directed to the tree wells. Trees provide treatment through uptake of nutrients and other storm water pollutants (phytoremediation) and support of other biological processes that break down pollutants
- **Interception of rainfall** – tree surfaces (roots, foliage, bark, and branches) intercept, evaporate, store, or convey precipitation to the soil before it reaches surrounding impervious surfaces
- **Reduced erosion** – trees protect denuded area by intercepting or reducing the velocity of rain drops as they fall through the tree canopy
- **Increased infiltration** – soil conditions created by roots and fallen leaves promote infiltration

Typical tree well system components include:



Schematic of Tree Well

- Directing runoff from impervious areas through a drainage opening into a tree well planting area.
- Trees of the appropriate species for site conditions and constraints. Refer to the Plant List fact sheet (Appendix E.21).
- Available soil media reservoir volume based on mature tree size, soil type, water availability, surrounding land uses, and project goals
- Optional suspended pavement design to provide structural support for adjacent pavement without requiring compaction of underlying layers
- Optional root barrier devices as needed; a root barrier is a device installed in the ground, between a tree and the sidewalk or other structures, intended to guide roots down and away from the sidewalk or structures in order to prevent damage from tree roots.
- Optional tree grates; to be considered to maximize available space for pedestrian circulation and to protect tree roots from compaction related to pedestrian circulation; tree grates are typically made up of porous material that will allow the runoff to soak through.
- Optional shallow surface depression for ponding of excess runoff
- Optional planter box underdrain

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to provide incidental treatment. Tree wells primarily functions as site design BMPs for incidental treatment.

Storm water pollutant control BMP to provide treatment. Project proponents are allowed to design tree wells to reduce the volume of stormwater runoff that requires treatment, (the Design Capture Volume [DCV]), or completely fulfill the pollutant control BMP requirements by retaining the entire DCV. Benefits from tree wells are accounted for by using the volume reduction values in Table B.1-3 presented in Appendix B. This credit can apply to other trees that are used for landscaping purposes that meet the same criteria. Project proponents are required to provide calculations supporting the amount of credit claimed from implementing trees within the project footprint. Tree wells designed to completely fulfill the pollutant control BMP requirements by retaining the entire

DCV are designated as SSD-BMPs and located in Appendix I.

Flow Control BMP to meet hydromodification requirements. Project proponents are also allowed to design tree wells as a flow control BMP. Benefits from tree wells are accounted for by using the DCV multipliers listed in Appendix I. Project proponents are required to provide calculations showing that the entire DCV including the DCV multiplier is retained.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Tree Wells, whether designed as Site Design BMPs, as Stormwater Pollutant Control BMP, or as a Flow Control BMP must meet the following design criteria and considerations, and if placed in the right-of-way must be consistent with the County of San Diego Green Streets Standard Drawings. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	**Tree species** is appropriately chosen for the development (private or public). For public rights-of-ways, city planning guidelines and zoning provisions for the permissible species and placement of trees are consulted. A list of trees appropriate for site design are provided in Appendix E.21	Proper tree placement and species selection minimizes problems such as pavement damage by surface roots and poor growth.
☐	**Tree well placement:** ensure area is graded; and the well is located so that full amount of DCV reduction drains to well.	Minimizes short-circuiting of run off and assures DCV reductions are retained onsite.
☐	**Location of trees** planted along public streets follows city requirements and guidelines. Vehicle and pedestrian line of sight are considered in tree selection and placement. Location of trees planted within private development follows city landscape guidelines. Building setbacks, utility alignments, vehicle and pedestrian line of sight are considered in tree selection and placement. Unless otherwise approved by the City Engineer the following minimum tree separation distance is followed	Roadway safety for both vehicular and pedestrian traffic is a key consideration for placement along public streets.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
	(see table below)	
☐	**Underground utilities and overhead wires** are considered in the design and avoided or circumvented. Underground utilities are routed around or through the planter in suspended pavement applications. All underground utilities are protected from water and root penetration.	Tree growth can damage utilities and overhead wires resulting in service interruptions. Protecting utilities routed through the planter prevents damage and service interruptions.
☐	**Suspended pavement** is used for confined Tree Well soil volume. Suspended pavement design was developed where appropriate to minimize soil compaction and improve infiltration and filtration capabilities. Suspended pavement was constructed with an approved structural cell.	Suspended pavement designs provide structural support without compaction of the underlying layers, thereby promoting tree growth. Recommended structural cells include poured in place concrete columns, Silva Cells manufactured by Deeproot Green Infrastructures and Stratacell and Stratavault systems manufactured by Citygreen Systems or approved equal. Suspended pavement shall not be used within the city's right-of-way and easements.
☐	A minimum soil volume of 2 cubic feet per square foot of canopy projection volume is provided for each tree. Canopy projection area	The minimum soil volume ensures that there is adequate storage volume to allow for unrestricted evapotranspiration and infiltration.

Improvement	Minimum distance to Tree Well
Traffic Signal, Stop sign	20 feet
Underground Utility lines (except sewer)	5 feet
Sewer Lines	10 feet
Above ground utility structures (Transformers, Hydrants, Utility poles, etc.)	10 feet
Driveways	10 feet
Intersections (intersecting curb lines of two streets)	25 feet

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
	is the ground area beneath the tree, measured at the drip line. Soil volume must be within 1.5 times the mature tree canopy radius. Soil depth shall be a minimum of 30 inches deep, preferably 36 inches deep. When placing tree well next to curbs or other structures use Structural Soil as outlined in the section below titled "Confined Tree Well Soil Volume". Use Amended Soil per Fact Sheet SD-F in all other cases.	
☐	DCV from the tributary area draining to the tree is equal to or greater than the tree credit volume	The minimum tributary area ensures that the tree receives enough runoff to fully utilize the infiltration and evapotranspiration potential provided. In cases where the minimum tributary area is not provided, the tree credit volume must be reduced proportionately to the actual tributary area.
☐	Inlet opening to the tree that is at least 18 inches wide. A minimum 2 inch drop in grade from the inlet to the finish grade of the tree. Grated inlets are allowed for pedestrian circulation. Grates need to be ADA compliant and have sufficient slip resistance.	Design requirement to ensure that the runoff from the tributary area is not bypassed. Different inlet openings and drops in grade may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if calculations are shown that the diversion flow rate (Appendix B.4.4) from the tributary area can be conveyed to the tree. In cases where the inlet capacity is limiting the amount of runoff draining to the tree, the tree credit volume must be reduced proportionately.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

Determine the areas where tree wells can be used in the site design to achieve incidental treatment. Tree wells reduce runoff volumes from the site. Refer to Appendix B.1. Document the proposed tree locations in the SWQMP.

For conceptual design and sizing approach for pollutant control and flow control, refer to Appendix I.

Tree Planting Design in New or Reconstructed Streetscapes

1. Maximized open soil area for tree planting is the most cost effective method of achieving the required soil volume.
2. Tree wells within sidewalks shall have a minimum open area of four feet wide by six feet long. Larger areas may be required to accommodate large root balls.
3. Tree well soil characteristics shall meet the requirements of SD-F Amended Soil.

Structural Requirements for Confined Tree Well Soil Volume

In order to provide adequate soil volume for tree wells, soils may be placed confined beneath adjacent paved surfaces. Acceptable soil systems capable of carrying D-50 loading include structural soils, structural slabs, and structural cells:

1. Structural soil systems include CU-StructuralSoil™, Stalite Structural Soil, or equivalent.
2. Suspended pavements that allow uncompacted growing soil beneath the sidewalk include; structural slabs that span between structural supports, structural cells, and other commercially available structural systems. Manufacturer details and certification must be provided for commercial systems. Structural calculations and details must be provided for structural slab installations. Structural cells are commercially-available structural systems placed subsurface that support the sidewalk and are filled with amended soil (SD-F). Manufacturer details and certification must be provided for commercial systems.

Suspended pavement shall not be used within the city's right-of-way and easements.

Stormwater Retention and Treatment Volume

Tree wells with expanded soil volume will serve as a method of capturing and retaining the required volume of stormwater in accordance with City requirements in Appendix B of this manual. These facilities can be designed to meet the City requirements when surface ponding volume is provided, whether designed as an enclosed plant bed with covered soil volume, or a continuous open area (either mulched or with turf) with soil volume under the adjacent sidewalk.

Maintenance Overview

Normal Expected Maintenance. Tree health shall be maintained as part of normal landscape maintenance. Additionally, ensure that storm water runoff can be conveyed into the tree well as designed. That is, the opening that allows storm water runoff to flow into the tree well (e.g., a curb opening, tree grate, or surface depression) shall not be blocked, filled, re-graded, or otherwise changed in a manner that prevents storm water from draining into the tree well. A summary table of standard inspection and maintenance indicators is provided within this Fact Sheet.

Non-Standard Maintenance or BMP Failure. Trees wells are site design BMPs that normally do not require maintenance actions beyond routine landscape maintenance. The normal expected maintenance described above ensures the BMP functionality. If changes have been made to the tree well entrance / opening such that runoff is prevented from draining into the tree well (e.g., a curb inlet opening is blocked by debris or a grate is clogged causing runoff to flow around instead of into the tree well, or a surface depression has been filled so runoff flows away from the tree well), the BMP is not performing as intended to protect downstream waterways from pollution and/or erosion. Corrective maintenance will be required to restore drainage into the tree well as designed.

Surface ponding of runoff directed into tree wells is expected to infiltrate/evapotranspire within 24-96 hours following a storm event. Surface ponding longer than approximately 24 hours following a storm event may be detrimental to vegetation health, and surface ponding longer than approximately 96 hours following a storm event poses a risk of vector (mosquito) breeding. Poor drainage can result from clogging or compaction of the soils surrounding the tree. Loosen or replace the soils to restore drainage.

Other Special Considerations. Site design BMPs, such as tree wells, installed within a new development or redevelopment project are components of an overall storm water management strategy for the project. The presence of site design BMPs within a project is usually a factor in the determination of the amount of runoff to be managed with structural BMPs (i.e., the amount of runoff expected to reach downstream retention or biofiltration basins that process storm water runoff from the project as a whole). When site design BMPs are not maintained or are removed, this can lead to clogging or failure of downstream structural BMPs due to greater delivery of runoff and pollutants than intended for the structural BMP. Therefore, the City Engineer may require confirmation of maintenance of site design BMPs as part of their structural BMP maintenance documentation requirements. Site design BMPs that have been installed as part of the project should not be removed, nor should they be bypassed by re-routing roof drains or re-grading surfaces within the project. If changes are necessary, consult the City Engineer to determine requirements.

Summary of Standard Inspection and Maintenance

The property owner is responsible to ensure inspection, operation and maintenance of permanent BMPs on their property unless responsibility has been formally transferred to an agency, community facilities district, homeowners association, property owners association, or other special district.

Maintenance frequencies listed in this table are average/typical frequencies. Actual maintenance needs are site-specific, and maintenance may be required more frequently. Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on maintenance indicators presented in this table. The BMP owner is responsible for conducting regular inspections to see when maintenance is needed based on the maintenance indicators. During the first year of operation of a structural BMP, inspection is recommended at least once prior to August 31 and then monthly from September through May. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined based on the results of the first year inspections.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Tree health	Routine actions as necessary to maintain tree health.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Dead or diseased tree	Remove dead or diseased tree. Replace per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Standing water in tree well for longer than 24 hours following a storm event Surface ponding longer than approximately 24 hours following a storm event may be detrimental to tree health	Loosen or replace soils surrounding the tree to restore drainage.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.
Presence of mosquitos/larvae For images of egg rafts, larva, pupa, and adult mosquitos, see http://www.mosquito.org/biology	Disperse any standing water from the tree well to nearby landscaping. Loosen or replace soils surrounding the tree to restore drainage (and prevent standing water).	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If mosquitos are observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Entrance / opening to the tree well is blocked such that storm water will not drain into the tree well (e.g., a curb inlet opening is blocked by debris or a grate is clogged causing runoff to flow around instead of into the tree well; or a surface depression is filled such that runoff drains away from the tree well)	Make repairs as appropriate to restore drainage into the tree well.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.

E.2 SD-B Disperse Runoff from Impervious Area (Dispersion Areas)

Photo Credit: Orange County Technical Guidance Document

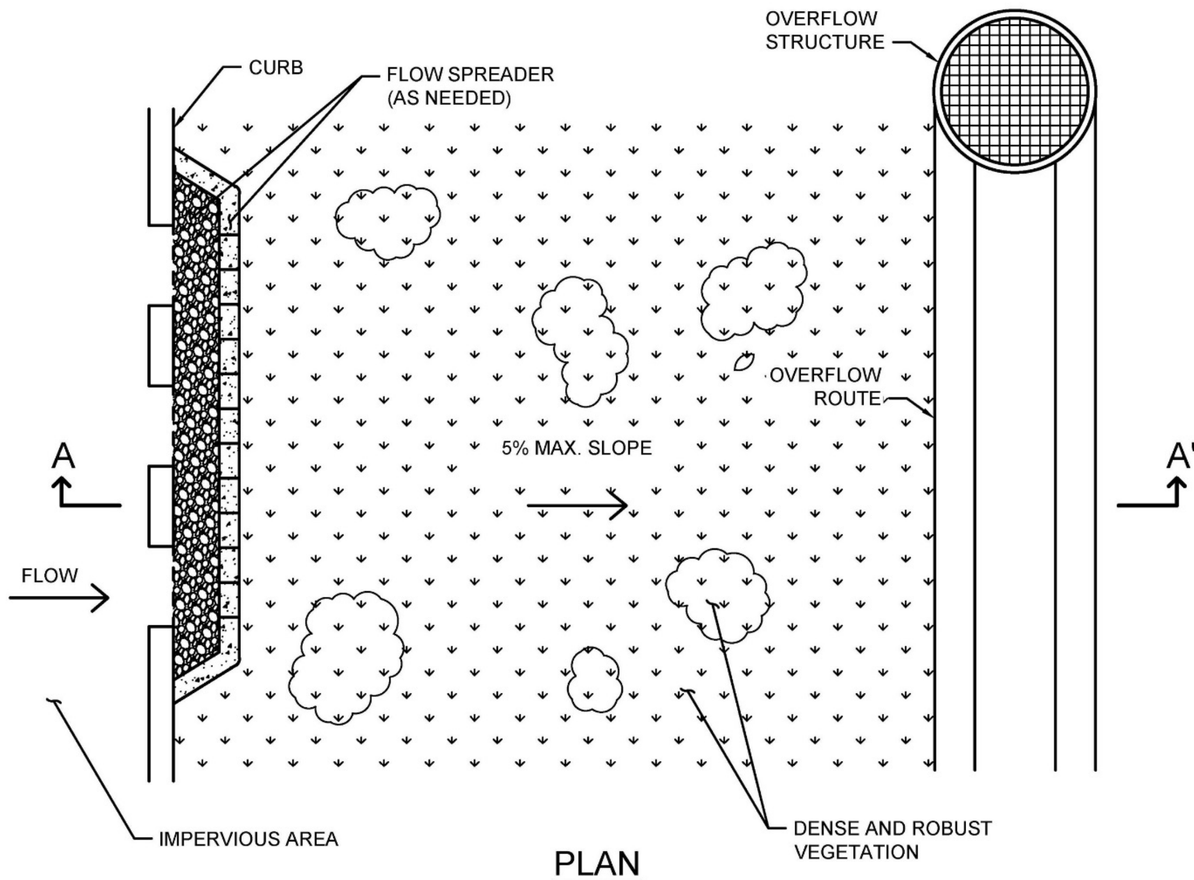
MS4 Permit Category
Site Design Retention
Manual Category
Site Design Infiltration
Applicable Performance Criteria
Site Design Pollutant Control Flow Control
Primary Benefits
Volume Reduction Peak Flow Attenuation

Description

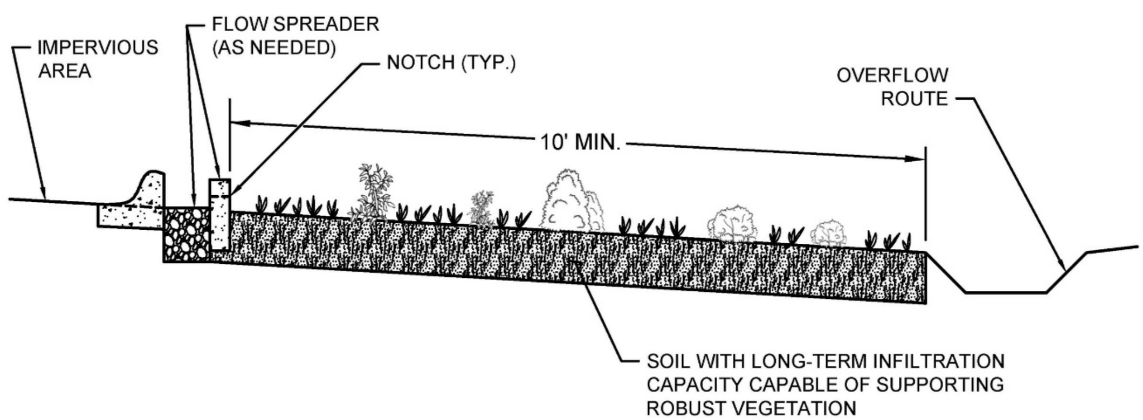
Dispersing runoff from impervious area (dispersion) refers to the practice of effectively disconnecting impervious areas from directly draining to the storm drain system by routing runoff from impervious areas such as rooftops (through downspout disconnection), walkways, and driveways onto the surface of adjacent pervious areas. The intent is to slow runoff discharges and reduce volumes. Dispersion with partial or full infiltration results in significant volume reduction by means of infiltration and evapotranspiration.

Typical dispersion components include:

- An impervious surface from which runoff flows will be routed with minimal piping to limit concentrated inflows
- Splash blocks, flow spreaders, or other means of dispersing concentrated flows and providing energy dissipation as needed
- Dedicated pervious area, typically vegetated, with in-situ soil infiltration capacity for partial or full infiltration
- Optional soil amendments to improve vegetation support, maintain infiltration rates and enhance treatment of routed flows
- Overflow route for excess flows to be conveyed from dispersion area to the storm drain system or discharge point



PLAN
NOT TO SCALE



SECTION A-A'
NOT TO SCALE

Typical plan and section view of a Dispersing Runoff from Impervious Area BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce impervious area and DCV. Dispersing runoff from impervious area primarily functions as a site design BMP for reducing the effective imperviousness of a site by providing partial or full infiltration of the flows that are routed to pervious dispersion areas and otherwise slowing down excess flows that eventually reach the storm drain system. This can significantly reduce the DCV for the site.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Dispersion must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	**Dispersing runoff from impervious area Placement:** ensure area is graded; and located so that full DCV runoff drains to the area of dispersion	Minimizes short-circuiting of runoff
☐	Dispersion is over areas with soil types capable of supporting or being amended (e.g., with sand or compost) to support vegetation. Media amendments must be tested to verify that they are not a source of pollutants.	Soil must have long-term infiltration capacity for partial or full infiltration and be able to support vegetation to provide runoff treatment. Amendments to improve plant growth must not have negative impact on water quality. For more details on Amended Soil, refer to Appendix E, Fact Sheet SD-F.
☐	Dispersion has vegetated sheet flow over a relatively large distance (minimum 10 feet or maximum extent practicable) from inflow to overflow route.	Full or partial infiltration requires relatively large areas to be effective depending on the permeability of the underlying soils.
☐	Pervious areas should be flat (with less than 5% slopes) and vegetated.	Flat slopes facilitate sheet flows and minimize velocities, thereby improving treatment and reducing the likelihood of erosion.
	Inflow velocities	
☐	Inflow velocities are limited to 3 ft/s or less or use energy dissipation methods (e.g., riprap, level spreader) for concentrated inflows.	High inflow velocities can cause erosion, scour and/or channeling.
	Dedication	

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Dispersion areas must be owned by the project owner and be dedicated for the purposes of dispersion to the exclusion of other future uses that might reduce the effectiveness of the dispersion area.	Dedicated dispersion areas prevent future conversion to alternate uses and facilitate continued full and partial infiltration benefits.

	Vegetation	
☐	Dispersion typically requires dense and robust vegetation for proper function. Drought tolerant species should be selected to minimize irrigation needs. A plant list to aid in selection can be found in Appendix E.21.	Vegetation improves resistance to erosion and aids in runoff treatment.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where dispersion can be used in the site design to reduce the DCV for pollutant control sizing.
2. Calculate the DCV for storm water pollutant control per Appendix B.1 taking into account reduced runoff from dispersion.
3. Determine if a DMA is considered "Self-retaining" if the impervious to pervious ratio is:
    a. 2:1 when the pervious area is composed of Hydrologic Soil Group A
    b. 1:1 when the pervious area is composed of Hydrologic Soil Group B

Dispersing runoff from impervious areas designed to meet both pollutant control and flow control requirements are designated as SSD-BMPs (Appendix I).

Maintenance Overview

Normal Expected Maintenance. Vegetated area shall be maintained as part of normal landscape maintenance. Additionally, ensure that storm water runoff can be conveyed into the vegetated area as designed. That is, the mechanism that allows storm water runoff from impervious area to flow into the pervious area (e.g., a curb cut allows runoff from a parking lot to drain onto adjacent landscaping area, or a roof drain outlet is directed to a lawn) shall not be removed, blocked, filled, or otherwise changed in a manner that prevents storm water from draining into the pervious area. A summary table of standard inspection and maintenance indicators is provided within this Fact Sheet.

Non-Standard Maintenance or BMP Failure. Impervious area dispersion is a site design BMP that normally does not require maintenance actions beyond routine landscape maintenance. If changes have been made to the area, such as the vegetated area has been replaced with impervious area, or the mechanism that allows storm water runoff from impervious area to flow into the pervious area has been removed (e.g., roof drains previously directed to vegetated area have been directly connected to the street or storm drain system), the BMP is not performing as intended to protect downstream waterways from pollution and/or erosion. Corrective maintenance will be required to restore drainage into the pervious area as designed. If the pervious area has been removed, contact the City Engineer to determine a solution.

Runoff directed into vegetated areas is expected to be drained within 24-96 hours following a storm event. Surface ponding longer than approximately 24 hours following a storm event may be detrimental to vegetation health, and surface ponding longer than approximately 96 hours following a storm event poses a risk of vector (mosquito) breeding. Poor drainage can result from clogging or compaction of the soils. Loosen or replace the soils to restore drainage.

Other Special Considerations. Site design BMPs, such as impervious area dispersion, installed within a new development or redevelopment project are components of an overall storm water management strategy for the project. The presence of site design BMPs within a project is usually a factor in the determination of the amount of runoff to be managed with structural BMPs (i.e., the amount of runoff expected to reach downstream retention or biofiltration basins that process storm water runoff from the project as a whole). When site design BMPs are not maintained or are removed, this can lead to clogging or failure of downstream structural BMPs due to greater delivery of runoff and pollutants than intended for the structural BMP. Therefore, the City Engineer may require confirmation of maintenance of site design BMPs as part of their structural BMP maintenance documentation requirements. Site design BMPs that have been installed as part of the project should not be removed, nor should they be bypassed by re-routing roof drains or re-grading surfaces within the project. If changes are necessary, consult the City Engineer to determine requirements.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Summary of Standard Inspection and Maintenance

The property owner is responsible to ensure inspection, operation and maintenance of permanent BMPs on their property unless responsibility has been formally transferred to an agency, community facilities district, homeowners association, property owners association, or other special district.

Maintenance frequencies listed in this table are average/typical frequencies. Actual maintenance needs are site-specific, and maintenance may be required more frequently. Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on maintenance indicators presented in this table. The BMP owner is responsible for conducting regular inspections to see when maintenance is needed based on the maintenance indicators. During the first year of operation of a structural BMP, inspection is recommended at least once prior to August 31 and then monthly from September through May. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined based on the results of the first year inspections.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Poor vegetation establishment	Re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Dead or diseased vegetation	Remove dead or diseased vegetation, re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Overgrown vegetation	Mow or trim as appropriate.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Standing water in vegetated pervious area for longer than 24 hours following a storm event Surface ponding longer than approximately 24 hours following a storm event may be detrimental to vegetation health	Disperse any areas of standing water to nearby landscaping (i.e., spread it out to another portion of the pervious area so it drains into the soil). Make appropriate corrective measures such as adjusting irrigation system, or repairing/replacing clogged or compacted soils.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Presence of mosquitos/larvae For images of egg rafts, larva, pupa, and adult mosquitos, see http://www.mosquito.org/biology	Disperse any areas of standing water to nearby landscaping (i.e., spread it out to another portion of the pervious area so it drains into the soil). Loosen or replace soils to restore drainage (and prevent standing water)	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If mosquitos are observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed
Entrance / opening to the vegetated pervious area is blocked such that storm water from impervious area will not drain into the pervious area (e.g., a curb cut opening is blocked by debris or a roof drain outlet has been directly connected to the storm drain system)	Make repairs as appropriate to restore drainage into the vegetated pervious area.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.

E.3 SD-C Green Roofs

Location: County of San Diego Operations Center, San Diego, California

MS4 Permit Category	
Site Design	
Manual Category	
Site Design	
Applicable Performance Standard	
Site Design	
Primary Benefits	
Volume Reduction Peak Flow Attenuation	

Description

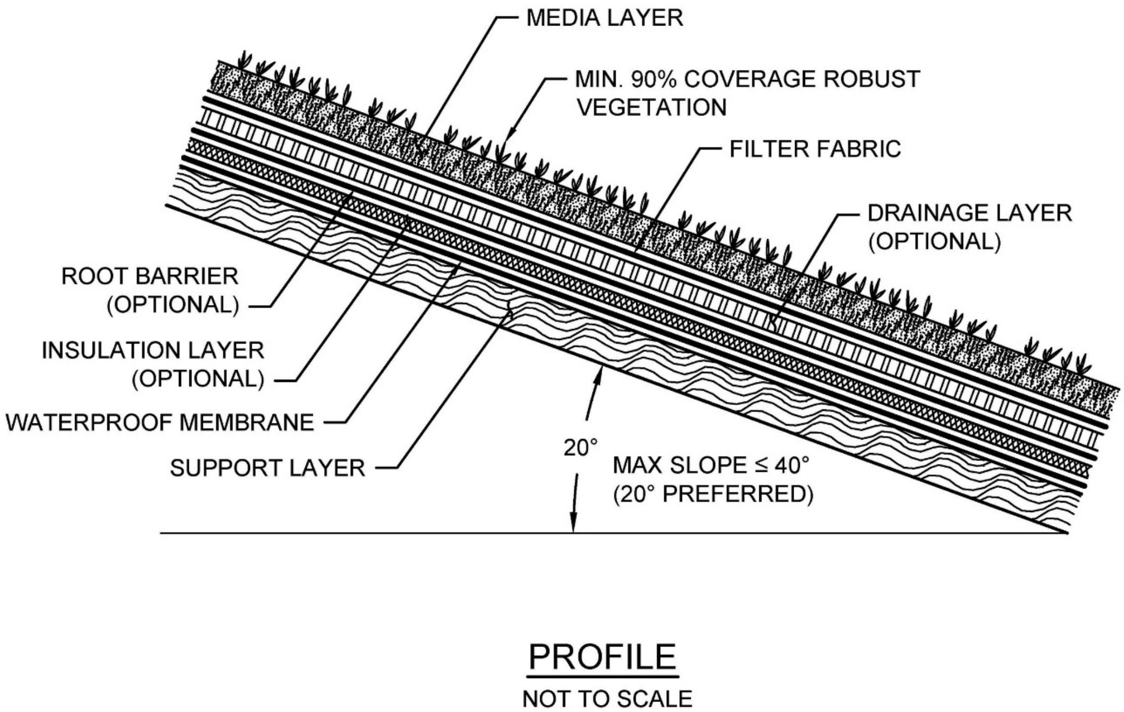
Green roofs are vegetated rooftop systems that reduce runoff volumes and rates, treat storm water pollutants through filtration and plant uptake, provide additional landscape amenity, and create wildlife habitat. Additionally, green roofs reduce the heat island effect and provide acoustical control, air filtration and oxygen production. In terms of building design, they can protect against ultraviolet rays and extend the roof lifetime, as well as increase the building insulation, thereby decreasing heating and cooling costs. There are two primary types of green roofs:

- **Extensive** – lightweight, low maintenance system with low-profile, drought tolerant type groundcover in shallow growing medium (6 inches or less)
- **Intensive** – heavyweight, high maintenance system with a more garden-like configuration and diverse plantings that may include shrubs or trees in a thicker growing medium (greater than 6 inches)

Typical green roof components include, from top to bottom:

- Vegetation that is appropriate to the type of green roof system, climate, and watering conditions
- Media layer (planting mix or engineered media) capable of supporting vegetation growth
- Filter fabric to prevent migration of fines (soils) into the drainage layer

- Optional drainage layer to convey excess runoff
- Optional root barrier
- Optional insulation layer
- Waterproof membrane
- Structural roof support capable of withstanding the additional weight of a green roof



Typical profile of a Green Roof BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to provide incidental treatment. Green roofs can be used as a site design feature to reduce the runoff generated from the site through replacing conventional roofing. This can reduce the DCV and flow control requirements for the site.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Green roofs must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Roof slope is ≤ 40% (Roofs that are ≤ 20% are preferred).	Steep roof slopes increases project complexity and requires supplemental anchoring.
☐	Structural roof capacity design supports the calculated additional load (lbs/sq. ft) of the vegetation growing medium and additional drainage and barrier layers.	Inadequate structural capacity increases the risk for roof failure and harm to the building and occupants.
☐	Design and construction is planned to be completed by an experienced green roof specialist.	A green roof specialist will minimize complications in implementation and potential structural issues that are critical to green roof success.
☐	Green roof location and extent must meet fire safety provisions.	Green roof design must not negatively impact fire safety.
☐	Maintenance access is included in the green roof design.	Maintenance will facilitate proper functioning of drainage and irrigation components and allow for removal of undesirable vegetation and soil testing, as needed.
	Vegetation	
☐	Vegetation is suitable for the green roof type, climate and expected watering conditions. Perennial, self-sowing plants that are drought-tolerant (e.g., sedums, succulents) and require little to no fertilizer, pesticides or herbicides are recommended. Vegetation pre-grown at grade may allow plants to establish prior to facing harsh roof conditions.	Plants suited to the design and expected growing environment are more likely to survive.
☐	Vegetation is capable of covering ≥ 90% the roof surface.	Benefits of green roofs are greater with more surface vegetation.
☐	Vegetation is robust and erosion-resistant in order to withstand the anticipated rooftop environment (e.g., heat, cold, high winds).	Weak plants will not survive in extreme rooftop environments.
☐	Vegetation is fire resistant.	Vegetation that will not burn easily decreases the chance for fire and harm to the building and occupants.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Vegetation considers roof sun exposure and shaded areas based on roof slope and location.	The amount of sunlight the vegetation receives can inhibit growth therefore the beneficial effects of a vegetated roof.
☐	An irrigation system (e.g., drip irrigation system) is included as necessary to maintain vegetation.	Proper watering will increase plant survival, especially for new plantings.
☐	Media is well-drained and is the appropriate depth required for the green roof type and vegetation supported.	Unnecessary water retention increases structural loading. An adequate media depth increases plant survival.
☐	A filter fabric is used to prevent migration of media fines through the system.	Migration of media can cause clogging of the drainage layer.
☐	A drainage layer is provided if needed to convey runoff safely from the roof. The drainage layer can be comprised of gravel, perforated sheeting, or other drainage materials.	Inadequate drainage increases structural loading and the risk of harm to the building and occupants.
☐	A root barrier comprised of dense material to inhibit root penetration is used if the waterproof membrane will not provide root penetration protection.	Root penetration can decrease the integrity of the underlying structural roof components and increase the risk of harm to the building and occupants.
☐	An insulation layer is included as needed to protect against the water in the drainage layer from extracting building heat in the winter and cool air in the summer.	Regulating thermal impacts of green roofs will aid in controlling building heating and cooling costs.
☐	A waterproof membrane is used to prevent the roof runoff from vertically migrating and damaging the roofing material. A root barrier may be required to prevent roots from compromising the integrity of the membrane.	Water-damaged roof materials increase the risk of harm to the building and occupants.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where green roofs can be used in the site design to replace conventional roofing to reduce the DCV. These green roof areas can be credited toward reducing runoff generated through representation in storm water calculations as pervious, not impervious, areas but are not credited for storm water pollutant control.

2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B.2.

Maintenance Overview

Normal Expected Maintenance. A green roof requires routine maintenance to: maintain vegetation health; and maintain integrity of the roof drainage system. A summary table of standard inspection and maintenance indicators is provided within this Fact Sheet.

Non-Standard Maintenance or BMP Failure. Green roofs are site design BMPs that normally do not require maintenance actions beyond the normal maintenance described above. If a roof leak is discovered, it may be an indicator that the waterproof membrane has failed. The waterproof membrane (roof liner) shall be inspected and repaired or replaced as necessary.

Green roof systems normally receive only direct rainfall (not runoff from additional tributary area directed into the system). It is expected to be drained within 24-96 hours following a storm event. Surface ponding longer than approximately 24 hours following a storm event may be detrimental to vegetation health, and surface ponding longer than approximately 96 hours following a storm event poses a risk of vector (mosquito) breeding, as well as risk of damage to the roof. Poor drainage can result from clogging or compaction of the media, optional drainage layer, or drainage system. The specific cause of the drainage issue must be determined and corrected.

Other Special Considerations. Site design BMPs, such as green roofs, installed within a new development or redevelopment project are components of an overall storm water management strategy for the project. The presence of site design BMPs within a project is usually a factor in the determination of the amount of runoff to be managed with structural BMPs (i.e., the amount of runoff expected to reach downstream retention or biofiltration basins that process storm water runoff from the project as a whole). When site design BMPs are not maintained or are removed, this can lead to clogging or failure of downstream structural BMPs due to greater delivery of runoff and pollutants than intended for the structural BMP. Therefore, the City Engineer may require confirmation of maintenance of site design BMPs as part of their structural BMP maintenance documentation requirements. Site design BMPs that have been installed as part of the project should not be removed, nor should they be bypassed by re-routing roof drains or re-grading surfaces within the project. If changes are necessary, consult the City Engineer to determine requirements.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Summary of Standard Inspection and Maintenance

The property owner is responsible to ensure inspection, operation and maintenance of permanent BMPs on their property unless responsibility has been formally transferred to an agency, community facilities district, homeowners association, property owners association, or other special district.

Maintenance frequencies listed in this table are average/typical frequencies. Actual maintenance needs are site-specific, and maintenance may be required more frequently. Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on maintenance indicators presented in this table. The BMP owner is responsible for conducting regular inspections to see when maintenance is needed based on the maintenance indicators. During the first year of operation of a structural BMP, inspection is recommended at least once prior to August 31 and then monthly from September through May. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined based on the results of the first year inspections.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Poor vegetation establishment	Re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Dead or diseased vegetation	Remove dead or diseased vegetation, re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Overgrown vegetation	Mow or trim as appropriate.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Standing water in BMP for longer than 24 hours following a storm event Surface ponding longer than approximately 24 hours following a storm event may be detrimental to vegetation health	Disperse any areas of standing water to nearby landscaping (i.e., spread it out to another portion of the green roof so it drains into the soil). Make appropriate corrective measures such as adjusting irrigation system, clearing underdrains, or repairing/replacing clogged or compacted soils.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.
Presence of mosquitos/larvae For images of egg rafts, larva, pupa, and adult mosquitos, see http://www.mosquito.org/biology	Disperse any areas of standing water to nearby landscaping (i.e., spread it out to another portion of the green roof so it drains into the soil). Loosen or replace soils to restore drainage (and prevent standing water).	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If mosquitos are observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed
Leaks or other damage to waterproof membrane	Repair or replace as applicable.	• Inspect membrane if leak is observed. • Maintain when needed.

E.4 SD-D Permeable Pavement (Site Design BMP)

Photo Credit: San Diego Low Impact Development Design Manual

MS4 Permit Category	
Site Design	
Manual Category	
Site Design	
Applicable Performance Standard	
Site Design	
Primary Benefits	

Description

Typical Permeable Pavement Components (Top to Bottom)
Permeable surface layer
Bedding layer for permeable surface
Aggregate storage layer with optional underdrain(s)
Optional final filter course layer over uncompacted existing subgrade

Permeable pavement is pavement that allows for percolation through void spaces in the pavement surface into subsurface layers. Permeable pavements reduce runoff volumes and rates and can provide pollutant control via infiltration, filtration, sorption, sedimentation, and biodegradation processes. When used as a site design BMP, the subsurface layers are designed to provide storage of storm water runoff so that outflow rates can be controlled via infiltration into subgrade soils. Varying levels of storm water treatment and flow control can be provided depending on the size of the permeable pavement system relative to its drainage area and the underlying infiltration rates. As a site design BMP permeable pavement areas are designed to be self-retaining and are designed primarily for direct rainfall. Self-retaining permeable pavement areas have a ratio of total drainage area (including permeable pavement) to area of permeable pavement of 1.5:1 or less. Permeable pavement surfaces can be constructed from modular paver units or paver blocks, pervious concrete, porous asphalt, and turf pavers. Sites designed with permeable pavements can significantly reduce the impervious area of the project. Reduction in impervious surfaces decreases the DCV and can reduce the footprint of treatment control and flow control BMPs.

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce impervious area and DCV. Permeable pavement without an underdrain or an impermeable liner can be used as a site design feature to reduce the impervious area of the site by replacing traditional pavements, including roadways, parking lots, emergency access lanes, sidewalks, trails and driveways.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Permeable Pavement (Site Design BMP) must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	For site design permeable pavement, the ratio of the total drainage area (including the permeable pavement) to the permeable pavement should not exceed 1.5:1.	Higher ratios increase the potential for clogging.
☐	The structural section is in accordance with the manufacturer's guidance and project soils engineering's recommendations. Overflows and storm drain lines may still be required.	Ensures that the permeable pavement facility can be designed to provide adequate drainage system.
☐	Use appropriate thickness for permeable surface layer for vehicular loading.	Permeable concrete requires a 6-inch minimum surface layer of permeable concrete. Permeable asphalt requires a 1 ½ -inch minimum surface layer of permeable asphalt. Permeable pavers require a 2 3/8-inch minimum surface layer of permeable pavers or the manufacturer's recommendations.
☐	Use appropriate thickness and material for bedding layer for vehicular loading.	Permeable concrete requires 4 inches of crushed rock as a choker layer. Permeable asphalt requires a 3-inch minimum layer of crushed rock as a base course, and 4 inches of crushed rock as a choker layer. Permeable pavers require a 2-inch layer of crushed rock as a base course, and 4 inches of crushed rock as a choker layer.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	No erodible areas drain on to permeable pavement. In addition, permeable pavement shall not be placed in an area with significant overhanging trees or other vegetation.	Minimizes clogging. Sediment, leaves and organic debris can clog the pavement surface.
☐	Show system slope and direction of slope on plans.	Ensures the system functions properly. Typically, the system is only suitable on flat slope.
☐	Show cross-section of system assembly with complete dimensions and detailing on plans.	Ensures that the system gets constructed and functions properly.
☐	Specific maintenance program on plans – e.g., debris removal, vacuum sweeping twice per year, resetting pavers as needed.	Ensures system remains permeable.
☐	Note on plans: “No sealant shall be applied to constructed Permeable surfaces.”	The purpose is to allow stormwater to percolate through the permeable surfaces.
☐	When finish grade of the permeable pavement has a slope of 10% or less, bench subgrade to have a slope of 0%. Distance between steps is determined by the slope of the pavement to achieve a step no more than 12” tall. The manufacturer’s recommendations for permeable pavers may supersede the benching described above. Consult with fire prevention for surfacing requirements.	Avoids concentrated flows downstream.
☐	Geotextile or filter course layer may be provided along perimeter.	Geotextile or filter course layer can prevent natural soil from clogging aggregate voids.
☐	No impervious liners or moisture barriers.	Infiltration of stormwater into native soils, if allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge, mimicking natural drainage characteristics as similar to pervious surface.
☐	Natural soil beneath shall be well-draining with minimal compaction.	Infiltration of stormwater into native soils, if allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge, mimicking natural

Siting and Design		*Intent/Rationale*
		drainage characteristics as similar to pervious surface.
☐	Concrete divider strip shall be provided between system and adjacent impervious materials and as edge restraints.	Provides structural stability.
☐	Fire prevention must verify system is acceptable to support fire apparatus.	Allows for a safe access in case of an emergency.
☐	System may not disturb underground utilities.	Underground utilities have specific requirements and guidelines for clearances.
☐	Paver gaps, changes in elevation, and slopes must meet accessibility requirements if applicable.	Provides accessibility and complies with ADA requirements if applicable.
☐	Permeable pavers are not to be used in areas of high traffic volume.	Pavers are not intended to be used in areas of high traffic volume and areas where vehicular speed is excessive. Parking areas and low-speed access roads are examples of ideal applications.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where permeable pavements can be used in the site design to replace conventional pavements.
2. Stormwater runoff from pervious areas often contribute sediment and lead to clogging and increased maintenance requirements for pervious pavement, and should be avoided to the extent possible. Ideally, at least 90-percent of the area draining to pervious pavement shall be impervious, not including the permeable pavement area itself. Pretreatment and drainage area stabilization are options that City staff will consider for implementation where contributing drainage area is less than 90-percent impervious.
3. The wearing surface shall meet the latest ADA requirements. The wearing surface is the pavement material plus any required bedding layers under the surface and inside of the joints, in accordance with all applicable standard details, specifications and manufacturer recommendations as applicable.
4. Stormwater conveyance from all impervious areas including standard pavement shall, to the extent feasible, drain to permeable pavement as sheet flow. Otherwise pre-treatment for energy dissipation and sediment control may be required where any concentrated flow is directed onto pervious pavement. Level spreaders may be designed to convert concentrated flow to sheet flow into the pervious pavement facility.
5. When the ratio of total drainage area (including permeable pavement) to area of permeable

pavement is 1.5:1 or less and all other design requirements of this Fact Sheet are satisfied, a DMA is considered self-retaining for pollutant control only. A DMA cannot satisfy hydromodification management performance standards using permeable pavement as a Site Design BMP.

Maintenance Overview

Normal Expected Maintenance. Routine maintenance of permeable pavement includes: removal of materials such as trash and debris accumulated on the paving surface; vacuuming of the paving surface to prevent clogging; and flushing paving and subsurface gravel to remove fine sediment. If the BMP includes underdrains, check and clear underdrains. A summary table of standard inspection and maintenance indicators is provided within this Fact Sheet.

Non-Standard Maintenance or BMP Failure. If the permeable pavement area is not drained between storm events, or if runoff sheet flows across the permeable pavement area and flows off the permeable pavement area during storm events, the BMP is not performing as intended to protect downstream waterways from pollution and/or erosion. During storm events up to the 85th percentile storm event (approximately 0.6 inch of rainfall in City of Carlsbad), runoff should not flow off the permeable pavement area. The permeable pavement area is expected to have adequate hydraulic conductivity and storage such that rainfall landing on the permeable pavement and runoff from the surrounding drainage area will go directly into the pavement without ponding or overflow (in properly designed systems, the surrounding drainage area is not more than half as large as the permeable pavement area). Following the storm event, there should be no standing water (puddles) on the permeable pavement area.

If storm water is flowing off the permeable pavement during a storm event, or if there is standing water on the permeable pavement surface following a storm event, this is an indicator of clogging somewhere within the system. Poor drainage can result from clogging of the permeable surface layer, any of the subsurface components, or the subgrade soils. The specific cause of the drainage issue must be determined and corrected. Surface or subsurface ponding longer than approximately 96 hours following a storm event poses a risk of vector (mosquito) breeding. Corrective maintenance, increased inspection and maintenance, BMP replacement, or a different BMP type will be required. If poor drainage persists after flushing of the paving, subsurface gravel, and/or underdrain(s) when applicable, or if it is determined that the underlying soils do not have the infiltration capacity expected, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.

Other Special Considerations. Site design BMPs, such as permeable pavement, installed within a new development or redevelopment project are components of an overall storm water management strategy for the project. The presence of site design BMPs within a project is usually a factor in the determination of the amount of runoff to be managed with structural BMPs (i.e., the amount of runoff expected to reach downstream retention or biofiltration basins that process storm water runoff from the project as a whole). When site design BMPs are not maintained or are removed, this can lead to clogging or failure of downstream structural BMPs due to greater delivery of runoff and pollutants than intended for the structural BMP. Therefore, the City Engineer may require confirmation of maintenance of site design BMPs as part of their structural BMP maintenance documentation requirements. Site design BMPs that have been installed as part of the project should not be removed, nor should they be bypassed by re-routing roof drains or re-grading surfaces within the project. If changes are necessary, consult the City Engineer to determine requirements.

The runoff storage and infiltration surface area in this BMP are not readily accessible because they are subsurface. This means that clogging and poor drainage are not easily corrected. If the tributary area draining to the BMP includes unpaved areas, the sediment load from the tributary drainage area can be too high, reducing BMP function or clogging the BMP. All unpaved areas within the tributary drainage area should be stabilized with vegetation. Other pretreatment components to prevent transport of sediment to the paving surface, such as grass buffer strips, will extend the life of the subsurface components and infiltration surface. Along with proper stabilization measures and pretreatment within the tributary area, routine maintenance, including preventive vacuum/regenerative air street sweeping, is key to preventing clogging.

Summary of Standard Inspection and Maintenance

The property owner is responsible to ensure inspection, operation and maintenance of permanent BMPs on their property unless responsibility has been formally transferred to an agency, community facilities district, homeowners association, property owners association, or other special district.

Maintenance frequencies listed in this table are average/typical frequencies. Actual maintenance needs are site-specific, and maintenance may be required more frequently. Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on maintenance indicators presented in this table. The BMP owner is responsible for conducting regular inspections to see when maintenance is needed based on the maintenance indicators. During the first year of operation of a structural BMP, inspection is recommended at least once prior to August 31 and then monthly from September through May. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined based on the results of the first year inspections.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Preventive vacuum/regenerative air street sweeping	Pavement should be swept with a vacuum power or regenerative air street sweeper to maintain infiltration through paving surface	• Schedule/perform this preventive action at least twice per year.
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris on permeable pavement surface	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials. Inspect tributary area for exposed soil or other sources of sediment and apply stabilization measures to sediment source areas. Apply source control measures as applicable to sources of litter or debris.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Weeds growing on/through the permeable pavement surface	Remove weeds and add features as necessary to prevent weed intrusion. Use non-chemical methods (e.g., instead of pesticides, control weeds using mechanical removal, physical barriers, and/or physical changes in the surrounding area adjacent to pavement that will preclude weed intrusion into the pavement).	• Inspect monthly. • Remove any weeds found at each inspection.
Standing water in permeable paving area following a storm event, or runoff is observed overflowing off the permeable paving surface during a storm event	This condition requires investigation of why infiltration is not occurring. If feasible, corrective action shall be taken to restore infiltration (e.g., pavement should be swept with a vacuum power or regenerative air street sweeper to restore infiltration rates, clear underdrains if underdrains are present). BMP may require retrofit if infiltration cannot be restored. The City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any repairs or reconstruction.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Presence of mosquitos/larvae For images of egg rafts, larva, pupa, and adult mosquitos, see http://www.mosquito.org/biology	If mosquitos/larvae are observed: first, immediately remove any standing water by dispersing to nearby landscaping; second, make corrective measures as applicable to restore BMP drainage to prevent standing water. If mosquitos persist following corrective measures to remove standing water, or if the BMP design does not meet the 96-hour drawdown criteria because the underlying soils do not have the infiltration capacity expected, the City Engineer shall be contacted to determine a solution. A different BMP type, or a Vector Management Plan prepared with concurrence from the County of San Diego Department of Environmental Health, may be required.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If mosquitos are observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.
Damage to permeable paving surface (e.g., cracks, settlement, misaligned paver blocks, void spaces between paver blocks need fill materials replenished)	Repair or replace damaged surface as appropriate.	• Inspect annually. • Maintain when needed.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

E.5 SD-E Rain Barrels

Photo Credit: San Diego Low Impact Development Design Manual

MS4 Permit Category
Site Design
Manual Category
Site Design
Applicable Performance Standard
Site Design
Primary Benefits

Description

Rain barrels are containers that can capture rooftop runoff and store it for future use. With controlled timing and volume release, the captured rainwater can be used for irrigation or alternative grey water between storm events, thereby reducing runoff volumes and associated pollutants to downstream waterbodies. Rain barrels tend to be smaller systems, less than 100 gallons and have low installation costs. Treatment can be achieved when rain barrels are used as part of a treatment train along with other BMPs that use captured flows in applications that do not result in discharges into the storm drain system. Rooftops are the ideal tributary areas for rain barrels. Due to Carlsbad's arid climate, some rain barrels may fill only a few times each year.

Typical Rain Barrel Components
Storage container, barrel or tank for holding captured flows
Inlet and associated valves and piping
Outlet and associated valves and piping
Overflow outlet
Optional pump
Optional first flush diverters
Optional roof, supports, foundation, level indicator, and other accessories

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce effective impervious area and DCV. Barrels can be used as a site design feature to reduce the effective impervious area of the site by removing roof runoff from the site discharge. This can reduce the DCV and flow control requirements for the site.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where rain barrels can be used in the site design to capture roof runoff to reduce the DCV. Rain barrels reduce the effective impervious area of the site by removing roof runoff from the site discharge.

2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B.1, taking into account reduced runoff from permeable pavement areas. Credit can be taken for the full rain barrel volume when each barrel volume is smaller than 100 gallons, and meet the following criteria: total rain barrel volume is less than 0.25 DCV and landscape areas are greater than 30 percent of the project footprint. Credit for harvest and use systems that do not meet the above criteria must be based on the criteria in Appendix B.3 and HU-1 fact sheet.

Maintenance Overview

Normal Expected Maintenance. Rain barrels can be expected to accumulate some debris that is small enough to pass through the inlet into the storage container. Leaves may accumulate at the inlet. Ancillary parts including valves, piping, screens, level indicators, and other accessories will wear and require occasional replacement. Maintenance of a rain barrel generally involves: removing accumulated debris from the inlet and storage container on a routine basis; and replacement of ancillary parts on an as-needed basis. A summary table of standard inspection and maintenance indicators is provided within this Fact Sheet. If the system includes a pump, maintenance of the pump shall be based on the manufacturer's recommended maintenance plan.

Non-Standard Maintenance or BMP Failure. If any of the following scenarios are observed, the BMP is not performing as intended to protect downstream waterways from pollution and/or erosion. Corrective maintenance, increased inspection and maintenance, BMP replacement, or a different BMP type will be required.

- The inlet is found to be obstructed at every inspection such that storm water bypasses the rain barrel. The rain barrel is not functioning properly if it is not capturing storm water. This would require addition of ancillary features to protect the inlet, such as screens on roof gutters.
- The rain barrel is not drained between storm events. If the rain barrel is not drained between storm events, the storage volume will be diminished and the rain barrel will not capture the required volume of storm water from subsequent storms. This would require implementation of practices onsite to drain and use the stored water, or a different BMP if onsite use cannot be reliably sustained.

Other Special Considerations. Site design BMPs, such as rain barrels, installed within a new development or redevelopment project are components of an overall storm water management strategy for the project. The presence of site design BMPs within a project is usually a factor in the determination of the amount of runoff to be managed with structural BMPs (i.e., the amount of runoff expected to reach downstream retention or biofiltration basins that process storm water runoff from the project as a whole). When site design BMPs are not maintained or are removed, this can lead to clogging or failure of downstream structural BMPs due to greater delivery of runoff and pollutants than intended for the structural BMP. Therefore, the City Engineer may require confirmation of maintenance of site design BMPs as part of their structural BMP maintenance documentation requirements. Site design BMPs that have been installed as part of the project should not be removed, nor should they be bypassed by re-routing roof drains or re-grading surfaces within the project. If changes are necessary, consult the City Engineer to determine requirements.

Summary of Standard Inspection and Maintenance

The property owner is responsible to ensure inspection, operation and maintenance of permanent BMPs on their property unless responsibility has been formally transferred to an agency, community facilities district, homeowners association, property owners association, or other special district.

Maintenance frequencies listed in this table are average/typical frequencies. Actual maintenance needs are site-specific, and maintenance may be required more frequently. Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on maintenance indicators presented in this table. The BMP owner is responsible for conducting regular inspections to see when maintenance is needed based on the maintenance indicators. During the first year of operation of a structural BMP, inspection is recommended at least once prior to August 31 and then monthly from September through May. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined based on the results of the first year inspections.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Accumulation of debris at the inlet	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.
Outlet blocked	Clear blockage.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.
Accumulation of debris in the storage container	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials.	• Inspect twice per year. • Maintain when needed.
Leaks or other damage to storage container	Repair or replace as applicable.	• Inspect twice per year. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Standing water in storage container between storm events outside of normal use timeframe for the stored water. Normal use timeframe is 36 to 96 hours following a storm event.	Use the water as intended, or disperse to landscaping.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.
Presence of mosquitos/larvae For images of egg rafts, larva, pupa, and adult mosquitos, see http://www.mosquito.org/biology	If mosquitos/larvae are observed: first, immediately remove any standing water by using the water as intended for irrigation or alternative grey water, or by or dispersing to landscaping; second, check outlet for blockage and clear blockage if applicable to restore drainage; third, install barriers such as screens that prevent mosquito access to the storage container.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If mosquitos are observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.
Leaks or other damage to ancillary parts including valves, piping, screens, level indicators, and other accessories	Repair or replace as applicable.	• Inspect twice per year. • Maintain when needed.
Rain barrel leaning or unstable, damage to roof, supports, anchors, or foundation	Make repairs as appropriate to correct the problem and stabilize the system.	• Inspect twice per year. • Maintain when needed.

E.6 SD-F Amended Soils

Photo Credit: Orange County Technical Guidance Document

MS4 Permit Category
Site Design
Manual Category
Site Design
Applicable Performance Standard
Site Design
Primary Benefits
Volume Reduction Peak Flow Attenuation

Description

Amended soils are soils whose physical, chemical, and biological characteristics have been altered from the natural condition to promote beneficial storm water characteristics. Amended soils shall be used as part of SD-B Impervious Area Dispersion, where applicable. Typical storm water management benefits associated with amended soils include:

- **Improved hydrologic characteristics**—amended soils can promote infiltration, decrease runoff rates and volumes, and more effectively filter pollutants from storm water runoff
- **Improved vegetation health**—amended soils provide greater moisture retention, and altered chemical and biological characteristics that can result in healthier plant growth, reduced irrigation demands, and reduced need for fertilization and maintenance
- **Reduced erosion**—amended soils produce healthier plant growth and reduced runoff which results in reduced soil erosion

Not all amended soils have the same storm water benefits, the soil amendment used should be suited for the design purpose and design period of the amended area.

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Amended soil primarily functions as a site design BMP for reducing the effective imperviousness of a site by providing partial or full infiltration of the flows that are routed to amended soil areas and otherwise slowing down excess flows that eventually reach the storm drain system. Amended soil is used in conjunction with SD-A Tree Wells and SD-B Disperse Runoff from Impervious Areas.

Varying categories of soil amendments have different benefits and applications. Mulch is a soil amendment that is added at grade, rather than mixed into the soil. Mulch reduces evaporation and improves retention. Shavings and compost are common soil amendments that improve biological and chemical properties of the soil. Sand can be used as an amendment to improve the drainage rates of amended soils. Native soil samples may need to be analyzed by a lab to determine the specific soil amendments needed to achieve the desired infiltration, retention, and/or filtration rates.

Amending soil per these guidelines is not the same as preservation of naturally occurring topsoil and vegetation. However, amending soil will improve on-site management of storm water flow and water quality.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Soil amendments must meet the following design criteria and considerations. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if appropriate:

Siting and Design		*Intent/Rationale*
☐	When mulch is used as an amendment, it is applied at grade over all planting areas to a depth of 3".	Mulch should be applied on top and not mixed into underlying soils
☐	When shavings or compost is used as an amendment, it is rototilled into the native soil to a minimum depth of 6" (12 inches preferred).	If soil is not completely mixed the overall benefit will be reduced.
☐	Compost meets the criteria in Appendix F	If poor quality compost is used, it will have negative impact to water quality.
☐	Soil amendments are free of stones, stumps, roots, glass, plastic, metal, and other deleterious materials.	Large debris in amended soils can cause localized erosion. Trash/harmful materials can result in personal injury or contamination.
☐	Mixing of soils are done prior to planting	Soil mixing before planting results in a more homogeneous mixing and will reduce the stress on plants.
☐	Care is taken around existing trees and shrubs to prevent root damage during construction and soil amendment application.	Preservation of existing established vegetation is an important part of site design and erosion control.
☐	Soil amendments are applied at the end of construction	Soil amendments applied too soon in the construction process may become over compacted reducing effectiveness.
☐	Soil amendments are compatible with planned vegetation	The soil amendments impact the pH and salinity of the soil. Some plants have sensitive pH and/or salinity tolerance ranges.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

- When soil amendments are used a runoff factor of 0.1 can be used for DCV calculation for the amended area.
- Amended soils should be used as part of SD-A Tree Well and SD-B Impervious Area Dispersion, and to increase the retention volume in other BMPs.

Maintenance

Annual maintenance may be required to determine reapplication requirements of amended soils. Amended soils should be regularly inspected for signs of compaction, waterlogging, and unhealthy vegetation.

E.7 HU-1 Cistern

Photo Credit: Water Environment Research Foundation: WERF.org

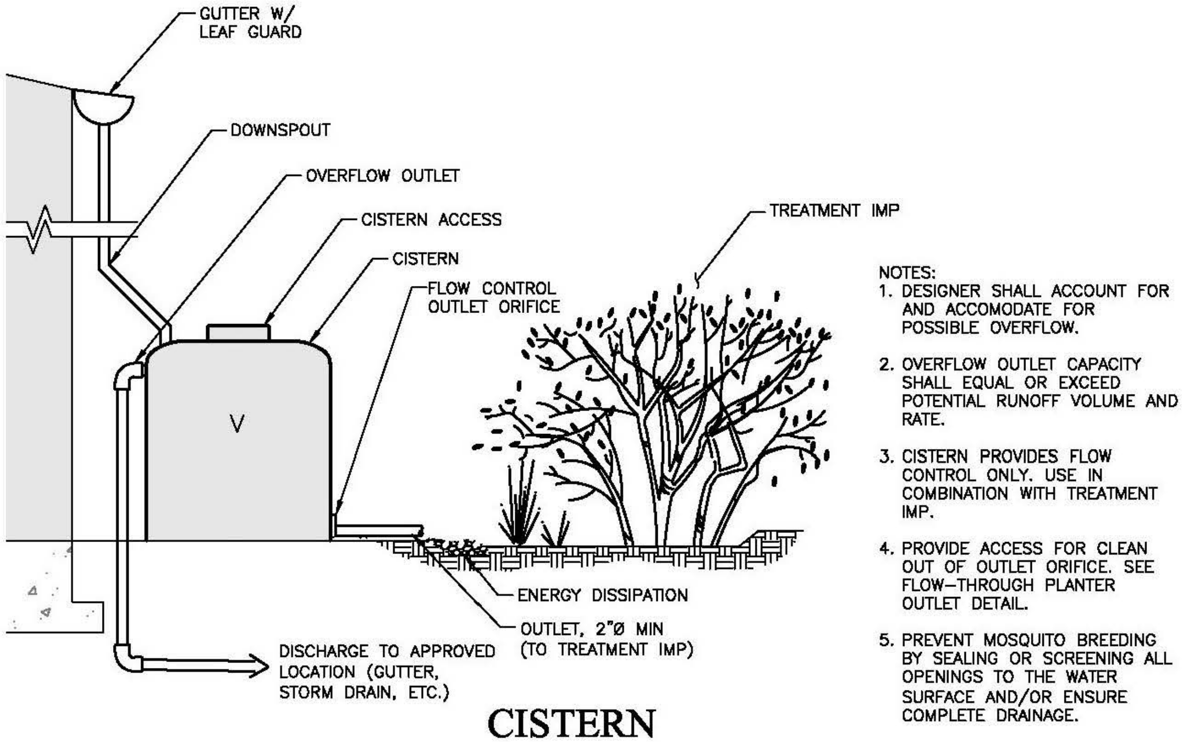
MS4 Permit Category	
Retention	
Manual Category	
Harvest and Use	
Applicable Performance Standards	
Primary Benefits	
Volume Reduction Peak Flow Attenuation	

Description

Cisterns are containers that can capture rooftop runoff and store it for future use. With controlled timing and volume release, the captured rainwater can be used for irrigation or alternative grey water between storm events, thereby reducing runoff volumes and associated pollutants to downstream water bodies. Cisterns are larger systems (generally>100 gallons) that can be self-contained aboveground or below ground systems. Treatment can be achieved when cisterns are used as part of a treatment train along with other BMPs that use captured flows in applications that do not result in discharges into the storm drain system. Rooftops are the ideal tributary areas for cisterns.

Typical cistern components include:

- Storage container, barrel or tank for holding captured flows
- Inlet and associated valves and piping
- Outlet and associated valves and piping
- Overflow outlet
- Optional pump
- Optional first flush diverters
- Optional roof, supports, foundation, level indicator, and other accessories



Source: City of San Diego Storm Water Standards

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce effective impervious area and DCV. Cisterns can be used as a site design feature to reduce the effective impervious area of the site by removing roof runoff from the site discharge. This can reduce the DCV and flow control requirements for the site.

Harvest and use for storm water pollutant control. Typical uses for captured flows include irrigation, toilet flushing, cooling system makeup, and vehicle and equipment washing.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. Cisterns provide flow control in the form of volume reduction and/or peak flow attenuation and storm water treatment through elimination of discharges of pollutants. Additional flow control can be achieved by sizing the cistern to include additional detention storage and/or real-time automated flow release controls.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Cisterns must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Cisterns are sized to detain the full DCV of contributing area and empty within 36 hours.	Draining the cistern makes the storage volume available to capture the next storm. The applicant has an option to use a different drawdown time up to 96 hours if the volume of the facility is adjusted using the percent capture method in Appendix B.4.1.
☐	Cisterns are fitted with a flow control device such as an orifice or a valve to limit outflow in accordance with drawdown time requirements.	Flow control provides flow attenuation benefits and limits cistern discharge to downstream facilities during storm events.
☐	Cisterns are designed to drain completely, leaving no standing water, and all entry points are fitted with traps or screens, or sealed.	Complete drainage and restricted entry prevents mosquito habitat.
☐	Leaf guards and/or screens are provided to prevent debris from accumulating in the cistern.	Leaves and organic debris can clog the outlet of the cistern.
☐	Access is provided for maintenance and the cistern outlets are accessible and designed to allow easy cleaning.	Properly functioning outlets are needed to maintain proper flow control in accordance with drawdown time requirements.
☐	Cisterns must be designed and sited such that overflow will be conveyed safely overland to the storm drain system or discharge point.	Safe overflow conveyance prevents flooding and damage of property.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design and Storm Water Pollutant Control

1. Calculate the DCV for site design per Appendix B.
2. Determine the locations on the site where cisterns can be located to capture and detain the DCV from roof areas without subsequent discharge to the storm drain system. Cisterns are best located in close proximity to building and other roofed structures to minimize piping. Cisterns can also be used as part of a treatment train upstream by increasing pollutant control through delayed runoff to infiltration BMPs such as bioretention without underdrain facilities.
3. Use the sizing worksheet Form K-7 in Appendix K to determine if full or partial capture of the DCV is achievable.
4. The remaining DCV to be treated should be calculated for use in sizing downstream BMP(s).

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

Control of flow rates and/or duration will typically require significant cistern volumes, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of site design and storm water pollutant control. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the manual.

1. Verify that cistern siting and design criteria have been met. Design for flow control can be achieved using various design configurations, shapes, and quantities of cisterns.
2. Iteratively determine the cistern storage volume required to provide detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control valve operation.
3. Verify that the cistern is drawdown within 36 hours. The drawdown time can be estimated by dividing the storage volume by the rate of use of harvested water.
4. If the cistern cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, a downstream structure with additional storage volume or infiltration capacity such as a biofiltration can be used to provide remaining flow control.

Maintenance Overview

Normal Expected Maintenance. Cisterns can be expected to accumulate sediment and debris that is small enough to pass through the inlet into the storage container. Larger debris such as leaves or trash may accumulate at the inlet. While the storage container is generally a permanent structure, ancillary parts including valves, piping, screens, level indicators, and other accessories will wear and require occasional replacement. Maintenance of a cistern generally involves: removing accumulated sediment and debris from the inlet and storage container on a routine basis; and replacement of ancillary parts on an as-needed basis. A summary table of standard inspection and maintenance indicators is provided within this Fact Sheet. If the system as a whole includes a pump or other electrical equipment, maintenance of the equipment shall be based on the manufacturer's recommended maintenance plan.

Non-Standard Maintenance or BMP Failure. If any of the following scenarios are observed, the BMP is not performing as intended to protect downstream waterways from pollution and/or erosion. Corrective maintenance, increased inspection and maintenance, BMP replacement, or a different BMP type will be required.

- The inlet is found to be obstructed at every inspection such that storm water bypasses the cistern. The cistern is not functioning properly if it is not capturing storm water. This would require addition of ancillary features to protect the inlet, or pretreatment measures within the watershed draining to the cistern to intercept larger debris, such as screens on roof gutters, or drainage inserts within catch basins. Increase the frequency of inspection until the issue is resolved.

- Accumulation of sediment within one year is greater than 25% of the volume of the cistern. This means the sediment load from the tributary drainage area has diminished the storage volume of the cistern and the cistern will not capture the required volume of storm water. This would require pretreatment measures within the tributary area draining to the cistern to intercept sediment.
- The cistern is not drained between storm events. If the cistern is not drained between storm events, the storage volume will be diminished and the cistern will not capture the required volume of storm water from subsequent storms. This would require implementation of practices onsite to drain and use the stored water, or a different BMP if onsite use cannot be reliably sustained.

Summary of Standard Inspection and Maintenance

The property owner is responsible to ensure inspection, operation and maintenance of permanent BMPs on their property unless responsibility has been formally transferred to an agency, community facilities district, homeowners association, property owners association, or other special district.

Maintenance frequencies listed in this table are average/typical frequencies. Actual maintenance needs are site-specific, and maintenance may be required more frequently. Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on maintenance indicators presented in this table. The BMP owner is responsible for conducting regular inspections to see when maintenance is needed based on the maintenance indicators. During the first year of operation of a structural BMP, inspection is recommended at least once prior to August 31 and then monthly from September through May. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined based on the results of the first year inspections.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Inspection and Maintenance Frequency
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris at the inlet	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.
Outlet blocked	Clear blockage.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Inspection and Maintenance Frequency
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris in the storage container	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials.	• Inspect monthly. If the BMP is 25% full* or more in one month, increase inspection frequency to monthly plus after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Remove materials annually (minimum), or more frequently when BMP is 25% full* (or at manufacturer threshold if manufacturer threshold is less than 25% full*) in less than one year, or if accumulation blocks outlet
Standing water in storage container between storm events outside of normal use timeframe for the stored water. Normal use timeframe is 36 to 96 hours following a storm event depending on the purpose and design of the cistern.	Use the water as intended, or disperse to landscaping. Implement practices onsite to drain and use the stored water. Contact the City Engineer to determine a solution if onsite use cannot be reliably sustained.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.
Presence of mosquitos/larvae For images of egg rafts, larva, pupa, and adult mosquitos, see http://www.mosquito.org/biology	If mosquitos/larvae are observed: first, immediately remove any standing water by using the water as intended for irrigation or alternative grey water, or by dispersing to landscaping; second, check cistern outlet for blockage and clear blockage if applicable to restore drainage; third, install barriers such as screens that prevent mosquito access to the storage container.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If mosquitos are observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Inspection and Maintenance Frequency
Leaks or other damage to ancillary parts including valves, piping, screens, level indicators, and other accessories	Repair or replace as applicable.	• Inspect twice per year. • Maintain when needed.
Leaks or other damage to storage container	Repair or replace as applicable.	• Inspect twice per year. • Maintain when needed.
Cistern leaning or unstable, damage to roof, supports, anchors, or foundation	Make repairs as appropriate to correct the problem and stabilize the system.	• Inspect twice per year. • Maintain when needed.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

E.8 INF-1 Infiltration Basin

MS4 Permit Category
Retention
Manual Category
Infiltration
Applicable Performance Standard
Pollutant Control Flow Control
Primary Benefits
Volume Reduction Peak Flow Attenuation

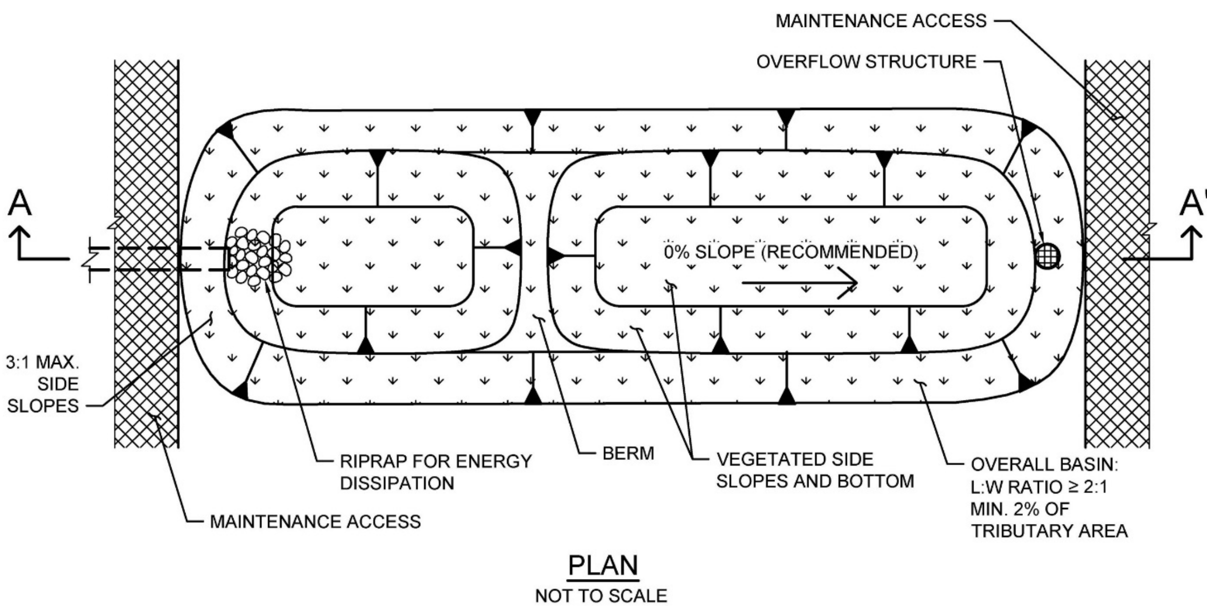
Photo Credit: http://www.stormwaterpartners.com/facilities/basin.html

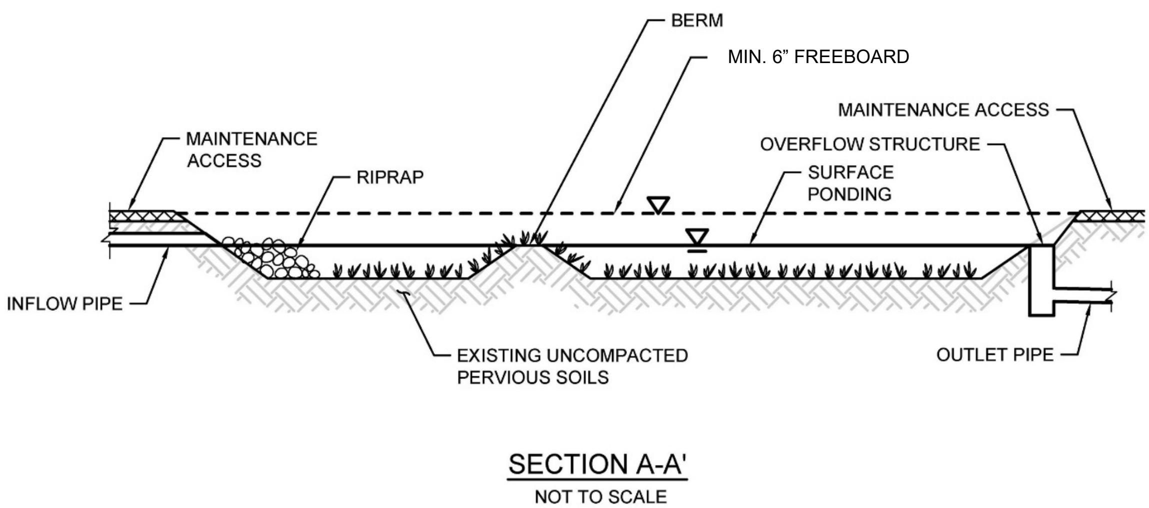
Description

An infiltration basin typically consists of an earthen basin with a flat bottom constructed in naturally pervious soils. An infiltration basin retains storm water and allows it to evaporate and/or percolate into the underlying soils. The bottom of an infiltration basin is typically vegetated with native grasses or turf grass; however other types of vegetation can be used if they can survive periodic inundation and long inter-event dry periods. Treatment is achieved primarily through infiltration, filtration, sedimentation, biochemical processes and plant uptake. Infiltration basins can be constructed as linear **trenches** or as **underground infiltration galleries**.

Typical infiltration basin components include:

- Inflow distribution mechanisms (e.g., perimeter flow spreader or filter strips)
- Energy dissipation mechanism for concentrated inflows (e.g., splash blocks or riprap)
- Forebay to provide pretreatment surface ponding for captured flows, other pretreatment mechanisms may be utilized if the device has a "pretreatment" rating and General Use Level Designation under Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology upstream of infiltration basins.
- Vegetation selected based on basin use, climate, and ponding depth
- Uncompacted native soils at the bottom of the facility
- Overflow structure





Typical plan and section view of an Infiltration BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Full infiltration BMP for storm water pollutant control. Infiltration basins can be used as a pollutant control BMP, designed to infiltrate runoff from direct rainfall as well as runoff from adjacent areas that are tributary to the BMP. Infiltration basins must be designed with an infiltration storage volume (a function of the surface ponding volume) equal to the full DCV and able to meet drawdown time limitations.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. Infiltration basins can also be designed for flow rate and duration control by providing additional infiltration storage through increasing the surface ponding volume.

Recommended Siting Criteria

	Siting Criteria	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	Selection and design of basin is based on infiltration feasibility criteria and appropriate design infiltration rate (See Appendix C and D).	Must operate as a full infiltration design and must be supported by drainage area and in-situ infiltration rate feasibility findings.

Recommended BMP Component Dimensions

BMP Component	*Dimension*	*Intent/Rationale*
Freeboard	≥ 12 inches adjacent landscape ≥ 6 inches adjacent hardscape	Freeboard minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.
Surface Ponding	≥ 6 and ≤ 12 inches	Surface ponding capacity lowers subsurface storage requirements. Deep surface ponding raises safety concerns. Surface ponding depth greater than 12 inches (for additional pollutant control or surface outlet structures or flow-control orifices) may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if the following conditions are met: 1) surface ponding depth drawdown time is less than 24 hours; and 2) safety issues and fencing requirements are considered (typically ponding greater than 18”

BMP Component	*Dimension*	*Intent/Rationale*
		will require a fence and/or flatter side slopes) and 3) potential for elevated clogging risk is considered.
Ponding Area Side Slopes	3H:1V or shallower	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.
Settling Forebay Volume	≥ 25% of facility volume	A forebay to trap sediment can decrease frequency of required maintenance.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Infiltration basins must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

Design Criteria		*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Finish grade of the facility is ≤ 2% (0% recommended).	Flatter surfaces reduce erosion and channelization with the facility.
☐	Infiltration of surface ponding is limited to a 36-hour drawdown time.	Prolonged surface ponding reduce volume available to capture subsequent storms. The applicant has an option to use a different drawdown time up to 96 hours if the volume of the facility is adjusted using the percent capture method in Appendix B.3.2.
Inflow and Overflow Structures		
☐	Inflow and outflow structures are accessible by required equipment (e.g., vactor truck) for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
☐	Inflow velocities are limited to 3 ft/s or less or use energy dissipation methods (e.g., riprap, level spreader) for concentrated inflows.	High inflow velocities can cause erosion, scour and/or channeling.
☐	Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.

Design Criteria	*Intent/Rationale*
discharge point. Size overflow structure to pass 100-year peak flow for on-line basins and water quality peak flow for off-line basins.	

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control

To design infiltration basins for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement and basin area requirements, forebay volume (not included in infiltration footprint for sizing), and maximum slopes for basin sides and bottom.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Use the sizing worksheet (Appendix B.3) to determine if full infiltration of the DCV is achievable based on the infiltration storage volume calculated from the surface ponding area and depth for a maximum 36-hour drawdown time. The drawdown time can be estimated by dividing the average depth of the basin by the design infiltration rate. Appendix D provides guidance on evaluating a site's infiltration rate.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Treatment and Flow Control

Control of flow rates and/or durations will typically require significant surface ponding volume, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the manual.

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement and basin area requirements, forebay volume (not included in infiltration footprint for sizing), and maximum slopes for basin sides and bottom.
2. Iteratively determine the surface ponding required to provide infiltration storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits while adhering to the maximum 36-hour drawdown time. Flow rates and durations can be controlled using flow splitters that route the appropriate inflow amounts to the infiltration basin and bypass excess flows to the downstream storm drain system or discharge point.
3. If an infiltration basin cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, an upstream or downstream structure with appropriate storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide additional control.
4. After the infiltration basin has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV

have been met.

Maintenance Overview

Normal Expected Maintenance. Infiltration basins require routine maintenance to: remove accumulated materials such as sediment, trash or debris from the forebay and the basin; maintain vegetation health if the BMP includes vegetation; and maintain integrity of side slopes, inlets, energy dissipators, and outlets. A summary table of standard inspection and maintenance indicators is provided within this Fact Sheet.

Non-Standard Maintenance or BMP Failure. If any of the following scenarios are observed, the BMP is not performing as intended to protect downstream waterways from pollution and/or erosion. Corrective maintenance, increased inspection and maintenance, BMP replacement, or a different BMP type will be required.

- The BMP is not drained between storm events. Surface ponding longer than approximately 24 hours following a storm event may be detrimental to vegetation health, and surface or subsurface ponding longer than approximately 96 hours following a storm event poses a risk of vector (mosquito) breeding. Poor drainage can result from clogging of the underlying native soils, or clogging of covers applied at the basin surface such as topsoil, mulch, or rock layer. The specific cause of the drainage issue must be determined and corrected. For surface-level basins (i.e., not underground infiltration galleries), surface cover materials can be removed and replaced, and/or native soils can be scarified or tilled to help reestablish infiltration. If it is determined that the underlying native soils have been compacted or do not have the infiltration capacity expected, or if the infiltration surface area is not accessible (e.g., an underground infiltration gallery) the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.

- Sediment, trash, or debris accumulation has filled the forebay or other pretreatment device within one month, or if no forebay or other pretreatment device is present, has filled greater than 25% of the surface ponding volume within one maintenance cycle. This means the load from the tributary drainage area is too high, reducing BMP function or clogging the BMP. This would require adding a forebay or other pretreatment measures within the tributary area draining to the BMP to intercept the materials if no pretreatment component is present, or increased maintenance frequency for an existing forebay or other pretreatment device. Pretreatment components, especially for sediment, will extend the life of the infiltration basin.

- Erosion due to concentrated storm water runoff flow that is not readily corrected by adding erosion control blankets, adding stone at flow entry points, or minor re-grading to restore proper drainage according to the original plan. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.

Other Special Considerations. If the infiltration basin is vegetated: Vegetated structural BMPs that are constructed in the vicinity of, or connected to, an existing jurisdictional water or wetland could inadvertently result in creation of expanded waters or wetlands. As such, vegetated structural BMPs have the potential to come under the jurisdiction of the United States Army Corps of Engineers, SDRWQCB, California Department of Fish and Wildlife, or the United States Fish and Wildlife Service. This could result in the need for specific resource agency permits and costly mitigation to perform maintenance of the structural BMP. Along with proper placement of a structural BMP, routine maintenance is key to preventing this scenario.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Summary of Standard Inspection and Maintenance

The property owner is responsible to ensure inspection, operation and maintenance of permanent BMPs on their property unless responsibility has been formally transferred to an agency, community facilities district, homeowners association, property owners association, or other special district.

Maintenance frequencies listed in this table are average/typical frequencies. Actual maintenance needs are site-specific, and maintenance may be required more frequently. Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on maintenance indicators presented in this table. The BMP owner is responsible for conducting regular inspections to see when maintenance is needed based on the maintenance indicators. During the first year of operation of a structural BMP, inspection is recommended at least once prior to August 31 and then monthly from September through May. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined based on the results of the first year inspections.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris in forebay and/or basin	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials, (without damage to vegetation when applicable).	• Inspect monthly. If the forebay is 25% full* or more in one month, increase inspection frequency to monthly plus after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found within the infiltration area at each inspection. • When the BMP includes a forebay, materials must be removed from the forebay when the forebay is 25% full*, or if accumulation within the forebay blocks flow to the infiltration area.
Obstructed inlet or outlet structure	Clear blockage.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Poor vegetation establishment (when the BMP includes vegetated surface by design)	Re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Dead or diseased vegetation (when the BMP includes vegetated surface by design)	Remove dead or diseased vegetation, re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Overgrown vegetation (when the BMP includes vegetated surface by design)	Mow or trim as appropriate.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Erosion due to concentrated irrigation flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas and adjust the irrigation system.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Erosion due to concentrated storm water runoff flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas, and make appropriate corrective measures such as adding erosion control blankets, adding stone at flow entry points, or minor re-grading to restore proper drainage according to the original plan. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the [City Engineer] shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.	• Inspect after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If erosion due to storm water flow has been observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Standing water in infiltration basin without subsurface infiltration gallery for longer than 24-96 hours following a storm event	Make appropriate corrective measures such as adjusting irrigation system, removing obstructions of debris or invasive vegetation, or removing/replacing clogged or compacted surface treatments and/or scarifying or tilling native soils. Always remove deposited sediments before scarification, and use a hand-guided rotary tiller. If it is determined that the underlying native soils have been compacted or do not have the infiltration capacity expected, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.
Standing water in subsurface infiltration gallery for longer than 24-96 hours following a storm event	This condition requires investigation of why infiltration is not occurring. If feasible, corrective action shall be taken to restore infiltration (e.g., flush fine sediment or remove and replace clogged soils). BMP may require retrofit if infiltration cannot be restored. The City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any repairs or reconstruction.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Presence of mosquitos/larvae For images of egg rafts, larva, pupa, and adult mosquitos, see http://www.mosquito.org/biology	If mosquitos/larvae are observed: first, immediately remove any standing water by dispersing to nearby landscaping; second, make corrective measures as applicable to restore BMP drainage to prevent standing water. For subsurface infiltration galleries, ensure access covers are tight fitting, with gaps or holes no greater than 1/16 inch, and/or install barriers such as inserts or screens that prevent mosquito access to the subsurface storage. If mosquitos persist following corrective measures to remove standing water, or if the BMP design does not meet the 96-hour drawdown criteria because the underlying native soils have been compacted or do not have the infiltration capacity expected, the City Engineer shall be contacted to determine a solution. A different BMP type, or a Vector Management Plan prepared with concurrence from the County of San Diego Department of Environmental Health, may be required.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If mosquitos are observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed
Damage to structural components such as weirs, inlet or outlet structures	Repair or replace as applicable.	• Inspect annually. • Maintain when needed.

"25% full" is defined as ¼ of the depth from the design bottom elevation to the crest of the outflow structure (e.g., if the height to the outflow opening is 12 inches from the bottom elevation, then the materials must be removed when there is 3 inches of accumulation – this should be marked on the outflow structure).

E.9 INF-2 Bioretention

MS4 Permit Category
Retention
Manual Category
Infiltration
Applicable Performance Standard
Pollutant Control Flow Control
Primary Benefits
Volume Reduction Treatment Peak Flow Attenuation

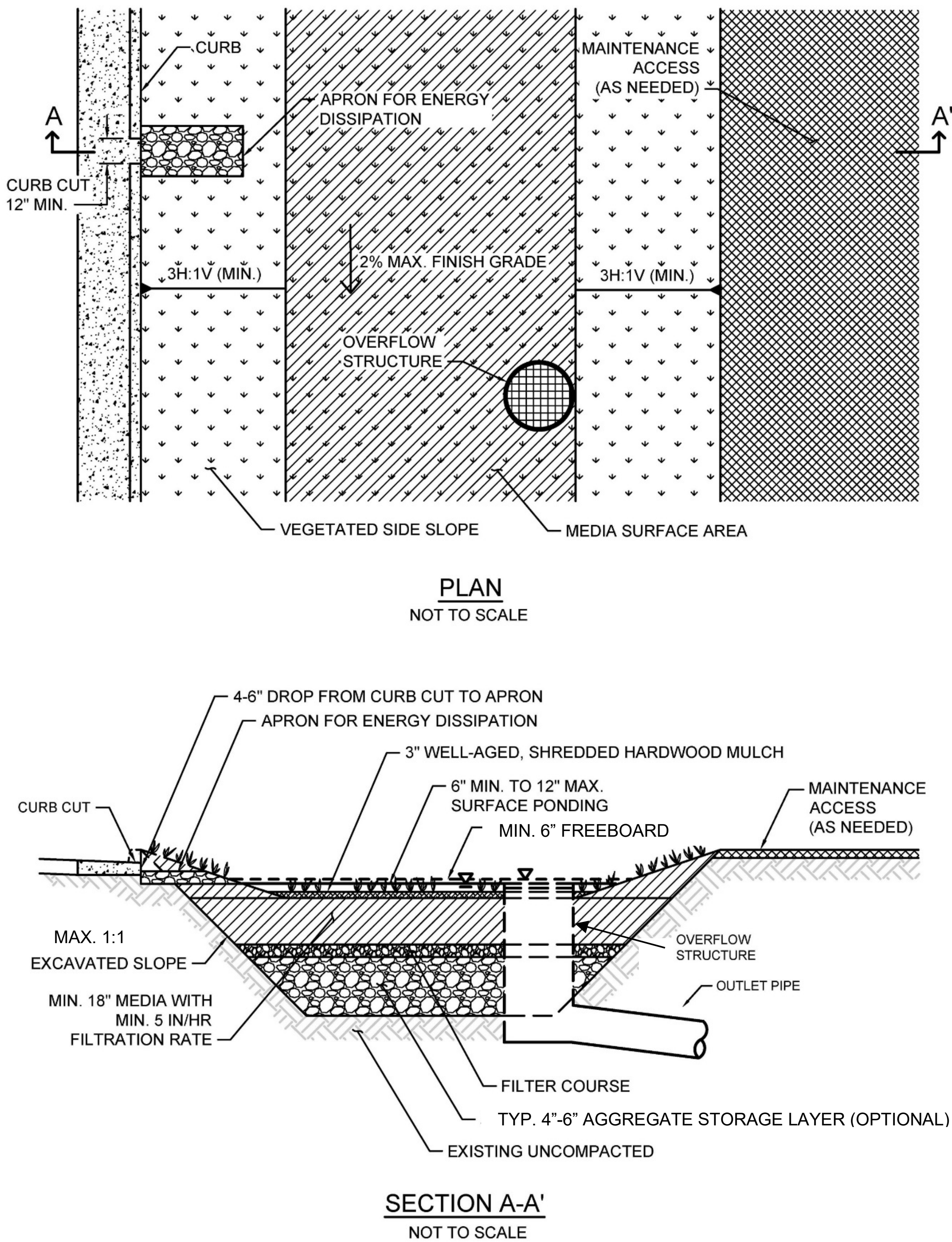
Photo Credit: Ventura County Technical Guidance Document

Description

Bioretention (bioretention without underdrain) facilities are vegetated surface water systems that filter water through vegetation and soil, or engineered media prior to infiltrating into native soils. These facilities are designed to infiltrate the full DCV. Bioretention facilities are commonly incorporated into the site within parking lot landscaping, along roadsides, and in open spaces. They can be constructed inground or partially aboveground, such as planter boxes with open bottoms (no impermeable liner at the bottom) to allow infiltration. Treatment is achieved through filtration, sedimentation, sorption, infiltration, biochemical processes and plant uptake.

Typical bioretention without underdrain components include:

- Inflow distribution mechanisms (e.g, perimeter flow spreader or filter strips)
- Energy dissipation mechanism for concentrated inflows (e.g., splash blocks or riprap)
- Shallow surface ponding for captured flows
- Side slope and basin bottom vegetation selected based on expected climate and ponding depth
- Non-floating mulch layer (optional)
- Media layer (planting mix or engineered media) capable of supporting vegetation growth
- Filter course layer consisting of aggregate to prevent the migration of fines into uncompacted native soils or the optional aggregate storage layer
- Optional aggregate storage layer for additional infiltration storage
- Uncompacted native soils at the bottom of the facility
- Overflow structure



Typical plan and section view of a Bioretention BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Full infiltration BMP for storm water pollutant control. Bioretention can be used as a pollutant control BMP designed to infiltrate runoff from direct rainfall as well as runoff from adjacent tributary areas. Bioretention facilities must be designed with an infiltration storage volume (a function of the ponding, media and aggregate storage volumes) equal to the full DCV and able to meet drawdown time limitations.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. Bioretention facilities can be designed to provide flow rate and duration control. This may be accomplished by providing greater infiltration storage with increased surface ponding and/or aggregate storage volume for storm water flow control.

Recommended Siting Criteria

Siting Criteria		*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	Selection and design of BMP is based on infiltration feasibility criteria and appropriate design infiltration rate presented in Appendix D.	Must operate as a full infiltration design and must be supported by drainage area and in-situ infiltration rate feasibility findings.
☐	Contributing tributary area is ≤ 5 acres (≤ 1 acre preferred).	Bigger BMPs require additional design features for proper performance. Contributing tributary area greater than 5 acres may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if the following conditions are met: 1) incorporate design features (e.g. flow spreaders) to minimizing short circuiting of flows in the BMP and 2) incorporate additional design features requested by the City Engineer for proper performance of the regional BMP.
☐	Finish grade of the facility is ≤ 2%. In long bioretention facilities where the potential for	Flatter surfaces reduce erosion and channelization within the facility.

Siting Criteria	*Intent/Rationale*
internal erosion and channelization exists, the use of check dams is required.	Internal check dams reduce velocity and dissipate energy.

Recommended BMP Component Dimensions

BMP Component	*Dimension*	*Intent/Rationale*
Freeboard	≥ 12 inches adjacent landscape ≥ 6 inches adjacent hardscape, 4 inches for concrete planter/box structure	Freeboard provides room for head over overflow structures and minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.
Surface Ponding	≥ 6 and ≤ 12 inches	Surface ponding capacity lowers subsurface storage requirements. Deep surface ponding raises safety concerns. Surface ponding depth greater than 12 inches (for additional pollutant control or surface outlet structures or flow-control orifices) may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer] if the following conditions are met: 1) surface ponding depth drawdown time is less than 24 hours; and 2) safety issues and fencing requirements are considered (typically ponding greater than 18" will require a fence and/or flatter side slopes) and 3) potential for elevated clogging risk is considered.
Ponding Area Side Slopes	≥ 3H:1V	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.

BMP Component	*Dimension*	*Intent/Rationale*
Mulch	≥ 3 inches	Mulch will suppress weeds and maintain moisture for plant growth. Aging mulch kills pathogens and weed seeds and allows beneficial microbes to multiply.
Media Layer	≥ 18 inches 1:1 slope maximum for edge condition	A deep media layer provides additional filtration and supports plants with deeper roots. Standard specifications shall be followed.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Bioretention must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Design Criteria	*Intent/Rationale*
Surface Ponding		
☐	Surface ponding is limited to a 24-hour drawdown time.	24-hour drawdown time is recommended for plant health. Surface ponding drawdown time greater than 24-hours but less than 96 hours may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if certified by a landscape architect or agronomist.
Vegetation		
☐	Plantings are suitable for the climate and expected ponding depth. A plant list to aid in selection can be found in Appendix E.21.	Plants suited to the climate and ponding depth are more likely to survive.
☐	An irrigation system with a connection to water supply is provided as needed.	Seasonal irrigation might be needed to keep plants healthy.
Mulch (Optional)		
☐	A minimum of 3 inches of well-aged, shredded hardwood mulch that has been stockpiled or stored for at least 12 months is provided.	Mulch will suppress weeds and maintain moisture for plant growth. Aging mulch

	Design Criteria	*Intent/Rationale*
	Mulch must be non-floating to avoid clogging of overflow structure.	kills pathogens and weed seeds and allows beneficial microbes to multiply.
Media Layer		
☐	Media maintains a minimum filtration rate of 5 in/hr over lifetime of facility. A minimum initial filtration rate of 10 in/hr is recommended.	A high filtration rate through the soil mix minimizes clogging potential and allows flows to quickly enter the aggregate storage layer, thereby minimizing bypass.
☐	Media is a minimum 18 inches deep, meeting either of these two media specifications: Section F.3 Bioretention Soil Media (BSM) or specific jurisdictional guidance.	A deep media layer provides additional filtration and supports plants with deeper roots. Standard specifications shall be followed.
☐	Alternatively, for proprietary designs and custom media mixes not meeting the media specifications, the media meets the pollutant treatment performance criteria in Section F.1.	For non-standard or proprietary designs, compliance with F.1 ensures that adequate treatment performance will be provided.
☐	Media surface area is 3% of contributing area times adjusted runoff factor or greater.	Greater surface area to tributary area ratios decrease loading rates per square foot and therefore increase longevity. Adjusted runoff factor is to account for site design BMPs implemented upstream of the BMP (such as rain barrels, impervious area dispersion, etc.). Refer to Appendix B.1 guidance.
Filter Course Layer (Optional)		
☐	A filter course is used to prevent migration of fines through layers of the facility. Filter fabric is not used.	Migration of media can cause clogging of the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade. Filter fabric is more likely to clog.
☐	Filter course is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the facility and impede infiltration.
☐	Filter course calculations assessing suitability for particle migration prevention have been completed.	Gradation relationship between layers can evaluate factors (e.g., bridging, permeability, and uniformity) to

	Design Criteria	*Intent/Rationale*
		determine if particle sizing is appropriate or if an intermediate layer is needed.
Aggregate Storage Layer (Optional)		
☐	Class 2 Permeable per Caltrans specification 68-1.025 is recommended for the storage layer. Washed, open-graded crushed rock may be used, however a 4-6 inch washed pea gravel filter course layer at the top of the crushed rock is required.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade.
☐	Maximum aggregate storage layer depth is determined based on the infiltration storage volume that will infiltrate within a 36-hour drawdown time.	A maximum drawdown time to facilitate provision of adequate storm water storage for the next storm event.
Inflow and Overflow Structures		
☐	Inflow and overflow structures are accessible for inspection and maintenance. Overflow structures must be connected to downstream storm drain system or appropriate discharge point.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
☐	Inflow velocities are limited to 3 ft/s or less or use energy dissipation methods (e.g., riprap, level spreader) for concentrated inflows.	High inflow velocities can cause erosion, scour and/or channeling.
☐	Curb cut inlets are at least 12 inches wide, have a 4-6 inch reveal (drop) and an apron and energy dissipation as needed.	Inlets must not restrict flow and apron prevents blockage from vegetation as it grows in. Energy dissipation prevents erosion.
☐	Stormdrain inlets shall be placed a minimum of 4-inch above the finish grade of basin (top of mulch)	Inlets must not restrict flow and prevent blockage from vegetation as it grows in.
☐	Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point. Size overflow structure to pass 100-year peak flow for on-line basins and water quality peak flow for off-line basins.	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design bioretention for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement and basin area requirements, maximum side and finish grade slope, and the recommended media surface area tributary ratio.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Use the sizing worksheet to determine if full infiltration of the DCV is achievable based on the available infiltration storage volume calculated from the bioretention without underdrain footprint area, effective depths for surface ponding, media and aggregate storage layers, and in-situ soil design infiltration rate for a maximum 36-hour drawdown time for the aggregate storage layer, with surface ponding no greater than a maximum 24-hour drawdown. The drawdown time can be estimated by dividing the average depth of the basin by the design infiltration rate of the underlying soil. Appendix D provides guidance on evaluating a site's infiltration rate. A generic sizing worksheet is provided in Appendix B.
4. Where the DCV cannot be fully infiltrated based on the site or bioretention constraints, an underdrain can be added to the design (use biofiltration with partial retention factsheet).

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

Control of flow rates and/or durations will typically require significant surface ponding and/or aggregate storage volumes, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations shall be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the manual.

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, maximum side and finish grade slopes, and the recommended media surface area tributary area ratio. Design for flow control can be achieved using various design configurations.
2. Iteratively determine the facility footprint area, surface ponding and/or aggregate storage layer depth required to provide infiltration storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits while adhering to the maximum drawdown times for surface ponding and aggregate storage. Flow rates and durations can be controlled using flow splitters that route the appropriate inflow amounts to the bioretention facility and bypass excess flows to the downstream storm drain system or discharge point.
3. If bioretention without underdrain facility cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by the MS4 permit, an upstream or downstream structure with appropriate storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide additional control.
4. After bioretention without underdrain BMPs have been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control

requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

Maintenance Overview

Normal Expected Maintenance. Bioretention requires routine maintenance to: remove accumulated materials such as sediment, trash or debris; maintain vegetation health; maintain infiltration capacity of the media layer; replenish mulch; and maintain integrity of side slopes, inlets, energy dissipators, and outlets. A summary table of standard inspection and maintenance indicators is provided within this Fact Sheet.

Non-Standard Maintenance or BMP Failure. If any of the following scenarios are observed, the BMP is not performing as intended to protect downstream waterways from pollution and/or erosion. Corrective maintenance, increased inspection and maintenance, BMP replacement, or a different BMP type will be required.

- The BMP is not drained between storm events. Surface ponding longer than approximately 24 hours following a storm event may be detrimental to vegetation health, and surface ponding longer than approximately 96 hours following a storm event poses a risk of vector (mosquito) breeding. Poor drainage can result from clogging of the media layer, filter course, aggregate storage layer, underlying native soils, or outlet structure. The specific cause of the drainage issue must be determined and corrected. If it is determined that the underlying native soils have been compacted or do not have the infiltration capacity expected, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.

- Sediment, trash, or debris accumulation greater than 25% of the surface ponding volume within one month. This means the load from the tributary drainage area is too high, reducing BMP function or clogging the BMP. This would require pretreatment measures within the tributary area draining to the BMP to intercept the materials. Pretreatment components, especially for sediment, will extend the life of components that are more expensive to replace such as media, filter course, and aggregate layers.

- Erosion due to concentrated storm water runoff flow that is not readily corrected by adding erosion control blankets, adding stone at flow entry points, or minor re-grading to restore proper drainage according to the original plan. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.

Other Special Considerations. Bioretention is a vegetated structural BMP. Vegetated structural BMPs that are constructed in the vicinity of, or connected to, an existing jurisdictional water or wetland could inadvertently result in creation of expanded waters or wetlands. As such, vegetated structural BMPs have the potential to come under the jurisdiction of the United States Army Corps of Engineers, SDRWQCB, California Department of Fish and Wildlife, or the United States Fish and Wildlife Service. This could result in the need for specific resource agency permits and costly mitigation to perform maintenance of the structural BMP. Along with proper placement of a structural BMP, routine maintenance is key to preventing this scenario.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Summary of Standard Inspection and Maintenance

The property owner is responsible to ensure inspection, operation and maintenance of permanent BMPs on their property unless responsibility has been formally transferred to an agency, community facilities district, homeowners association, property owners association, or other special district.

Maintenance frequencies listed in this table are average/typical frequencies. Actual maintenance needs are site-specific, and maintenance may be required more frequently. Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on maintenance indicators presented in this table. The BMP owner is responsible for conducting regular inspections to see when maintenance is needed based on the maintenance indicators. During the first year of operation of a structural BMP, inspection is recommended at least once prior to August 31 and then monthly from September through May. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined based on the results of the first year inspections.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials, without damage to the vegetation or compaction of the media layer.	• Inspect monthly. If the BMP is 25% full* or more in one month, increase inspection frequency to monthly plus after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.
Obstructed inlet or outlet structure	Clear blockage.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.
Damage to structural components such as weirs, inlet or outlet structures	Repair or replace as applicable.	• Inspect annually. • Maintain when needed.
Poor vegetation establishment	Re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Dead or diseased vegetation	Remove dead or diseased vegetation, re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Overgrown vegetation	Mow or trim as appropriate.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
2/3 of mulch has decomposed, or mulch has been removed	Remove decomposed fraction and top off with fresh mulch to a total depth of 3 inches.	• Inspect monthly. • Replenish mulch annually, or more frequently when needed based on inspection.
Erosion due to concentrated irrigation flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas and adjust the irrigation system.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Erosion due to concentrated storm water runoff flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas, and make appropriate corrective measures such as adding erosion control blankets, adding stone at flow entry points, or minor re-grading to restore proper drainage according to the original plan. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.	• Inspect after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If erosion due to storm water flow has been observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.
Standing water in BMP for longer than 24 hours following a storm event Surface ponding longer than approximately 24 hours following a storm event may be detrimental to vegetation health	Make appropriate corrective measures such as adjusting irrigation system, removing obstructions of debris or invasive vegetation, or repairing/replacing clogged or compacted soils. If it is determined that the underlying native soils have been compacted or do not have the infiltration capacity expected, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Presence of mosquitos/larvae For images of egg rafts, larva, pupa, and adult mosquitos, see http://www.mosquito.org/biology	If mosquitos/larvae are observed: first, immediately remove any standing water by dispersing to nearby landscaping; second, make corrective measures as applicable to restore BMP drainage to prevent standing water. If mosquitos persist following corrective measures to remove standing water, or if the BMP design does not meet the 96-hour drawdown criteria because the underlying native soils have been compacted or do not have the infiltration capacity expected, the [City Engineer] shall be contacted to determine a solution. A different BMP type, or a Vector Management Plan prepared with concurrence from the County of San Diego Department of Environmental Health, may be required.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If mosquitos are observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.

"25% full" is defined as ¼ of the depth from the design bottom elevation to the crest of the outflow structure (e.g., if the height to the outflow opening is 12 inches from the bottom elevation, then the materials must be removed when there is 3 inches of accumulation – this should be marked on the outflow structure)

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

.

E.10 INF-3 Permeable Pavement (Pollutant Control)

Location: Kellogg Park, San Diego, California

MS4 Permit Category

Retention
Flow-thru Treatment Control

Manual Category

Infiltration
Flow-thru Treatment Control

Applicable Performance Standard

Pollutant Control
Flow Control

Primary Benefits

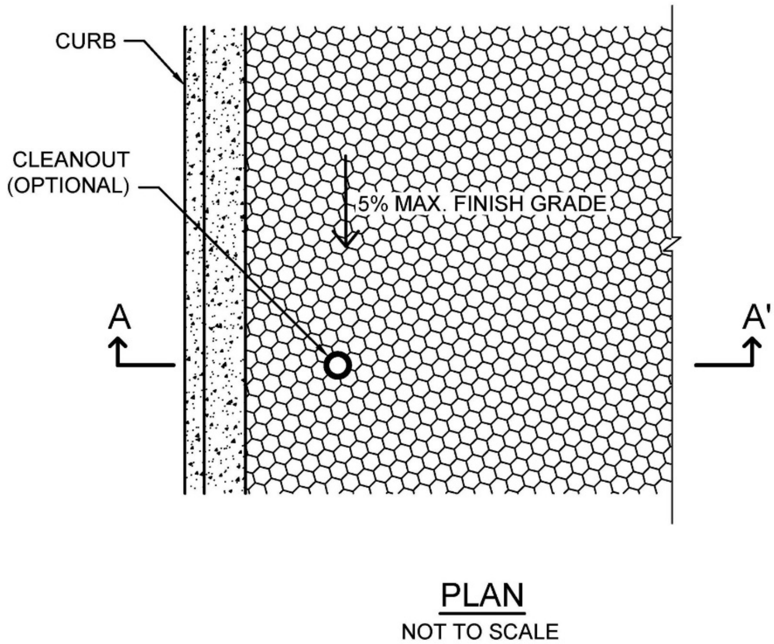
Volume Reduction
Peak Flow Attenuation

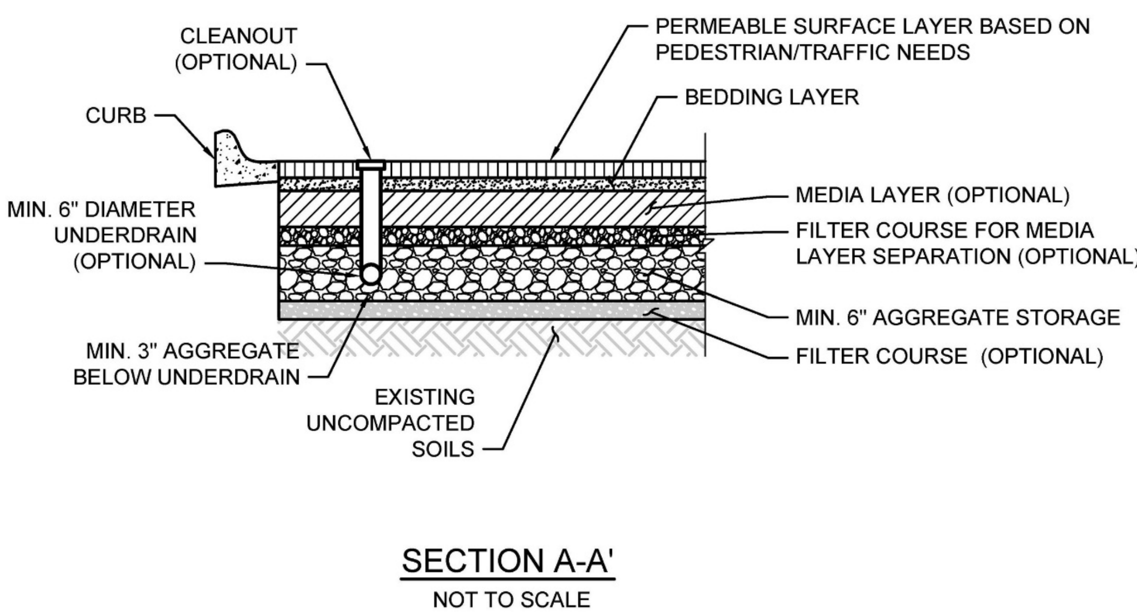
Description

Permeable pavement is pavement that allows for percolation through void spaces in the pavement surface into subsurface layers. The subsurface layers are designed to provide storage of storm water runoff so that outflows, primarily via infiltration into subgrade soils or release to the downstream conveyance system, can be at controlled rates. Varying levels of storm water treatment and flow control can be provided depending on the size of the permeable pavement system relative to its drainage area, the underlying infiltration rates, and the configuration of outflow controls. Pollutant control permeable pavement is designed to receive runoff from a larger tributary area than site design permeable pavement (see SD-D). Pollutant control is provided via infiltration, filtration, sorption, sedimentation, and biodegradation processes.

Typical permeable pavement components include, from top to bottom:

- Permeable surface layer
- Bedding layer for permeable surface
- Aggregate storage layer with optional underdrain(s)
- Optional final filter course layer over uncompacted existing subgrade





Typical plan and Section view of a Permeable Pavement BMP

Subcategories of permeable pavement include modular paver units or paver blocks, pervious concrete, porous asphalt, and turf pavers. These subcategory variations differ in the material used for the permeable surface layer but have similar functions and characteristics below this layer.

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce impervious area and DCV. See site design option SD-D.

Full infiltration BMP for storm water pollutant control. Permeable pavement without an underdrain and without impermeable liners can be used as a pollutant control BMP, designed to infiltrate runoff from direct rainfall as well as runoff from adjacent areas that are tributary to the pavement. The system must be designed with an infiltration storage volume (a function of the aggregate storage volume) equal to the full DCV and able to meet drawdown time limitations.

Partial infiltration BMP with flow-thru treatment for storm water pollutant control. Permeable pavement can be designed so that a portion of the DCV is infiltrated by providing an underdrain with infiltration storage below the underdrain invert. The infiltration storage depth should be determined by the volume that can be reliably infiltrated within drawdown time limitations. Water discharged through the underdrain is considered flow-thru treatment and is not considered biofiltration treatment.

Flow-thru treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control.* The system may be lined and/or installed over impermeable native soils with an underdrain provided at the bottom to carry away filtered runoff. Water quality treatment is provided via unit treatment processes other than infiltration. This configuration is considered to provide flow-thru treatment, not biofiltration treatment. Significant aggregate storage provided above the underdrain invert can provide detention storage, which can be controlled via inclusion of an orifice in an outlet structure at the downstream end of the underdrain. **PDPs have the option to add saturated storage to the flow-thru configuration in order to reduce the DCV that the BMP is required to treat.** Saturated storage can be added to this design by including an upturned elbow installed at the downstream end of the underdrain or via an internal weir structure designed to maintain a specific water level elevation. The DCV can be reduced by the amount of saturated storage provided.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. With any of the above configurations, the system can be designed to provide flow rate and duration control. This may include having a deeper aggregate storage layer that allows for significant detention storage above the underdrain, which can be further controlled via inclusion of an outlet structure at the downstream end of the underdrain.

* Flow-thru treatment control BMP is not an option as a structural BMP. Carlsbad has not adopted an Alternative Compliance Program

Recommended Siting Criteria

	Siting Criteria	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	Selection must be based on infiltration feasibility criteria.	Full or partial infiltration designs must be supported by drainage area feasibility findings.
☐	Permeable pavement is not placed in an area with significant overhanging trees or other vegetation.	Leaves and organic debris can clog the pavement surface.
☐	Minimum depth to groundwater and bedrock ≥ 10 ft.	A minimum separation facilitates infiltration and lessens the risk of negative groundwater impacts.
☐	Contributing tributary area includes effective sediment source control and/or pretreatment measures such as raised curbed or grass filter strips.	Sediment can clog the pavement surface.
☐	Direct discharges to permeable pavement are only from downspouts carrying "clean" roof runoff that are equipped with filters to remove gross solids.	Roof runoff typically carries less sediment than runoff from other impervious surfaces and is less likely to clog the pavement surface.

Recommended BMP Component Dimensions

BMP Component	*Dimension*	*Intent/Rationale*
Bedding Layer	1-2 inches (typical)	Bedding (e.g., sand, aggregate) provided to stabilize and level the surface.
Aggregate Storage	≥ 6 inches	A minimum depth of aggregate provides structural stability for expected pavement loads.
Underdrain Diameter	≥ 6 inches	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Permeable pavements must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

Design Criteria		*Intent/Rationale*
☐	An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is included if site constraints indicate that infiltration should not be allowed*.	Lining prevents storm water from impacting groundwater and/or sensitive environmental or geotechnical features. Incidental infiltration, when allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge.
☐	For pollutant control permeable pavement, the ratio of the total drainage area (including the permeable pavement) to the permeable pavement should not exceed 4:1.	Higher ratios increase the potential for clogging but may be acceptable for relatively clean tributary areas.
☐	Finish grade of the permeable pavement has a slope ≤ 5%, bench subgrade to have a slope of 0%	Flatter surfaces facilitate increased runoff capture.
Permeable Surface Layer		
☐	Permeable surface layer type is appropriately chosen based on pavement use and expected vehicular loading.	Pavement may wear more quickly if not durable for expected loads or frequencies.
☐	Permeable surface layer type is appropriate for expected pedestrian traffic.	Expected demographic and accessibility needs (e.g., adults, children, seniors, runners, high-heeled shoes, wheelchairs, strollers, bikes) requires selection of appropriate surface layer type that will not impede pedestrian needs.

* Flow-thru treatment control BMP is not an option as a structural BMP. Carlsbad has not adopted an Alternative Compliance Program

	Design Criteria	*Intent/Rationale*
	Bedding Layer for Permeable Surface	
☐	Bedding thickness and material is appropriate for the chosen permeable surface layer type.	Porous asphalt requires a 2- to 4-inch layer of asphalt and a 1- to 2-inch layer of choker course (single-sized crushed aggregate, one-half inch) to stabilize the surface. Pervious concrete also requires an aggregate course of clean gravel or crushed stone with a minimum amount of fines. Permeable Interlocking Concrete Paver requires 1 or 2 inches of sand or No. 8 aggregate to allow for leveling of the paver blocks. Similar to Permeable Interlocking Concrete Paver, plastic grid systems also require a 1- to 2-inch bedding course of either gravel or sand. For Permeable Interlocking Concrete Paver and plastic grid systems, if sand is used, a geotextile should be used between the sand course and the reservoir media to prevent the sand from migrating into the stone media.
☐	Aggregate used for bedding layer is washed prior to placement.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the permeable pavement system aggregate storage layer void spaces or underdrain.
	Media Layer (Optional) –used between bedding layer and aggregate storage layer to provide pollutant treatment control	
☐	The pollutant removal performance of the media layer is documented by the applicant.	Media used for BMP design should be shown via research or testing to be appropriate for expected pollutants of concern and flow rates.

Design Criteria		*Intent/Rationale*
☐	A filter course is provided to separate the media layer from the aggregate storage layer.	Migration of media can cause clogging of the aggregate storage layer void spaces or underdrain.
☐	If a filter course is used, calculations assessing suitability for particle migration prevention have been completed.	Gradation relationship between layers can evaluate factors (e.g., bridging, permeability, and uniformity) to determine if particle sizing is appropriate or if an intermediate layer is needed.
☐	Consult permeable pavement manufacturer to verify that media layer provides required structural support.	Media must not compromise the structural integrity or intended uses of the permeable pavement surface.
Aggregate Storage Layer		
☐	Aggregate used for the aggregate storage layer is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog aggregate storage layer void spaces or underdrain.
☐	Minimum layer depth is 6 inches and for infiltration designs, the maximum depth is determined based on the infiltration storage volume that will infiltrate within a 36-hour drawdown time.	A minimum depth of aggregate provides structural stability for expected pavement loads.
Underdrain and Outflow Structures		
☐	Underdrains and outflow structures, if used, are accessible for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will improve the performance and extend the life of the permeable pavement system.
☐	Underdrain outlet elevation should be a minimum of 3 inches above the bottom elevation of the aggregate storage layer.	A minimal separation from subgrade or the liner lessens the risk of fines entering the underdrain and can improve hydraulic performance by allowing perforations to remain unblocked.
☐	Minimum underdrain diameter is 6 inches.	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.

Design Criteria		Intent/Rationale
☐	Underdrains are made of slotted, PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D 3034 or equivalent or corrugated, HDPE pipe conforming to AASHTO 252M or equivalent.	Slotted underdrains provide greater intake capacity, clog resistant drainage, and reduced entrance velocity into the pipe, thereby reducing the chances of solids migration.
Filter Course (Optional)		
☐	Filter course is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog subgrade and impede infiltration.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where permeable pavement can be used in the site design to replace traditional pavement to reduce the impervious area and DCV. These permeable pavement areas can be credited toward reducing runoff generated through representation in storm water calculations as pervious, not impervious, areas but are not credited for storm water pollutant control. These permeable pavement areas should be designed as self-retaining with the appropriate tributary area ratio identified in the design criteria.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B, taking into account reduced runoff from self-retaining permeable pavement areas.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design permeable pavement for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, maximum finish grade slope, and the recommended tributary area ratio for non-self-retaining permeable pavement. If infiltration is infeasible, the permeable pavement can be designed as flow-thru treatment per the sizing worksheet. If infiltration is feasible, calculations should follow the remaining design steps.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Use the sizing worksheet to determine if full or partial infiltration of the DCV is achievable based on the available infiltration storage volume calculated from the permeable pavement footprint, aggregate storage layer depth, and in-situ soil design infiltration rate for a maximum 36-hour drawdown time. The applicant has an option to use a different drawdown time up to 96 hours if the volume of the facility is adjusted using the percent capture method in Appendix B.3.2.
4. Where the DCV cannot be fully infiltrated based on the site or permeable pavement

constraints, an underdrain must be incorporated above the infiltration storage to carry away runoff that exceeds the infiltration storage capacity.

5. The remaining DCV to be treated should be calculated for use in sizing downstream BMP(s).

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable[*]

Control of flow rates and/or durations will typically require significant aggregate storage volumes, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the manual. A site design BMP that meets both the pollutant and hydromodification control is a significant site design BMP or SS-BMP. See Appendix I for additional guidance

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, maximum finish grade slope, and the recommended tributary area ratio for non-self-retaining permeable pavement. Design for flow control can be achieving using various design configurations, but a flow-thru treatment design will typically require a greater aggregate storage layer volume than designs which allow for full or partial infiltration of the DCV.
2. Iteratively determine the area and aggregate storage layer depth required to provide infiltration and/or detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows.
3. If the permeable pavement system cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, a downstream structure with sufficient storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After permeable pavement has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

Maintenance Overview

Normal Expected Maintenance. Routine maintenance of permeable pavement includes: removal of materials such as trash and debris accumulated on the paving surface; vacuuming of the paving surface to prevent clogging; and flushing paving and subsurface gravel to remove fine sediment. If the

[*] Flow-thru treatment control BMPs is not an option as a structural BMP. Carlsbad has not adopted an Alternative Compliance Program

BMP includes underdrains and/or an outflow control structure, check and clear these features.

Non-Standard Maintenance or BMP Failure. If the permeable pavement area is not drained between storm events, or if runoff sheet flows across the permeable pavement area and flows off the permeable pavement area during storm events, the BMP is not performing as intended to protect downstream waterways from pollution and/or erosion. During storm events up to the 85th percentile storm event (approximately 0.6 inch of rainfall in City of Carlsbad), runoff should not flow off the permeable pavement area. The permeable pavement area is expected to have adequate hydraulic conductivity and storage such that rainfall landing on the permeable pavement and runoff from the surrounding drainage area will go directly into the pavement without ponding or overflow (in properly designed systems, the surrounding drainage area is not more than half as large as the permeable pavement area). Following the storm event, there should be no standing water (puddles) on the permeable pavement area.

If storm water is flowing off the permeable pavement during a storm event, or if there is standing water on the permeable pavement surface following a storm event, this is an indicator of clogging somewhere within the system. Poor drainage can result from clogging of the permeable surface layer, any of the subsurface components, or the subgrade soils. The specific cause of the drainage issue must be determined and corrected. Surface or subsurface ponding longer than approximately 96 hours following a storm event poses a risk of vector (mosquito) breeding. Corrective maintenance, increased inspection and maintenance, BMP replacement, or a different BMP type will be required. If poor drainage persists after flushing of the paving, subsurface gravel, and/or underdrain(s) when applicable, or if it is determined that the underlying soils do not have the infiltration capacity expected, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.

Other Special Considerations. The runoff storage and infiltration surface area in this BMP are not readily accessible because they are subsurface. This means that clogging and poor drainage are not easily corrected. If the tributary area draining to the BMP includes unpaved areas, the sediment load from the tributary drainage area can be too high, reducing BMP function or clogging the BMP. All unpaved areas within the tributary drainage area should be stabilized with vegetation. Other pretreatment components to prevent transport of sediment to the paving surface, such as grass buffer strips, will extend the life of the subsurface components and infiltration surface. Along with proper stabilization measures and pretreatment within the tributary area, routine maintenance, including preventive vacuum/regenerative air street sweeping, is key to preventing clogging.

Summary of Standard Inspection and Maintenance

The property owner is responsible to ensure inspection, operation and maintenance of permanent BMPs on their property unless responsibility has been formally transferred to an agency, community facilities district, homeowners association, property owners association, or other special district.

Maintenance frequencies listed in this table are average/typical frequencies. Actual maintenance needs are site-specific, and maintenance may be required more frequently. Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on maintenance indicators presented in this table. The BMP owner is responsible for conducting regular inspections to see when maintenance is needed based on the maintenance indicators. During the first year of operation of a structural BMP, inspection is recommended at least once prior to August 31 and then monthly from September through May. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined based on the results of the first year inspections.

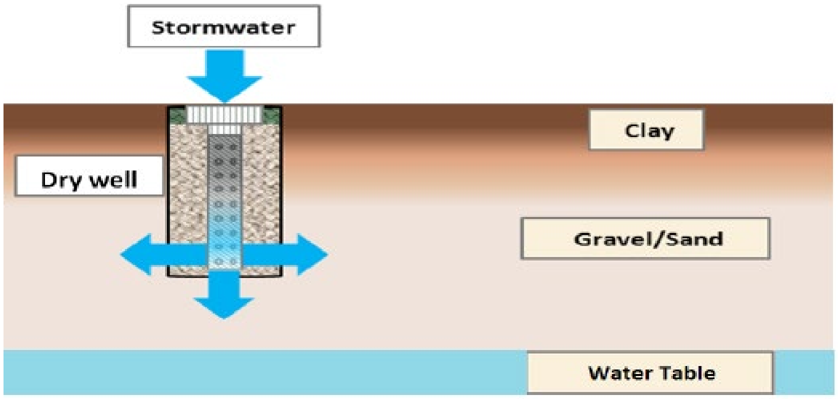
Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Preventive vacuum/regenerative air street sweeping	Pavement should be swept with a vacuum power or regenerative air street sweeper to maintain infiltration through paving surface	• Schedule/perform this preventive action at least twice per year.
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris on permeable pavement surface	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials. Inspect tributary area for exposed soil or other sources of sediment and apply stabilization measures to sediment source areas. Apply source control measures as applicable to sources of litter or debris.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Weeds growing on/through the permeable pavement surface	Remove weeds and add features as necessary to prevent weed intrusion. Use non-chemical methods (e.g., instead of pesticides, control weeds using mechanical removal, physical barriers, and/or physical changes in the surrounding area adjacent to pavement that will preclude weed intrusion into the pavement).	• Inspect monthly. • Remove any weeds found at each inspection.
Standing water in permeable paving area or subsurface infiltration gallery for longer than 24-96 hours following a storm event	This condition requires investigation of why infiltration is not occurring. If feasible, corrective action shall be taken to restore infiltration (e.g., pavement should be swept with a vacuum power or regenerative air street sweeper to restore infiltration rates, clear underdrains if underdrains are present). BMP may require retrofit if infiltration cannot be restored. The City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any repairs or reconstruction.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Presence of mosquitos/larvae For images of egg rafts, larva, pupa, and adult mosquitos, see http://www.mosquito.org/biology	If mosquitos/larvae are observed: first, immediately remove any standing water by dispersing to nearby landscaping; second, make corrective measures as applicable to restore BMP drainage to prevent standing water. If mosquitos persist following corrective measures to remove standing water, or if the BMP design does not meet the 96-hour drawdown criteria because the underlying native soils have been compacted or do not have the infiltration capacity expected, the City Engineer shall be contacted to determine a solution. A different BMP type, or a Vector Management Plan prepared with concurrence from the County of San Diego Department of Environmental Health, may be required.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If mosquitos are observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.
Obstructed underdrain or outlet structure (when the BMP includes outflow control structure for runoff released from subsurface storage via underdrain(s))	Clear blockage.	• Inspect if standing water is observed for longer than 24-96 hours following a storm event. • Maintain when needed.
Damage to structural components of subsurface infiltration gallery such as weirs or outlet structures	Repair or replace as applicable.	• Inspect annually. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Damage to permeable paving surface (e.g., cracks, settlement, misaligned paver blocks, void spaces between paver blocks need fill materials replenished)	Repair or replace damaged surface as appropriate.	• Inspect annually. • Maintain when needed.

E.11 INF-4 Dry Wells



Source: Cal/EPA Fact Sheet on Dry Wells

MS4 Permit Category
Retention
BMP Manual Category
Infiltration
Applicable Performance Standard
Pollutant Control Flow Control
Primary Benefits
Volume Reduction

Description

A dry well typically consists of a gravity-fed pit, deeper than it is long or wide, lined with perforated casing and often backfilled with gravel or stone. Dry wells penetrate layers of poorly infiltrating soils, such as clays, allowing infiltration into deeper permeable layers. Dry wells reduce storm water runoff while increasing groundwater recharge. Dry wells require pretreatment. Pretreatment effectiveness is contingent upon proper maintenance pretreatment devices. With proper design and maintenance, dry wells not only aid in stormwater runoff reduction, but they can also increase groundwater recharge.

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Full infiltration BMP for storm water pollutant control. Dry wells can be used as a pollutant control BMP, designed to infiltrate runoff from direct rainfall as well as runoff from adjacent areas that are tributary to the pavement. Dry wells must be designed with an infiltration storage volume equal to the full DCV and able to meet drawdown time limitations.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. Dry wells can be designed to provide flow rate and duration control. This may be accomplished by providing greater infiltration storage

Criteria for Use of a Dry Well as an Infiltration BMP

In general, a careful site evaluation conducted by a registered civil engineer and a geologist/geotechnical engineer should be made to determine if the use of a dry well is suitable at any particular location. A dry well may be acceptable as an "infiltration BMP" if it meets **ALL** the following criteria:

- The BMP meets the minimum geotechnical and groundwater investigation requirements listed in **Appendix B;** and

- The BMP is evaluated by approved infiltration rate assessment methods presented in **Appendix D;** and
- Implements an appropriate pretreatment BMP that has a "pretreatment" rating and General Use Level Designation under Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology upstream of infiltration basins ; and
- Dry wells serving lots other than single-family homes are **registered with the US EPA** (additional information and registration forms can be found at: https://www.epa.gov/uic)**.**

In designing a dry well, the following items should be considered:

- Depth of dry well – The EPA currently encourages that the well "should not be constructed deeper than the seasonal high water table". As water begins to percolate into an aquifer, it requires a certain holding time in order to filter out contaminants before reaching the water table. This would need to be addressed by a professional geologist/geotechnical engineer.

- Geology – Theoretically the well would be dug through an area of low permeability and into an area that would allow the movement of water into the aquifer. Also, the type of geology and its ability to act as a conduit to the aquifer system would need to be addressed. This assessment would need to be made by a professional geologist/geotechnical engineer (Note: While some areas are conducive to this, vast areas of the County of San Diego have geological conditions not conducive for dry wells).

- Grading – The use of a dry well without the proper grading and back up storm drain system might pose a problem with the ponding of runoff due to the dry well's limited storage capacity and the time it would take to discharge water into the aquifer system. This assessment would need to be made by a professional civil engineer.

- Routine maintenance – Pretreatment effectiveness is contingent upon proper maintenance. Routine maintenance should be provided in order to keep a dry well free of trash/debris, sediments, oil and grease, etc.

- Potential contamination – It is recommended that dry wells be used in conjunction with low impact development (LID) practices (or pretreatment BMPs) to help reduce potential contaminants to groundwater and aquatic ecosystem. Note: The County of San Diego Department of Environmental Health may be able to provide further input.

Note: As indicated on the Cal/EPA Fact Sheet on Dry Wells, there are currently no uniform state regulations or guidelines on dry wells in California. The purpose of this fact sheet is to help explain the role of dry wells in meeting infiltration requirements. Therefore, this fact sheet does not describe specific design criteria like the other fact sheets in this manual. The City of Carlsbad may develop specific design criteria and include in this fact sheet at a future time.

E.12 PR-1 Biofiltration with Partial Retention

Location: 805 and Bonita Road, Chula vista, CA.

MS4 Permit Category

NA

Manual Category

Partial Retention

Applicable Performance Standard

Pollutant Control

Flow Control

Primary Benefits

Volume Reduction

Treatment

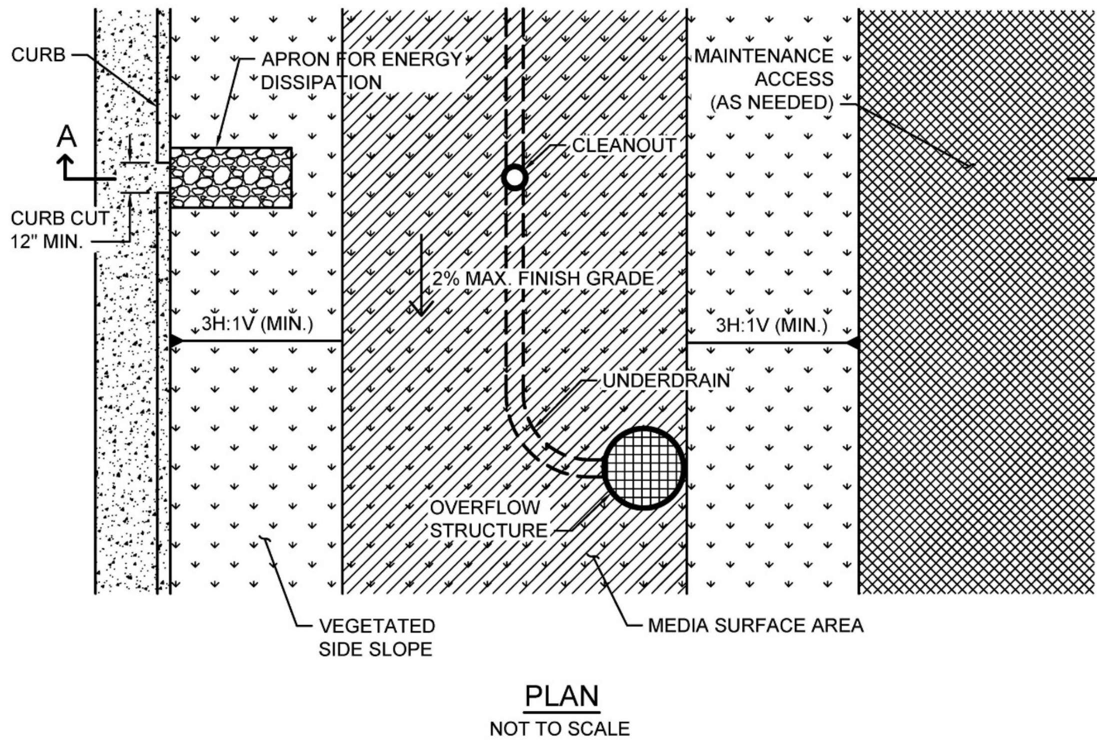
Peak Flow Attenuation

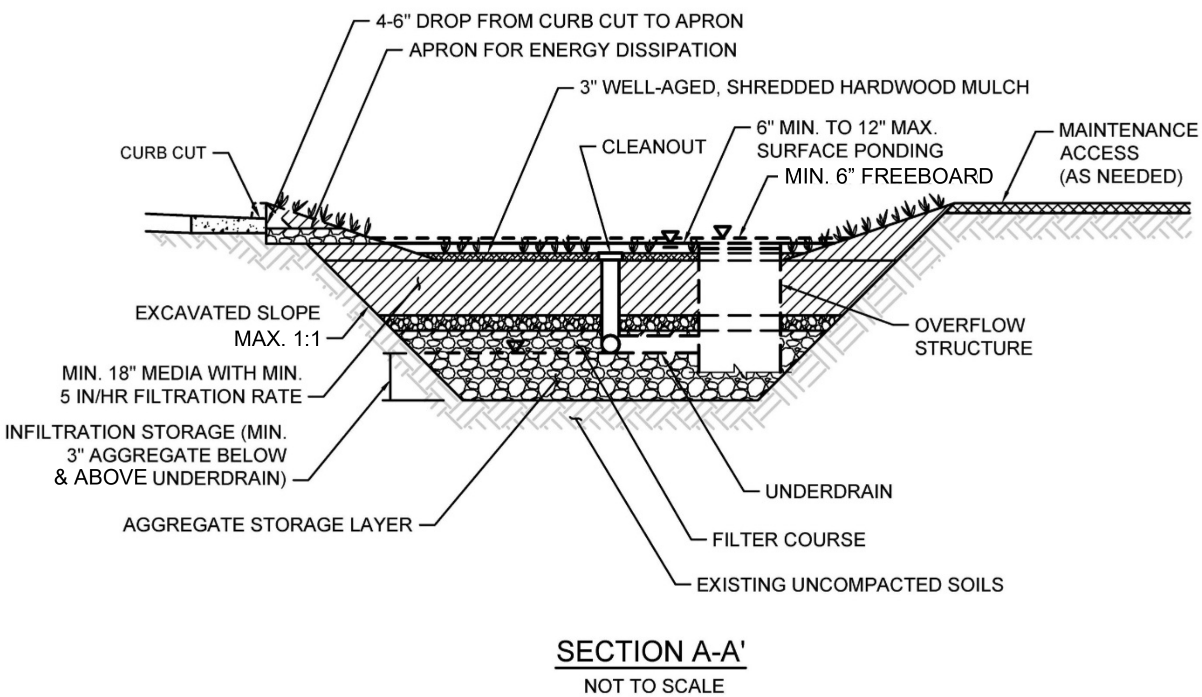
Description

Biofiltration with partial retention (partial infiltration and biofiltration) facilities are vegetated surface water systems that filter water through vegetation, and soil or engineered media prior to infiltrating into native soils, discharge via underdrain, or overflow to the downstream conveyance system. Where feasible, these BMPs have an elevated underdrain discharge point that creates storage capacity in the aggregate storage layer. Biofiltration with partial retention facilities are commonly incorporated into the site within parking lot landscaping, along roadsides, and in open spaces. They can be constructed in ground or partially aboveground, such as planter boxes with open bottoms to allow infiltration. Treatment is achieved through filtration, sedimentation, sorption, infiltration, biochemical processes and plant uptake.

Typical biofiltration with partial retention components include:

- Inflow distribution mechanisms (e.g, perimeter flow spreader or filter strips)
- Energy dissipation mechanism for concentrated inflows (e.g., splash blocks or riprap)
- Shallow surface ponding for captured flows
- Side Slope and basin bottom vegetation selected based on climate and ponding depth
- Non-floating mulch layer (Optional)
- Media layer (planting mix or engineered media) capable of supporting vegetation growth
- Filter course layer consisting of aggregate to prevent the migration of fines into uncompacted native soils or the optional aggregate storage layer
- Aggregate storage layer with underdrain(s)
- Uncompacted native soils at the bottom of the facility
- Overflow structure





Typical plan and Section view of a Biofiltration with Partial Retention BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Partial infiltration BMP with biofiltration treatment for storm water pollutant control. Biofiltration with partial retention can be designed so that a portion of the DCV is infiltrated by providing infiltration storage below the underdrain invert. The infiltration storage depth should be determined by the volume that can be reliably infiltrated within drawdown time limitations. Water discharged through the underdrain is considered biofiltration treatment. Storage provided above the underdrain within surface ponding, media, and aggregate storage is included in the biofiltration treatment volume.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. The system can be designed to provide flow rate and duration control by primarily providing increased surface ponding and/or having a deeper aggregate storage layer. This will allow for significant detention storage, which can be controlled via inclusion of an orifice in an outlet structure at the downstream end of the underdrain.

Recommended Siting Criteria

Siting Criteria		*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	Selection and design of basin is based on infiltration feasibility criteria and appropriate design infiltration rate (See Appendix D).	Must operate as a partial infiltration design and must be supported by drainage area and in-situ infiltration rate feasibility findings.
☐	Contributing tributary area shall be ≤ 5 acres (≤ 1 acre preferred).	Bigger BMPs require additional design features for proper performance. Contributing tributary area greater than 5 acres may be allowed at the discretion of the [City Engineer} if the following conditions are met: 1) incorporate design features (e.g. flow spreaders) to minimizing short circuiting of flows in the BMP and 2) incorporate additional design features requested by the City Engineer for proper performance of the regional BMP.

Siting Criteria		*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Finish grade of the facility is ≤ 2%.	Flatter surfaces reduce erosion and channelization within the facility.

Recommended BMP Component Dimensions

BMP Component	*Dimension*	*Intent/Rationale*
Freeboard	≥12 inches adjacent landscaping ≥ 6 inches adjacent hardscape, 4 inches for concrete planter/box structure	Freeboard provides room for head over overflow structures and minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.
Surface Ponding	≥ 6 and ≤ 12 inches	Surface ponding capacity lowers subsurface storage requirements. Deep surface ponding raises safety concerns. Surface ponding depth greater than 12 inches (for additional pollutant control or surface outlet structures or flow-control orifices) may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if the following conditions are met: 1) surface ponding depth drawdown time is less than 24 hours; and 2) safety issues and fencing requirements are considered (typically ponding greater than 18" will require a fence and/or flatter side slopes) and 3) potential for elevated clogging risk is considered.
Ponding Area Side Slopes	3H:1V or shallower	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.
Mulch	≥ 3 inches	Mulch will suppress weeds and maintain moisture for plant growth. Aging mulch kills pathogens and

BMP Component	*Dimension*	*Intent/Rationale*
		weed seeds and allows the beneficial microbes to multiply.
Media Layer	≥ 18 inches 1:1 slope maximum for edge condition	A deep media layer provides additional filtration and supports plants with deeper roots. Standard specifications shall be followed. For non-standard or proprietary designs, compliance with Appendix F.1 ensures that adequate treatment performance will be provided.
Underdrain Diameter	≥ 6 inches	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.
Cleanout Diameter	≥ 6 inches	Properly spaced cleanouts will facilitate underdrain maintenance.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Biofiltration with partial retention must meet the following design criteria and considerations. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

Design Criteria		*Intent/Rationale*
Surface Ponding		
☐	Surface ponding is limited to a 24-hour drawdown time.	Surface ponding limited to 24 hours for plant health. Surface ponding drawdown time greater than 24-hours but less than 96 hours may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if certified by a landscape architect or agronomist.
Vegetation		
☐	Plantings are suitable for the climate and expected ponding depth. A plant list to aid in	Plants suited to the climate and ponding depth are more likely to survive.

	Design Criteria	*Intent/Rationale*
	selection can be found in Appendix E.21	
☐	An irrigation system with a connection to water supply should be provided as needed.	Seasonal irrigation might be needed to keep plants healthy.
Mulch (Optional)		
☐	A minimum of 3 inches of well-aged, shredded hardwood mulch that has been stockpiled or stored for at least 12 months is provided. Mulch must be non-floating to avoid clogging of overflow structure.	Mulch will suppress weeds and maintain moisture for plant growth. Aging mulch kills pathogens and weed seeds and allows the beneficial microbes to multiply.
Media Layer		
☐	Media maintains a minimum filtration rate of 5 in/hr over lifetime of facility. An initial filtration rate of 8 to 12 in/hr is recommended to allow for clogging over time; the initial filtration rate should not exceed 12 inches per hour.	A filtration rate of at least 5 inches per hour allows soil to drain between events, and allows flows to relatively quickly enter the aggregate storage layer, thereby minimizing bypass. The initial rate should be higher than long term target rate to account for clogging over time. However an excessively high initial rate can have a negative impact on treatment performance, therefore an upper limit is needed.
☐	Media is a minimum 18 inches deep, meeting either of these two media specifications: Section F.3 Bioretention Soil Media (BSM) or specific jurisdictional guidance. Alternatively, for proprietary designs and custom media mixes not meeting the media specifications, the media meets the pollutant treatment performance criteria in Section F.1.	A deep media layer provides additional filtration and supports plants with deeper roots. Standard specifications shall be followed. For non-standard or proprietary designs, compliance with Appendix F.1 ensures that adequate treatment performance will be provided.
☐	Media surface area is 3% of contributing area times adjusted runoff factor or greater.	Greater surface area to tributary area ratios: a) maximizes volume retention as required by the MS4 Permit and b) decrease loading rates per square foot and therefore increase longevity.

Design Criteria		*Intent/Rationale*
		Adjusted runoff factor is to account for site design BMPs implemented upstream of the BMP (such as rain barrels, impervious area dispersion, etc.). Refer to Appendix B.1 guidance.
☐	Where receiving waters are impaired or have a TMDL for nutrients, the system is designed with nutrient sensitive media design (see fact sheet BF-2).	Potential for pollutant export is partly a function of media composition; media design must minimize potential for export of nutrients, particularly where receiving waters are impaired for nutrients.
Filter Course Layer		
☐	A filter course is used to prevent migration of fines through layers of the facility. Filter fabric is not used.	Migration of media can cause clogging of the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade. Filter fabric is more likely to clog.
☐	Filter course is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the facility
☐	Filter course calculations assessing suitability for particle migration prevention have been completed.	Gradation relationship between layers can evaluate factors (e.g., bridging, permeability, and uniformity) to determine if particle sizing is appropriate or if an intermediate layer is needed.
Aggregate Storage Layer		
☐	Class 2 Permeable per Caltrans specification 68-1.025 is recommended for the storage layer. Washed, open-graded crushed rock may be used, however a 4-6 inch washed pea gravel filter course layer at the top of the crushed rock is required.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade.
☐	Maximum aggregate storage layer depth below the underdrain invert is determined based on the infiltration storage volume that will infiltrate within a 36-hour drawdown time.	A maximum drawdown time is needed for vector control and to facilitate providing storm water storage for the next storm event.
Inflow, Underdrain, and Outflow Structures		

	Design Criteria	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Inflow, underdrains and outflow structures are accessible for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
☐	Inflow velocities are limited to 3 ft/s or less or use energy dissipation methods. (e.g., riprap, level spreader) for concentrated inflows.	High inflow velocities can cause erosion, scour and/or channeling.
☐	Curb cut inlets are at least 12 inches wide, have a 4-6 inch reveal (drop) and an apron and energy dissipation as needed.	Inlets must not restrict flow and apron prevents blockage from vegetation as it grows in. Energy dissipation prevents erosion.
☐	Stormdrain inlets shall be placed a minimum of 4-inch above the finish grade of basin (top of mulch)	Inlets must not restrict flow and prevent blockage from vegetation as it grows in.
☐	Underdrain outlet elevation should be a minimum of 3 inches above the bottom elevation of the aggregate storage layer.	A minimal separation from subgrade or the liner lessens the risk of fines entering the underdrain and can improve hydraulic performance by allowing perforations to remain unblocked.
☐	Minimum of 3 inches of aggregate storage layer from top of underdrain to bottom of filter course.	To prevent potential clogging of the underdrain and must not restrict flow.
☐	Minimum underdrain diameter is 6 inches.	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.
☐	Underdrains are made of slotted, PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D 3034 or equivalent or corrugated, HDPE pipe conforming to AASHTO 252M or equivalent.	Slotted underdrains provide greater intake capacity, clog resistant drainage, and reduced entrance velocity into the pipe, thereby reducing the chances of solids migration.
☐	An underdrain cleanout with a minimum 6-inch diameter and lockable cap is placed every 250 to 300 feet as required based on underdrain length.	Properly spaced cleanouts will facilitate underdrain maintenance.
☐	Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point. Size overflow structure to pass 100-year peak flow for on-line infiltration basins and water quality peak flow for off-line basins.	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.

Nutrient Sensitive Media Design

To design biofiltration with partial retention with underdrain for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design biofiltration with partial retention and an underdrain for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, maximum side and finish grade slopes, and the recommended media surface area tributary ratio.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Generalized sizing procedure is presented in Appendix B.3. The surface ponding should be verified to have a maximum 24-hour drawdown time.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

Control of flow rates and/or durations will typically require significant surface ponding and/or aggregate storage volumes, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of this manual.

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, maximum side and finish grade slopes, and the recommended media surface area tributary ratio.
2. Iteratively determine the facility footprint area, surface ponding and/or aggregate storage layer depth required to provide detention and/or infiltration storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows.
3. If biofiltration with partial retention cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, an upstream or downstream structure with significant storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After biofiltration with partial retention has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

Maintenance Overview

Normal Expected Maintenance. Biofiltration with partial retention requires routine maintenance to: remove accumulated materials such as sediment, trash or debris; maintain vegetation health; maintain infiltration capacity of the media layer; replenish mulch; and maintain integrity of side slopes, inlets, energy dissipators, and outlets. A summary table of standard inspection and maintenance indicators is provided within this Fact Sheet.

Non-Standard Maintenance or BMP Failure. If any of the following scenarios are observed, the BMP is not performing as intended to protect downstream waterways from pollution and/or erosion. Corrective maintenance, increased inspection and maintenance, BMP replacement, or a different BMP type will be required.

- The BMP is not drained between storm events. Surface ponding longer than approximately 24 hours following a storm event may be detrimental to vegetation health, and surface ponding longer than approximately 96 hours following a storm event poses a risk of vector (mosquito) breeding. Poor drainage can result from clogging of the media layer, filter course, aggregate storage layer, underdrain, or outlet structure. The specific cause of the drainage issue must be determined and corrected.

- Sediment, trash, or debris accumulation greater than 25% of the surface ponding volume within one month. This means the load from the tributary drainage area is too high, reducing BMP function or clogging the BMP. This would require pretreatment measures within the tributary area draining to the BMP to intercept the materials. Pretreatment components, especially for sediment, will extend the life of components that are more expensive to replace such as media, filter course, and aggregate layers.

- Erosion due to concentrated storm water runoff flow that is not readily corrected by adding erosion control blankets, adding stone at flow entry points, or minor re-grading to restore proper drainage according to the original plan. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.

Other Special Considerations. Biofiltration with partial retention is a vegetated structural BMP. Vegetated structural BMPs that are constructed in the vicinity of, or connected to, an existing jurisdictional water or wetland could inadvertently result in creation of expanded waters or wetlands. As such, vegetated structural BMPs have the potential to come under the jurisdiction of the United States Army Corps of Engineers, SDRWQCB, California Department of Fish and Wildlife, or the United States Fish and Wildlife Service. This could result in the need for specific resource agency permits and costly mitigation to perform maintenance of the structural BMP. Along with proper placement of a structural BMP, routine maintenance is key to preventing this scenario.

Summary of Standard Inspection and Maintenance

The property owner is responsible to ensure inspection, operation and maintenance of permanent BMPs on their property unless responsibility has been formally transferred to an agency, community facilities district, homeowners association, property owners association, or other special district.

Maintenance frequencies listed in this table are average/typical frequencies. Actual maintenance needs are site-specific, and maintenance may be required more frequently. Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on maintenance indicators presented in this table. The BMP owner is responsible for conducting regular inspections to see when maintenance is needed based on the maintenance indicators. During the first year of operation of a structural BMP, inspection is recommended at least once prior to August 31 and then monthly from September through May. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined based on the results of the first year inspections.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials, without damage to the vegetation or compaction of the media layer.	• Inspect monthly. If the BMP is 25% full* or more in one month, increase inspection frequency to monthly plus after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.
Obstructed inlet or outlet structure	Clear blockage.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.
Damage to structural components such as weirs, inlet or outlet structures	Repair or replace as applicable.	• Inspect annually. • Maintain when needed.
Poor vegetation establishment	Re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Dead or diseased vegetation	Remove dead or diseased vegetation, re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Overgrown vegetation	Mow or trim as appropriate.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
2/3 of mulch has decomposed, or mulch has been removed	Remove decomposed fraction and top off with fresh mulch to a total depth of 3 inches.	• Inspect monthly. • Replenish mulch annually, or more frequently when needed based on inspection.
Erosion due to concentrated irrigation flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas and adjust the irrigation system.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Erosion due to concentrated storm water runoff flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas, and make appropriate corrective measures such as adding erosion control blankets, adding stone at flow entry points, or minor re-grading to restore proper drainage according to the original plan. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.	• Inspect after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If erosion due to storm water flow has been observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.
Standing water in BMP for longer than 24 hours following a storm event Surface ponding longer than approximately 24 hours following a storm event may be detrimental to vegetation health	Make appropriate corrective measures such as adjusting irrigation system, removing obstructions of debris or invasive vegetation, clearing underdrains, or repairing/replacing clogged or compacted soils.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Presence of mosquitos/larvae For images of egg rafts, larva, pupa, and adult mosquitos, see http://www.mosquito.org/biology	If mosquitos/larvae are observed: first, immediately remove any standing water by dispersing to nearby landscaping; second, make corrective measures as applicable to restore BMP drainage to prevent standing water. If mosquitos persist following corrective measures to remove standing water, or if the BMP design does not meet the 96-hour drawdown criteria due to release rates controlled by an orifice installed on the underdrain, the City Engineer shall be contacted to determine a solution. A different BMP type, or a Vector Management Plan prepared with concurrence from the County of San Diego Department of Environmental Health, may be required.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If mosquitos are observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.
Underdrain clogged	Clear blockage.	Inspect if standing water is observed for longer than 24-96 hours following a storm event. Maintain when needed.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

E.13 BF-1 Biofiltration

Location: 43rd Street and Logan Avenue, San Diego, California

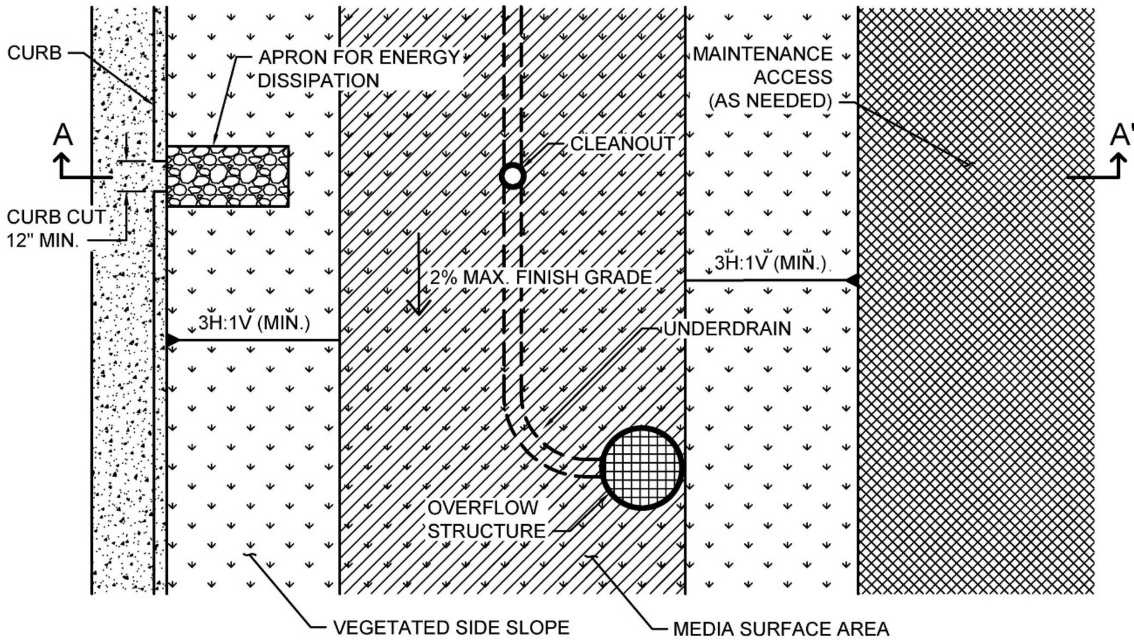
MS4 Permit Category
Biofiltration
Manual Category
Biofiltration
Applicable Performance Standard
Pollutant Control Flow Control
Primary Benefits
Treatment Volume Reduction (Incidental) Peak Flow Attenuation (Optional)

Description

Biofiltration (Bioretention with underdrain) facilities are vegetated surface water systems that filter water through vegetation, and soil or engineered media prior to discharge via underdrain or overflow to the downstream conveyance system. Bioretention with underdrain facilities are commonly incorporated into the site within parking lot landscaping, along roadsides, and in open spaces. Because these types of facilities have limited or no infiltration, they are typically designed to provide enough hydraulic head to move flows through the underdrain connection to the storm drain system. Treatment is achieved through filtration, sedimentation, sorption, biochemical processes and plant uptake.

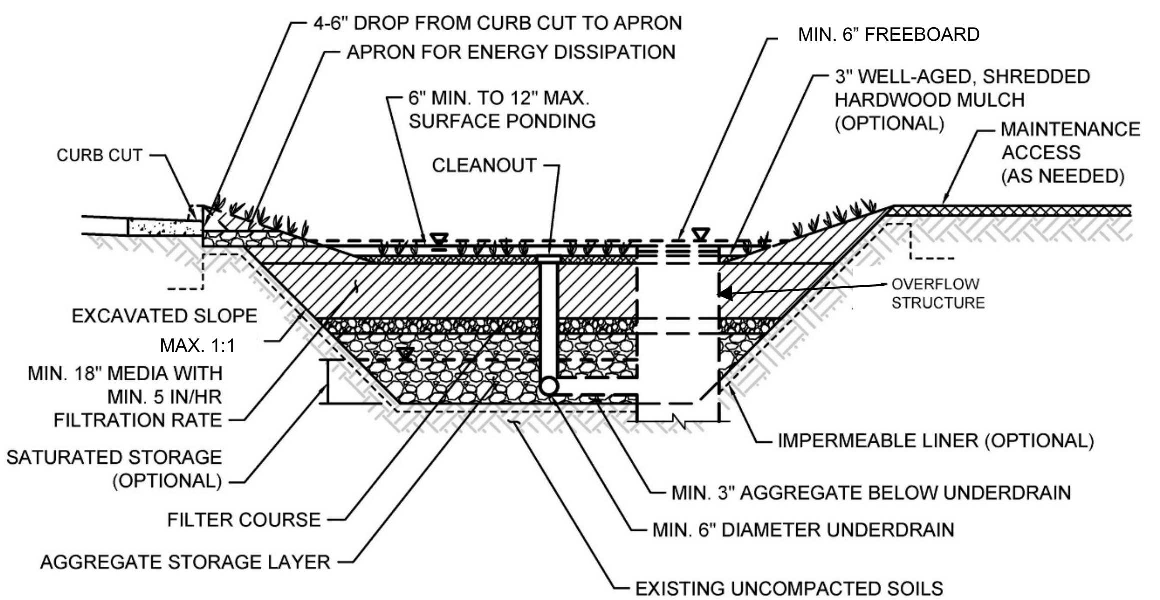
Typical bioretention with underdrain components include:

- Inflow distribution mechanisms (e.g, perimeter flow spreader or filter strips)
- Energy dissipation mechanism for concentrated inflows (e.g., splash blocks or riprap)
- Shallow surface ponding for captured flows
- Side slope and basin bottom vegetation selected based on expected climate and ponding depth
- Non-floating mulch layer (Optional)
- Media layer (planting mix or engineered media) capable of supporting vegetation growth
- Filter course layer consisting of aggregate to prevent the migration of fines into uncompacted native soils or the aggregate storage layer
- Aggregate storage layer with underdrain(s)
- Impermeable liner or uncompacted native soils at the bottom of the facility
- Overflow structure



PLAN

NOT TO SCALE



SECTION A-A'

NOT TO SCALE

Typical plan and Section view of a Biofiltration BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Biofiltration Treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control. The system is lined or un-lined to provide incidental infiltration, and an underdrain is provided at the bottom to carry away filtered runoff. This configuration is considered to provide biofiltration treatment via flow through the media layer. Storage provided above the underdrain within surface ponding, media, and aggregate storage is considered included in the biofiltration treatment volume. Saturated storage within the aggregate storage layer can be added to this design by raising the underdrain above the bottom of the aggregate storage layer or via an internal weir structure designed to maintain a specific water level elevation.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. The system can be designed to provide flow rate and duration control by primarily providing increased surface ponding and/or having a deeper aggregate storage layer above the underdrain. This will allow for significant detention storage, which can be controlled via inclusion of an outlet structure at the downstream end of the underdrain.

Recommended Siting Criteria

Siting Criteria		*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is included if site constraints indicate that infiltration or lateral flows should not be allowed.	Lining prevents storm water from impacting groundwater and/or sensitive environmental or geotechnical features. Incidental infiltration, when allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge.
☐	Contributing tributary area shall be ≤ 5 acres (≤ 1 acre preferred).	Bigger BMPs require additional design features for proper performance. Contributing tributary area greater than 5 acres may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if the following conditions are met: 1) incorporate design features (e.g. flow spreaders) to minimizing short circuiting of flows in the BMP and 2) incorporate additional design features requested by the City

Siting Criteria		*Intent/Rationale*
		Engineer for proper performance of the regional BMP.
☐	Finish grade of the facility is ≤ 2%.	Flatter surfaces reduce erosion and channelization within the facility.

Recommended BMP Component Dimensions

BMP Component	*Dimension*	*Intent/Rationale*
Freeboard	≥ 12 inches adjacent landscape area ≥ 6 inches adjacent hardscape, 4 inches for concrete planter/box structure	Freeboard provides room for head over overflow structures and minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.
Surface Ponding	≥ 6 and ≤ 12 inches	Surface ponding capacity lowers subsurface storage requirements. Deep surface ponding raises safety concerns. Surface ponding depth greater than 12 inches (for additional pollutant control or surface outlet structures or flow-control orifices) may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if the following conditions are met: 1) surface ponding depth drawdown time is less than 24 hours; and 2) safety issues and fencing requirements are considered (typically ponding greater than 18" will require a fence and/or flatter side slopes) and 3) potential for elevated clogging risk is considered.
Ponding Area Side Slopes	3H:1V or shallower	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.
Mulch	≥ 3 inches	Mulch will suppress weeds and maintain moisture for plant growth.

BMP Component	*Dimension*	*Intent/Rationale*
		Aging mulch kills pathogens and weed seeds and allows the beneficial microbes to multiply.
Media Layer	≥ 18 inches 1:1 slope maximum for edge condition	A deep media layer provides additional filtration and supports plants with deeper roots. Standard specifications shall be followed. For non-standard or proprietary designs, compliance with F.1 ensures that adequate treatment performance will be provided.
Underdrain Diameter	≥ 6 inches	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.
Cleanout Diameter	≥ 6 inches	Properly spaced cleanouts will facilitate underdrain maintenance.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Biofiltration with underdrain must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Design Criteria	*Intent/Rationale*
Surface Ponding		
☐	Surface ponding is limited to a 24-hour drawdown time.	Surface ponding limited to 24 hours for plant health. Surface ponding drawdown time greater than 24-hours but less than 96 hours may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if certified by a landscape architect or agronomist.
Vegetation		
☐	Plantings are suitable for the climate and expected ponding depth. A plant list to aid in selection can be found in Appendix E.21.	Plants suited to the climate and ponding depth are more likely to survive.
☐	An irrigation system with a connection to water supply should be provided as needed.	Seasonal irrigation might be needed to keep plants healthy.
Mulch (Optional)		

	Design Criteria	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	A minimum of 3 inches of well-aged, shredded hardwood mulch that has been stockpiled or stored for at least 12 months is provided.	Mulch will suppress weeds and maintain moisture for plant growth. Aging mulch kills pathogens and weed seeds and allows the beneficial microbes to multiply.
Media Layer		
☐	Media maintains a minimum filtration rate of 5 in/hr over lifetime of facility. An initial filtration rate of 8 to 12 in/hr is recommended to allow for clogging over time; the initial filtration rate should not exceed 12 inches per hour.	A filtration rate of at least 5 inches per hour allows soil to drain between events. The initial rate should be higher than long term target rate to account for clogging over time. However an excessively high initial rate can have a negative impact on treatment performance, therefore an upper limit is needed.
☐	Media is a minimum 18 inches deep, meeting either of these two media specifications: Section F.3 Bioretention Soil Media (BSM) or specific jurisdictional guidance. Alternatively, for proprietary designs and custom media mixes not meeting the media specifications, the media meets the pollutant treatment performance criteria in Section F.1.	A deep media layer provides additional filtration and supports plants with deeper roots. Standard specifications shall be followed. For non-standard or proprietary designs, compliance with F.1 ensures that adequate treatment performance will be provided.
☐	Media surface area is 3% of contributing area times adjusted runoff factor or greater.	Greater surface area to tributary area ratios: a) maximizes volume retention as required by the MS4 Permit and b) decrease loading rates per square foot and therefore increase longevity. Adjusted runoff factor is to account for site design BMPs implemented upstream of the BMP (such as rain barrels, impervious area dispersion, etc.). Refer to Appendix B.1 guidance.

	Design Criteria	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Where receiving waters are impaired or have a TMDL for nutrients, the system is designed with nutrient sensitive media design (see fact sheet BF-2).	Potential for pollutant export is partly a function of media composition; media design must minimize potential for export of nutrients, particularly where receiving waters are impaired for nutrients.
Filter Course Layer		
☐	A filter course is used to prevent migration of fines through layers of the facility. Filter fabric is not used.	Migration of media can cause clogging of the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade. Filter fabric is more likely to clog.
☐	Filter course is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the facility and impede infiltration.
☐	Filter course calculations assessing suitability for particle migration prevention have been completed.	Gradation relationship between layers can evaluate factors (e.g., bridging, permeability, and uniformity) to determine if particle sizing is appropriate or if an intermediate layer is needed.
Aggregate Storage Layer		
☐	Class 2 Permeable per Caltrans specification 68-1.025 is recommended for the storage layer. Washed, open-graded crushed rock may be used, however a 4-6 inch washed pea gravel filter course layer at the top of the crushed rock is required.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade.
☐	The depth of aggregate provided (12-inch typical) and storage layer configuration is adequate for providing conveyance for underdrain flows to the outlet structure.	Proper storage layer configuration and underdrain placement will minimize facility drawdown time.
Inflow, Underdrain, and Outflow Structures		
☐	Inflow, underdrains and outflow structures are accessible for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
☐	Inflow velocities are limited to 3 ft/s or less or use energy dissipation methods. (e.g., riprap, level spreader) for concentrated inflows.	High inflow velocities can cause erosion, scour and/or channeling.

	Design Criteria	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Curb cut inlets are at least 12 inches wide, have a 4-6 inch reveal (drop) and an apron and energy dissipation as needed.	Inlets must not restrict flow and apron prevents blockage from vegetation as it grows in. Energy dissipation prevents erosion.
☐	Stormdrain inlets shall be placed a minimum of 4-inch above the finish grade of basin (top of mulch)	Inlets must not restrict flow and prevent blockage from vegetation as it grows in.
☐	Underdrain outlet elevation should be a minimum of 3 inches above the bottom elevation of the aggregate storage layer.	A minimal separation from subgrade or the liner lessens the risk of fines entering the underdrain and can improve hydraulic performance by allowing perforations to remain unblocked.
☐	Minimum underdrain diameter is 6 inches.	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.
☐	Underdrains are made of slotted, PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D 3034 or equivalent or corrugated, HDPE pipe conforming to AASHTO 252M or equivalent.	Slotted underdrains provide greater intake capacity, clog resistant drainage, and reduced entrance velocity into the pipe, thereby reducing the chances of solids migration.
☐	An underdrain cleanout with a minimum 6-inch diameter and lockable cap is placed every 250 to 300 feet as required based on underdrain length.	Properly spaced cleanouts will facilitate underdrain maintenance.
☐	Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point Size overflow structure to pass 100-year peak flow for on-line infiltration basins and water quality peak flow for off-line basins.	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design bioretention with underdrain for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, maximum side and finish grade slopes, and the recommended media surface area tributary ratio.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.

3. Use the sizing worksheet presented in Appendix B.3 to size biofiltration BMPs.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

Control of flow rates and/or durations will typically require significant surface ponding and/or aggregate storage volumes, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the manual.

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, maximum side and finish grade slopes, and the recommended media surface area tributary ratio.
2. Iteratively determine the facility footprint area, surface ponding and/or aggregate storage layer depth required to provide detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows.
3. If bioretention with underdrain cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, an upstream or downstream structure with significant storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After bioretention with underdrain has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

Maintenance Overview

Normal Expected Maintenance. Biofiltration requires routine maintenance to: remove accumulated materials such as sediment, trash or debris; maintain vegetation health; maintain infiltration capacity of the media layer; replenish mulch; and maintain integrity of side slopes, inlets, energy dissipators, and outlets. A summary table of standard inspection and maintenance indicators is provided within this Fact Sheet.

Non-Standard Maintenance or BMP Failure. If any of the following scenarios are observed, the BMP is not performing as intended to protect downstream waterways from pollution and/or erosion. Corrective maintenance, increased inspection and maintenance, BMP replacement, or a different BMP type will be required.

- The BMP is not drained between storm events. Surface ponding longer than approximately 24 hours following a storm event may be detrimental to vegetation health, and surface ponding longer than approximately 96 hours following a storm event poses a risk of vector (mosquito) breeding. Poor drainage can result from clogging of the media layer, filter course, aggregate storage layer, underdrain, or outlet structure. The specific cause of the drainage issue must be determined and corrected.

- Sediment, trash, or debris accumulation greater than 25% of the surface ponding volume within one month. This means the load from the tributary drainage area is too high, reducing BMP function or clogging the BMP. This would require pretreatment measures within the tributary area draining to the BMP to intercept the materials. Pretreatment components, especially for sediment, will extend the life of components that are more expensive to replace such as media, filter course, and aggregate layers.
- Erosion due to concentrated storm water runoff flow that is not readily corrected by adding erosion control blankets, adding stone at flow entry points, or minor re-grading to restore proper drainage according to the original plan. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.

Other Special Considerations. Biofiltration is a vegetated structural BMP. Vegetated structural BMPs that are constructed in the vicinity of, or connected to, an existing jurisdictional water or wetland could inadvertently result in creation of expanded waters or wetlands. As such, vegetated structural BMPs have the potential to come under the jurisdiction of the United States Army Corps of Engineers, SDRWQCB, California Department of Fish and Wildlife, or the United States Fish and Wildlife Service. This could result in the need for specific resource agency permits and costly mitigation to perform maintenance of the structural BMP. Along with proper placement of a structural BMP, routine maintenance is key to preventing this scenario.

Summary of Standard Inspection and Maintenance

The property owner is responsible to ensure inspection, operation and maintenance of permanent BMPs on their property unless responsibility has been formally transferred to an agency, community facilities district, homeowners association, property owners association, or other special district.

Maintenance frequencies listed in this table are average/typical frequencies. Actual maintenance needs are site-specific, and maintenance may be required more frequently. Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on maintenance indicators presented in this table. The BMP owner is responsible for conducting regular inspections to see when maintenance is needed based on the maintenance indicators. During the first year of operation of a structural BMP, inspection is recommended at least once prior to August 31 and then monthly from September through May. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined based on the results of the first year inspections.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials, without damage to the vegetation or compaction of the media layer.	• Inspect monthly. If the BMP is 25% full* or more in one month, increase inspection frequency to monthly plus after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.
Obstructed inlet or outlet structure	Clear blockage.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.
Damage to structural components such as weirs, inlet or outlet structures	Repair or replace as applicable	• Inspect annually. • Maintain when needed.
Poor vegetation establishment	Re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Dead or diseased vegetation	Remove dead or diseased vegetation, re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Overgrown vegetation	Mow or trim as appropriate.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
2/3 of mulch has decomposed, or mulch has been removed	Remove decomposed fraction and top off with fresh mulch to a total depth of 3 inches.	• Inspect monthly. • Replenish mulch annually, or more frequently when needed based on inspection.
Erosion due to concentrated irrigation flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas and adjust the irrigation system.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Erosion due to concentrated storm water runoff flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas, and make appropriate corrective measures such as adding erosion control blankets, adding stone at flow entry points, or minor re-grading to restore proper drainage according to the original plan. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.	• Inspect after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If erosion due to storm water flow has been observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.
Standing water in BMP for longer than 24 hours following a storm event Surface ponding longer than approximately 24 hours following a storm event may be detrimental to vegetation health	Make appropriate corrective measures such as adjusting irrigation system, removing obstructions of debris or invasive vegetation, clearing underdrains, or repairing/replacing clogged or compacted soils.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Presence of mosquitos/larvae For images of egg rafts, larva, pupa, and adult mosquitos, see http://www.mosquito.org/biology	If mosquitos/larvae are observed: first, immediately remove any standing water by dispersing to nearby landscaping; second, make corrective measures as applicable to restore BMP drainage to prevent standing water. If mosquitos persist following corrective measures to remove standing water, or if the BMP design does not meet the 96-hour drawdown criteria due to release rates controlled by an orifice installed on the underdrain, the City Engineer shall be contacted to determine a solution. A different BMP type, or a Vector Management Plan prepared with concurrence from the County of San Diego Department of Environmental Health, may be required.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If mosquitos are observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.
Underdrain clogged	Clear blockage.	• Inspect if standing water is observed for longer than 24-96 hours following a storm event. • Maintain when needed.

"25% full" is defined as ¼ of the depth from the design bottom elevation to the crest of the outflow structure (e.g., if the height to the outflow opening is 12 inches from the bottom elevation, then the materials must be removed when there is 3 inches of accumulation – this should be marked on the outflow structure).

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

E.14 BF-2 Nutrient Sensitive Media Design

Some studies of bioretention with underdrains have observed export of nutrients, particularly inorganic nitrogen (nitrate and nitrite) and dissolved phosphorus. This has been observed to be a short-lived phenomenon in some studies or a long term issue in some studies. The composition of the soil media, including the chemistry of individual elements is believed to be an important factor in the potential for nutrient export. Organic amendments, often compost, have been identified as the most likely source of nutrient export. The quality and stability of organic amendments can vary widely.

The biofiltration media specifications contained in the County of San Diego Low Impact Development Handbook: Appendix G -Bioretention Soil Specification (June 2014, unless superseded by more recent edition) and the City of San Diego Low Impact Development Design Manual (page B-18) (July 2011, unless superseded by more recent edition) were developed with consideration of the potential for nutrient export. These specifications include criteria for individual component characteristics and quality in order to control the overall quality of the blended mixes. As of the publication of this manual, the June 2014 County of San Diego specifications provide more detail regarding mix design and quality control.

The City and County specifications noted above were developed for general purposes to meet permeability and treatment goals. In cases where the BMP discharges to receiving waters with nutrient impairments or nutrient TMDLs, the biofiltration media should be designed with the specific goal of minimizing the potential for export of nutrients from the media. Therefore, in addition to adhering to the City or County media specifications, the following guidelines should be followed:

1. Select plant palette to minimize plant nutrient needs

A landscape architect or agronomist should be consulted to select a plant palette that minimizes nutrient needs. Utilizing plants with low nutrient needs results in less need to enrich the biofiltration soil mix. If nutrient quantity is then tailored to plants with lower nutrient needs, these plants will generally have less competition from weeds, which typically need higher nutrient content. The following practices are recommended to minimize nutrient needs of the plant palette:

- **Utilize native, drought-tolerant plants and grasses where possible.** Native plants generally have a broader tolerance for nutrient content, and can be longer lived in leaner/lower nutrient soils.

- **Start plants from smaller starts or seed.** Younger plants are generally more tolerant of lower nutrient levels and tend to help develop soil structure as they grow. Given the lower cost of smaller plants, the project should be able to accept a plant mortality rate that is somewhat higher than starting from larger plants and providing high organic content.

2. Minimize excess nutrients in media mix

Once the low-nutrient plant palette is established (item 1), the landscape architect and/or agronomist should be consulted to assist in the design of a biofiltration media to balance the interests of plant establishment, water retention capacity (irrigation demand), and the potential for nutrient export. The following guidelines should be followed:

- **The mix should not exceed the nutrient needs of plants.** In conventional landscape design, the nutrient needs of plants are often exceeded intentionally in order to provide a factor of safety for plant survival. This practice must be avoided in biofiltration media as excess nutrients will increase the chance of export. The mix designer should keep in mind that nutrients can be added later (through mulching, tilling of amendments into the surface), but it is not possible to remove nutrients, once added.

- **The actual nutrient content and organic content of the selected organic amendment source should be determined when specifying mix proportions.** Nutrient content (i.e., C:N ratio; plant extractable nutrients) and organic content (i.e, % organic material) are relatively inexpensive to measure via standard agronomic methods and can provide important information about mix design. If mix design relies on approximate assumption about nutrient/organic content and this is not confirmed with testing (or the results of prior representative testing), it is possible that the mix could contain much more nutrient than intended.

- **Nutrients are better retained in soils with higher cation exchange capacity.** Cation exchange capacity can be increased through selection of organic material with naturally high cation exchange capacity, such as peat or coconut coir pith, and/or selection of inorganic material with high cation exchange capacity such as some sands or engineered minerals (e.g., low P-index sands, zeolites, rhyolites, etc). Including higher cation exchange capacity materials would tend to reduce the net export of nutrients. Natural silty materials also provide cation exchange capacity; however potential impacts to permeability need to be considered.

- **Focus on soil structure as well as nutrient content.** Soil structure is loosely defined as the ability of the soil to conduct and store water and nutrients as well as the degree of aeration of the soil. Soil structure can be more important than nutrient content in plant survival and biologic health of the system. If a good soil structure can be created with very low amounts of organic amendment, plants survivability should still be provided. While soil structure generally develops with time, biofiltration media can be designed to promote earlier development of soil structure. Soil structure is enhanced by the use of amendments with high humus content (as found in well-aged organic material). In addition, soil structure can be enhanced through the use of organic material with a distribution of particle sizes (i.e., a more heterogeneous mix).

- **Consider alternatives to compost.** Compost, by nature, is a material that is continually evolving and decaying. It can be challenging to determine whether tests previously done on a given compost stock are still representative. It can also be challenging to determine how the properties of the compost will change once placed in the media bed. More stable materials such as aged coco coir pith, peat, biochar, shredded bark, and/or other amendments should be considered.

With these considerations, it is anticipated that less than 10 percent organic amendment by volume could be used, while still balancing plant survivability and water retention. If compost is used, designers should strongly consider utilizing less than 10 percent by volume.

3. Design with partial retention and/or internal water storage

An internal water storage zone, as described in Fact Sheet PR-1 is believed to improve retention of nutrients. For lined systems, an internal water storage zone worked by providing a zone that fluctuates between aerobic and anaerobic conditions, resulting in nitrification/denitrification. In soils that will allow infiltration, a partial retention design (PR-1) allows significant volume reduction and can also promote nitrification/denitrification.

Acknowledgment: This fact sheet has been adapted from the Orange County Technical Guidance Document (May 2011). It was originally developed based on input from: Deborah Deets, City of Los Angeles Bureau of Sanitation, Drew Ready, Center for Watershed Health, Rick Fisher, ASLA, City of Los Angeles Bureau of Engineering, Dr. Garn Wallace, Wallace Laboratories, Glen Dake, GDML, and Jason Schmidt, Tree People. The guidance provided herein does not reflect the individual opinions of any individual listed above and should not be cited or otherwise attributed to those listed.

Maintenance Overview

Refer to maintenance information provided in the Biofiltration (BF-1) Fact Sheet. Adjust maintenance actions and reporting if required based on the specific media design.

E.15 BF-3 Proprietary Biofiltration Systems

The purpose of this fact sheet is to help explain the potential role of proprietary BMPs in meeting biofiltration requirements, when full retention of the DCV is not feasible. The fact sheet does not describe design criteria like the other fact sheets in this appendix because this information varies by BMP product model.

Criteria for Use of a Proprietary BMP as a Biofiltration BMP

A proprietary BMP may be acceptable as a “biofiltration BMP” under the following conditions:

(1) The BMP meets the minimum design criteria listed in Appendix F, including the pollutant treatment performance standard in Appendix F.1 and provide supplemental BMPs that meet the retention requirements in Appendix B;

(2) The BMP is designed and maintained in a manner consistent with its performance certifications (See explanation in Appendix F.2); and

(3) The BMP is acceptable at the discretion of the City Engineer. In determining the acceptability of a BMP, the City Engineer should consider, as applicable, (a) the data submitted; (b) representativeness of the data submitted; and (c) consistency of the BMP performance claims with pollutant control objectives; certainty of the BMP performance claims; .

The proprietary biofiltration BMP also qualifies as a trash capture device if it conforms with the Regional Water Quality Control Boards certified full capture system list of trash treatment control devices.

Guidance for Sizing a Proprietary BMP as a Biofiltration BMP

Proprietary biofiltration BMPs must meet the same sizing guidance as non-proprietary BMPs. Sizing is typically based on capturing and treating 1.50 times the DCV not reliably retained. Guidance for sizing biofiltration BMPs to comply with requirements of this manual is provided in Appendix F.2.

Maintenance Overview

Refer to manufacturer for maintenance information.

E.16 FT-1 Vegetated Swales*

MS4 Permit Category
Flow-thru Treatment Control
Manual Category
Flow-thru Treatment Control
Applicable Performance Standard
Pollutant Control
Primary Benefits
Treatment Volume Reduction (Incidental) Peak Flow Attenuation

Location: Eastlake Business Center, Chula Vista, California; Photo Credit: Eric Mosolgo

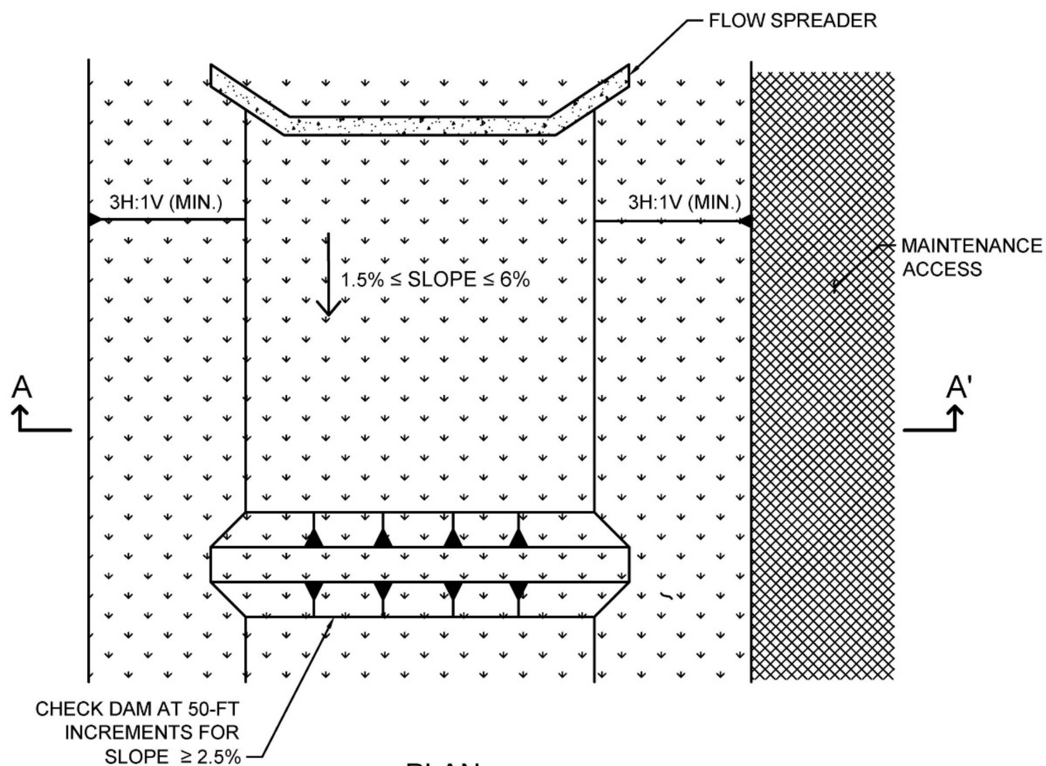
Description

Vegetated swales are shallow, open channels that are designed to remove storm water pollutants by physically straining/filtering runoff through vegetation in the channel. Swales can be used in place of traditional curbs and gutters and are well-suited for use in linear transportation corridors to provide both conveyance and treatment via filtration. An effectively designed vegetated swale achieves uniform sheet flow through densely vegetated areas. When soil conditions allow, infiltration and volume reduction are enhanced by adding a gravel drainage layer underneath the swale. Vegetated swales with a subsurface media layer can provide enhanced infiltration, water retention, and pollutant-removal capabilities. Pollutant removal effectiveness can also be maximized by increasing the hydraulic residence time of water in swale using weirs or check dams.

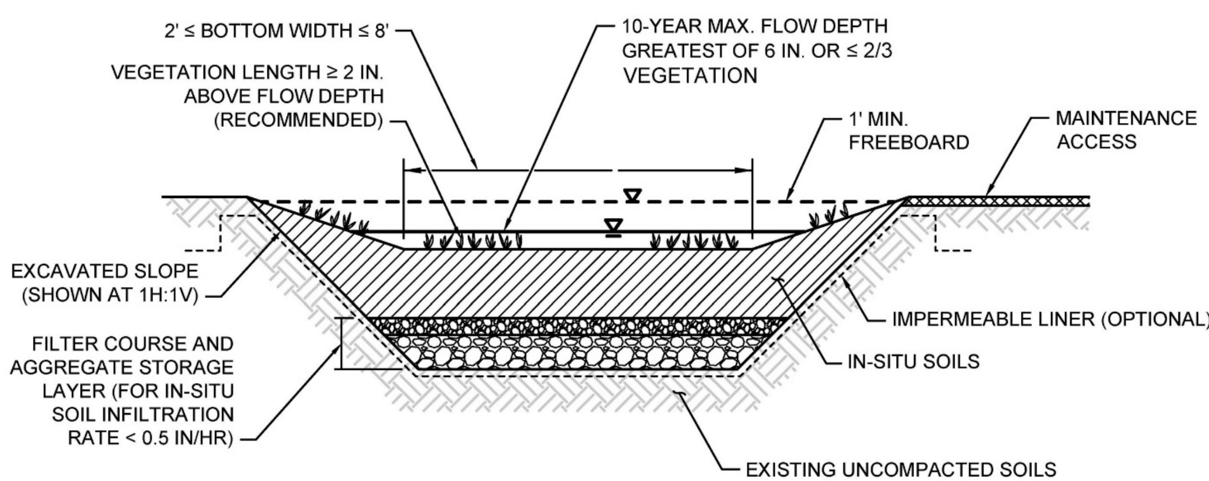
Typical vegetated swale components include:

- Inflow distribution mechanisms (e.g., flow spreader)
- Surface flow
- Vegetated surface layer
- Check dams (if required)
- Optional aggregate storage layer with underdrain(s)

* Vegetated Swales in regards to flow-thru treatment control BMP is not an option as a structural BMP. Carlsbad has not adopted an Alternative Compliance Program. However, Vegetated Swales can be used for pretreatment and/or site design BMPs



PLAN
NOT TO SCALE



SECTION A-A'
NOT TO SCALE

Typical plan and Section view of a Vegetated Swale BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce runoff volumes and storm peaks. Swales without underdrains are an alternative to lined channels and pipes and can provide volume reduction through infiltration. Swales can also reduce the peak runoff discharge rate by increasing the time of concentration of the site and decreasing runoff volumes and velocities.

Flow-thru treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control[*]. The system is lined or un-lined to provide incidental infiltration with an underdrain and designed to provide pollutant removal through settling and filtration in the channel vegetation (usually grasses). This configuration is considered to provide flow-thru treatment via horizontal surface flow through the swale. Sizing for flow-thru treatment control is based on the surface flow rate through the swale that meets water quality treatment performance objectives.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Vegetated swales must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

Siting and Design		*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, and liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is included if site constraints indicate that infiltration or lateral flows should not be allowed.	Lining prevents storm water from impacting groundwater and/or sensitive environmental or geotechnical features. Incidental infiltration, when allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge.
☐	Contributing tributary area ≤ 2 acres.	Higher ratios increase the potential for clogging but may be acceptable for relatively clean tributary areas.

[*] Flow-thru treatment control BMP is not an option as a structural BMP. Carlsbad has not adopted an Alternative Compliance Program.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Longitudinal slope is ≥ 1.5% and ≤ 6%.	Flatter swales facilitate increased water quality treatment while minimum slopes prevent ponding.
☐	For site design goal, in-situ soil infiltration rate ≥ 0.5 in/hr (if < 0.5 in/hr, an underdrain is required and design goal is for pollutant control only).	Well-drained soils provide volume reduction and treatment. An underdrain should only be provided when soil infiltration rates are low or per geotechnical or groundwater concerns.
	Surface Flow	
☐	Maximum flow depth is ≤ 6 inches or ≤ $^2/_3$ the vegetation length, whichever is greater. Ideally, flow depth will be ≥ 2 inches below shortest plant species.	Flow depth must fall within the height range of the vegetation for effective water quality treatment via filtering.
	A minimum of 1 foot of freeboard is provided.	Freeboard minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.
☐	Cross sectional shape is trapezoidal or parabolic with side slopes ≥ 3H:1V.	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.
☐	Bottom width is ≥ 2 feet and ≤ 8 feet.	A minimum of 2 feet minimizes erosion. A maximum of 8 feet prevents channel braiding.
☐	Minimum hydraulic residence time ≥ 10 minutes.	Longer hydraulic residence time increases pollutant removal.
☐	Swale is designed to safely convey the 10-yr storm event unless a flow splitter is included to allow only the water quality event.	Planning for larger storm events lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.
☐	Flow velocity is ≤ 1 ft/s for water quality event. Flow velocity for 10-yr storm event is ≤ 3 ft/s.	Lower flow velocities provide increased pollutant removal via filtration and minimize erosion.
	Vegetated Surface Layer (amendment with media is Optional)	
☐	Soil is amended with 2 inches of media mixed into the top 6 inches of in-situ soils, as needed, to promote plant growth (optional). For enhanced pollutant control, 2 feet of media can be used in place of in-	Amended soils aid in plant establishment and growth. Media replacement for in-situ soils can improve water quality treatment and site design volume reduction.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
	situ soils. Media meets Appendix F.3 - Bioretention Soil Media Specification.	
☐	Vegetation is appropriately selected low-growing, erosion-resistant plant species that effectively bind the soil, thrive under site-specific climatic conditions and require little or no irrigation.	Plants suited to the climate and expected flow conditions are more likely to survive.
Check Dams		
☐	Check dams are provided at 50-foot increments for slopes ≥ 2.5%.	Check dams prevent erosion and increase the hydraulic residence time by lowering flow velocities and providing ponding opportunities.
Filter Course Layer (For Underdrain Design)		
☐	A filter course is used to prevent migration of fines through layers of the facility. Filter fabric is not used.	Migration of media can cause clogging of the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade. Filter fabric is more likely to clog.
☐	Filter course is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the facility and impede infiltration.
☐	Filter course calculations assessing suitability for particle migration prevention have been completed.	Gradation relationship between layers can evaluate factors (e.g., bridging, permeability, and uniformity) to determine if particle sizing is appropriate or if an intermediate layer is needed.
Aggregate Storage Layer (For Underdrain Design)		
☐	The depth of aggregate provided (12-inch typical) and storage layer configuration is adequate for providing conveyance for underdrain flows to the outlet structure.	Proper storage layer configuration and underdrain placement will minimize facility drawdown time.
☐	Aggregate used for the aggregate storage layer is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog aggregate storage layer void spaces or underdrain.
Inflow and Underdrain Structures		
☐	Inflow and underdrains are accessible for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Underdrain outlet elevation should be a minimum of 3 inches above the bottom elevation of the aggregate storage layer.	A minimal separation from subgrade or the liner lessens the risk of fines entering the underdrain and can improve hydraulic performance by allowing perforations to remain unblocked.
☐	Minimum underdrain diameter is 6 inches.	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.
☐	Underdrains are made of slotted, PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D 3034 or equivalent or corrugated, HDPE pipe conforming to AASHTO 252M or equivalent.	Slotted underdrains provide greater intake capacity, clog resistant drainage, and reduced entrance velocity into the pipe, thereby reducing the chances of solids migration.
☐	An underdrain cleanout with a minimum 6-inch diameter and lockable cap is placed every 250 to 300 feet as required based on underdrain length.	Properly spaced cleanouts will facilitate underdrain maintenance.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where vegetated swales can be used in the site design to replace traditional curb and gutter facilities and provide volume reduction through infiltration.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design vegetated swales for storm water pollutant control only, the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including bottom width and longitudinal and side slope requirements.
2. Calculate the design flow rate per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Use the sizing worksheet to determine flow-thru treatment sizing of the vegetated swale and if flow velocity, flow depth, and hydraulic residence time meet required criteria. Swale configuration should be adjusted as necessary to meet design requirements.

Maintenance Overview

Normal Expected Maintenance. Vegetated swales require routine maintenance to: remove accumulated materials such as sediment, trash, and debris; maintain vegetation health; and maintain integrity of side slopes, channel bottom, inlets, energy dissipaters, weirs or check dams, and outlets to ensure runoff will be conveyed as uniform flow throughout the swale (i.e., flow will spread uniformly across the width of the swale as it is conveyed from upstream to downstream).

Non-Standard Maintenance or BMP Failure. If any of the following scenarios are observed, the BMP is not performing as intended to protect downstream waterways from pollution and/or erosion. Corrective maintenance, increased inspection and maintenance, BMP replacement, or a different BMP type will be required.

- The BMP is not drained between storm events. Surface ponding longer than approximately 24 hours following a storm event may be detrimental to vegetation health, and surface ponding longer than approximately 96 hours following a storm event poses a risk of vector (mosquito) breeding. Poor drainage can result from deposited materials or overgrowth of vegetation within the swale blocking drainage conveyance or blocking an outlet structure, or localized erosion issues that cause channelization and prevent uniform flow throughout the swale. The specific cause of the drainage issue must be determined and corrected. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.
- Sediment, trash, or debris accumulation blocking drainage becomes a chronic issue observed at every inspection. This means the load from the tributary drainage area is too high, reducing BMP function or clogging the BMP. This would require pretreatment measures within the tributary area draining to the BMP to intercept the materials.
- Erosion due to concentrated storm water runoff flow that is not readily corrected by adding erosion control blankets, adding stone at flow entry points, or minor re-grading to restore proper drainage according to the original plan. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Summary of Standard Inspection and Maintenance

The property owner is responsible to ensure inspection, operation and maintenance of permanent BMPs on their property unless responsibility has been formally transferred to an agency, community facilities district, homeowners association, property owners association, or other special district.

Maintenance frequencies listed in this table are average/typical frequencies. Actual maintenance needs are site-specific, and maintenance may be required more frequently. Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on maintenance indicators presented in this table. The BMP owner is responsible for conducting regular inspections to see when maintenance is needed based on the maintenance indicators. During the first year of operation of a structural BMP, inspection is recommended at least once prior to August 31 and then monthly from September through May. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined based on the results of the first year inspections.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials, without damage to vegetation.	• Inspect monthly. If accumulated materials are observed blocking drainage, increase inspection frequency to monthly plus after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.
Obstructed inlet or outlet structure	Clear blockage.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.
Damage to structural components such as weirs, inlet or outlet structures	Repair or replace as applicable.	• Inspect annually. • Maintain when needed.
Poor vegetation establishment	Re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Dead or diseased vegetation	Remove dead or diseased vegetation, re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Overgrown vegetation	Mow or trim as appropriate.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Erosion due to concentrated irrigation flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas and adjust the irrigation system.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Erosion due to concentrated storm water runoff flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas, and make appropriate corrective measures such as adding erosion control blankets, adding stone at flow entry points, or minor re-grading to restore proper drainage according to the original plan. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the [City Engineer] shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.	• Inspect after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If erosion due to storm water flow has been observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the [City Engineer] shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.
Standing water in BMP following a storm event	Make appropriate corrective measures such as adjusting irrigation system, removing obstructions of debris or invasive vegetation, loosening or replacing top soil to allow for better infiltration, or minor re-grading for proper drainage. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the [City Engineer] shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Presence of mosquitos/larvae For images of egg rafts, larva, pupa, and adult mosquitos, see http://www.mosquito.org/biology	If mosquitos/larvae are observed: first, immediately remove any standing water by dispersing to nearby landscaping; second, make corrective measures as applicable to restore BMP drainage to prevent standing water. If mosquitos persist following corrective measures to remove standing water, the [City Engineer] shall be contacted to determine a solution. A different BMP type, or a Vector Management Plan prepared with concurrence from the County of San Diego Department of Environmental Health, may be required.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If mosquitos are observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

E.17 FT-2 Media Filters*

Photo Credit: Contech Stormwater Solutions

MS4 Permit Category	
Flow-thru Treatment Control	
Manual Category	
Flow-thru Treatment Control	
Applicable Performance Standard	
Pollutant Control Flow Control	
Primary Benefits	
Treatment Peak Flow Attenuation (Optional)	

Description

Media filters are manufactured devices that consist of a series of modular filters packed with engineered media that can be contained in a catch basin, manhole, or vault that provide treatment through filtration and sedimentation. The manhole or vault may be divided into multiple chambers where the first chamber acts as a presettling basin for removal of coarse sediment while the next chamber acts as the filter bay and houses the filter cartridges. A variety of media types are available from various manufacturers that can target pollutants of concern via primarily filtration, sorption, ion exchange, and precipitation.. Treatment effectiveness is contingent upon proper maintenance of filter units.

Typical media filter components include:

- Vault for flow storage and media housing
- Inlet and outlet
- Media filters

* Media Filters in regards to flow-thru treatment control BMP is not an option as a structural BMP. Carlsbad has not adopted an Alternative Compliance Program. However, Media Filters can be used for pretreatment and/or site design BMPs.

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Flow-thru treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control*. Water quality treatment is provided through filtration. This configuration is considered to provide flow-thru treatment, not biofiltration treatment. Storage provided within the vault restricted by an outlet is considered detention storage and is included in calculations for the flow-thru treatment volume.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. Media filters can also be designed for flow rate and duration control via additional detention storage. The vault storage can be designed to accommodate higher volumes than the storm water pollutant control volume and can utilize multi-stage outlets to mitigate both the duration and rate of flows within a prescribed range.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Media filters must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

Siting and Design		*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, and liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	Recommended for tributary areas with limited available surface area or where surface BMPs would restrict uses.	Maintenance needs may be more labor intensive for media filters than surface BMPs. Lack of surface visibility creates additional risk that maintenance needs may not be completed in a timely manner.
☐	Vault storage drawdown time ≤96 hours.	Provides vector control.
☐	Vault storage drawdown time ≤36 hours if the vault is used for equalization of flows for pollutant treatment.	Provides required capacity to treat back to back storms. Exception to the 36 hour drawdown criteria is allowed if additional vault storage is provided using the curves in Appendix B.3.2.

* Flow-thru treatment control BMPs is not an option as a structural BMP. Carlsbad has not adopted an Alternative Compliance Program.

Inflow and Outflow Structures		
☐	Inflow and outflow structures are accessible by required equipment (e.g., vactor truck) for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design a media filter for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken

1. Verify that the selected BMP complies with BMP selection requirements in Appendix B.
2. Verify that placement and tributary area requirements have been met.
3. Calculate the required DCV and/or flow rate per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
4. Media filter can be designed either for DCV or flow rate. To estimate the drawdown time, divide the vault storage by the treatment rate of media filters.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

Control of flow rates and/or durations will typically require significant vault storage volume, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the manual.

1. Verify that placement and tributary area requirements have been met.
2. Iteratively determine the vault storage volume required to provide detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows to MS4.
3. If a media filter cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, an upstream or downstream structure with appropriate storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After the media filter has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.
5. Verify that the vault drawdown time is 96 hours or less. To estimate the drawdown time:
    a. Divide the vault volume by the filter surface area.
    b. Divide the result (a) by the design filter rate.

Maintenance Overview

Normal Expected Maintenance. Media filters require routine maintenance to: remove accumulated materials such as sediment, trash, and debris; replace filter cartridges; and maintain integrity of any internal components such as weirs and piping. A summary table of standard inspection and maintenance indicators is provided within this Fact Sheet.

Non-Standard Maintenance or BMP Failure. The normal expected maintenance described above ensures the BMP functionality. Lapses in the normal expected maintenance can lead to clogging of the BMP and potentially blocking the storm drain system. If clogging is observed, the BMP is not performing as intended to protect downstream waterways from pollution and/or erosion. In addition, clogged BMPs can lead to flooding, standing water and mosquito breeding habitat. Maintenance is critical to ensure the flood protection capacity of the storm drain system is not compromised. If proper routine maintenance is not performed, corrective maintenance and increased inspection and maintenance will be required. For persistent clogging or presence of mosquitos, contact the [City Engineer] to determine a permanent solution. For example, adding pretreatment measures within the tributary area draining to the BMP to intercept sediment, trash, and debris. Pretreatment components, especially for sediment, will extend the life of the filter media. For mosquitos, a Vector Management Plan, prepared with concurrence from the County of San Diego Department of Environmental Health, may be required.

Other Special Considerations. Media filters are proprietary systems that include proprietary media that must be replaced as part of normal expected maintenance. They are typically installed underground and may require entry into the underground vault to perform the maintenance. The BMP owner is responsible to hire a maintenance operator qualified to service the units. The maintenance operator must obtain the appropriate filter media and/or any parts that need to be replaced. If maintenance conditions require maintenance personnel to enter the underground structure, the maintenance personnel must be trained and certified in confined space entry. To find a qualified maintenance operator, the BMP owner shall contact the manufacturer of the proprietary BMP.

The design of media filters includes consideration of the specific pollutants expected from the area tributary to the media filter and the specific pollutants of concern for the downstream waterways. Therefore, it is expected that the filter media selected during design of the project will not be substituted. If a need arises to substitute a different filter configuration or filter media, the [City Engineer] shall be contacted prior to any changes.

Summary of Standard Inspection and Maintenance

The property owner is responsible to ensure inspection, operation and maintenance of permanent BMPs on their property unless responsibility has been formally transferred to an agency, community facilities district, homeowners association, property owners association, or other special district.

Maintenance frequencies listed in this table are average/typical frequencies. Actual maintenance needs are site-specific, and maintenance may be required more frequently. Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on maintenance indicators presented in this table. The BMP owner is responsible for conducting regular inspections to see when maintenance is needed based on the maintenance indicators. During the first year of operation of a structural BMP, inspection is recommended at least once prior to August 31 and then monthly from September through May. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined based on the results of the first year inspections.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris. The threshold for removal of materials depends on the specific type of proprietary filter and configuration and shall be based on the manufacturer's recommendation. In any case, materials must be removed if accumulation blocks flow through the BMP.	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials.	• Inspect monthly. • Remove materials annually (minimum), or more frequently when BMP reaches manufacturer's threshold for removal of materials in less than one year, or if accumulation blocks outlet.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Spent or clogged filter media. The threshold for changing media depends on the specific type of proprietary media and shall be based on the manufacturer's recommendation. In any case, media must be replaced if flow cannot pass through the media or passes through at less than the design capacity.	Remove and properly dispose filter media, and replace with fresh media.	• Inspect condition of media annually or more frequently if recommended by manufacturer. • Inspect BMP drainage monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water has been observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed based on manufacturer's threshold/indicator for the specific media, or if standing water in the BMP indicates flow cannot pass through the media.
Any other recommendations pursuant to the proprietary filter manufacturer's maintenance guide.	Any other actions pursuant to the proprietary filter manufacturer's maintenance guide.	• As recommended by the proprietary filter manufacturer's maintenance guide
Obstructed inlet or outlet structure	Clear blockage.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Presence of mosquitos/larvae For images of egg rafts, larva, pupa, and adult mosquitos, see http://www.mosquito.org/biology	If mosquitos/larvae are observed: first, immediately remove and properly dispose any standing water; second, remove any accumulated materials that obstruct flow through the BMP to restore BMP drainage to prevent standing water. Ensure access covers are tight fitting, with gaps or holes no greater than 1/16 inch, and/or install barriers such as inserts or screens that prevent mosquito access to the subsurface storage. If the BMP includes a permanent sump, contact the [City Engineer] to determine a permanent solution. A different BMP type, or a Vector Management Plan prepared with concurrence from the County of San Diego Department of Environmental Health, may be required.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If mosquitos are observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.
Damage to structural components of the filtration system such as weirs, underdrains, inlet or outlet structures	Repair or replace as applicable.	• Inspect annually. • Maintain when needed.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

E.18 FT-3 Sand Filters*

MS4 Permit Category
Flow-thru Treatment Control
Manual Category
Flow-thru Treatment Control
Applicable Performance Standard
Pollutant Control Flow Control
Primary Benefits
Treatment Volume Reduction (Incidental) Peak Flow Attenuation (Optional)

Photo Credit: City of San Diego LID Manual

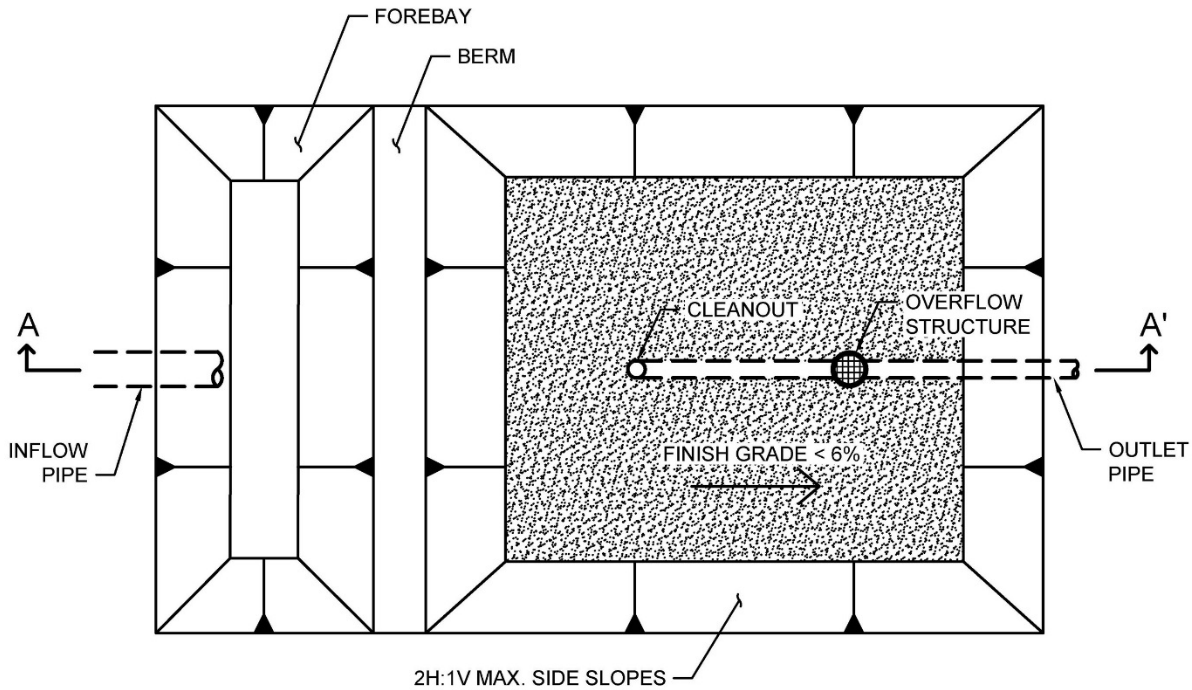
Description

Sand filters operate by filtering storm water through a constructed sand bed with an underdrain system. Runoff enters the filter and spreads over the surface. Sand filter beds can be enclosed within concrete structures or within earthen containment. As flows increase, water backs up on the surface of the filter where it is held until it can percolate through the sand. The treatment pathway is downward (vertical) through the media to an underdrain system that is connected to the downstream storm drain system. As storm water passes through the sand, pollutants are trapped on the surface of the filter, in the small pore spaces between sand grains or are adsorbed to the sand surface. The high filtration rates of sand filters, which allow a large runoff volume to pass through the media in a short amount of time, can provide efficient treatment for storm water runoff.

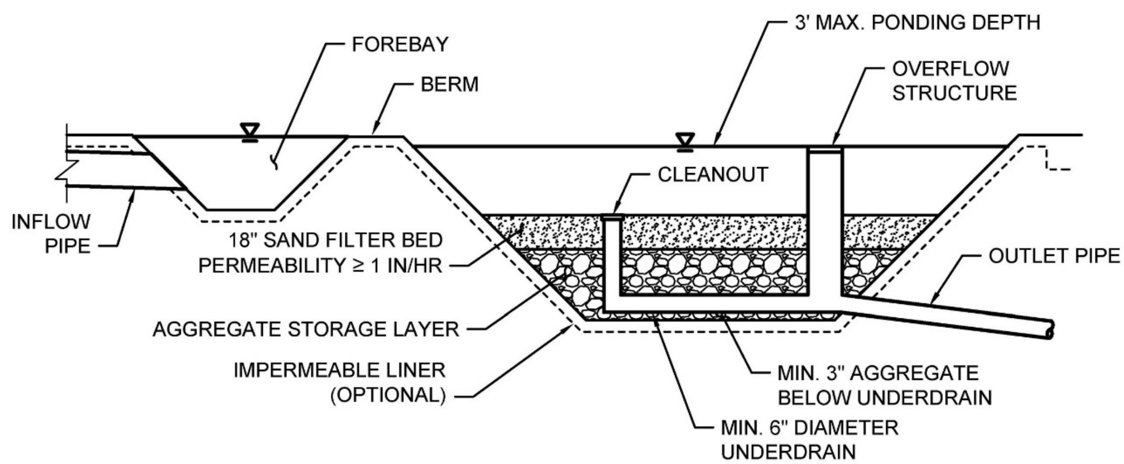
Typical sand filter components include:

- Forebay for pretreatment/energy dissipation
- Surface ponding for captured flows
- Sand filter bed
- Aggregate storage layer with underdrain(s)
- Overflow structure

* Sand Filters in regards to flow-thru treatment control BMP is not an option as a structural BMP. Carlsbad has not adopted an Alternative Compliance Program. However, Sand Filters can be used for pretreatment and/or site design BMPs.



PLAN
NOT TO SCALE



SECTION A-A'
NOT TO SCALE

Typical plan and Section view of a Sand Filter BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Flow-thru treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control*. The system is lined or un-lined to provide incidental infiltration, and an underdrain is provided at the bottom to carry away filtered runoff. This configuration is considered to provide flow-thru treatment via vertical flow through the sand filter bed. Storage provided above the underdrain within surface ponding, the sand filter bed, and aggregate storage is considered included in the flow-thru treatment volume. Saturated storage within the aggregate storage layer can be added to this design by including an upturned elbow installed at the downstream end of the underdrain or via an internal weir structure designed to maintain a specific water level elevation.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. The system can be designed to provide flow rate and duration control by primarily providing increased surface ponding and/or having a deeper aggregate storage layer above the underdrain. This will allow for significant detention storage, which can be controlled via inclusion of an outlet structure at the downstream end of the underdrain.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Sand filters must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, and liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is included if site constraints indicate that infiltration or lateral flows should not be allowed.	Lining prevents storm water from impacting groundwater and/or sensitive environmental or geotechnical features. Incidental infiltration, when allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge.
☐	Contributing tributary area (≤ 5 acres).	Bigger BMPs require additional design features for proper performance. Contributing tributary area greater than 5 acres may be allowed at the discretion of the

* Flow-thru treatment control BMP is not an option as a structural BMP. Carlsbad has not adopted an Alternative Compliance Program.

Siting and Design		*Intent/Rationale*
		City Engineer if the following conditions are met: 1) incorporate design features (e.g. flow spreaders) to minimizing short circuiting of flows in the BMP and 2) incorporate additional design features requested by the City Engineer for proper performance of the regional BMP.
☐	Finish grade of facility is < 6%.	Flatter surfaces reduce erosion and channelization within the facility.
☐	Earthen side slopes are ≥ 3H:1V.	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.
☐	Surface ponding is limited to a 36-hour drawdown time.	Provides required capacity to treat back to back storms. Exception to the 36 hour drawdown criteria is allowed if additional surface storage is provided using the curves in Appendix B.
☐	Surface ponding is limited to a 96-hour drawdown time.	Prolonged surface ponding can create a vector hazard.
☐	Maximum ponding depth does not exceed 3 feet.	Surface ponding capacity lowers subsurface storage requirements and results in lower cost facilities. Deep surface ponding raises safety concerns.
☐	Sand filter bed consists of clean washed concrete or masonry sand (passing ¼ inch sieve) or sand similar to the ASTM C33 gradation.	Washing sand will help eliminate fines that could clog the void spaces of the aggregate storage layer.
☐	Sand filter bed permeability is at least 1 in/hr.	A high filtration rate through the media allows flows to quickly enter the aggregate storage layer, thereby minimizing bypass.
☐	Sand filter bed depth is at least 18 inches deep.	Different pollutants are removed in various zones of the media using several mechanisms. Some pollutants bound to sediment, such as metals, are typically removed within 18 inches of the media.
☐	Aggregate storage should be washed, bank-run gravel.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade.

Siting and Design		*Intent/Rationale*
☐	The depth of aggregate provided (12-inch typical) and storage layer configuration is adequate for providing conveyance for underdrain flows to the outlet structure.	Proper storage layer configuration and underdrain placement will minimize facility drawdown time.
☐	Inflow, underdrains and outflow structures are accessible for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
☐	Inflow must be non-erosive sheet flow (≤ 3 ft/s) unless an energy-dissipation device, flow diversion/splitter or forebay is installed.	Concentrated flow and/or excessive volumes can cause erosion in a sand filter and can be detrimental to the treatment capacity of the system.
☐	Underdrain outlet elevation should be a minimum of 3 inches above the bottom elevation of the aggregate storage layer.	A minimal separation from subgrade or the liner lessens the risk of fines entering the underdrain and can improve hydraulic performance by allowing perforations to remain unblocked.
☐	Minimum underdrain diameter is 6 inches.	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.
☐	Underdrains should be made of slotted, PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D 3034 or equivalent or corrugated, HDPE pipe conforming to AASHTO 252M or equivalent.	Slotted underdrains provide greater intake capacity, clog resistant drainage, and reduced entrance velocity into the pipe, thereby reducing the chances of solids migration.
☐	Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point.	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design a sand filter for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, and maximum finish grade slope.
2. Calculate the required DCV and/or flow rate per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Sand filter can be designed either for DCV or flow rate. To estimate the drawdown time,

divide the average ponding depth by the permeability of the filter sand.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

Control of flow rates and/or durations will typically require significant surface ponding and/or aggregate storage volumes, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the Manual.

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, and maximum finish grade slope.
2. Iteratively determine the facility footprint area, surface ponding and/or aggregate storage layer depth required to provide detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows.
3. If a sand filter cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by the MS4 permit, an upstream or downstream structure with appropriate storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After the sand filter has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

Maintenance Overview

Normal Expected Maintenance. Sand filters require routine maintenance to: remove accumulated materials such as sediment, trash, and debris from the forebay; and clear the underdrain(s). To ensure runoff is passed through the sand bed, sand at the top of the sand bed (approximately 2 inches, or more if necessary) must be removed and replaced to restore flow when the drain time exceeds 24-96 hours. A summary table of standard inspection and maintenance indicators is provided within this Fact Sheet.

Non-Standard Maintenance or BMP Failure. The normal expected maintenance described above ensures the BMP functionality. Lapses in the normal expected maintenance can lead to clogging of the BMP and runoff bypassing the filter. If clogging is observed, the BMP is not performing as intended to protect downstream waterways from pollution and/or erosion. In addition, clogged BMPs can lead to flooding, standing water and mosquito breeding habitat. Corrective maintenance and increased inspection and maintenance will be required. For persistent clogging or presence of mosquitos, contact the [City Engineer] to determine a permanent solution. For example, adding pretreatment measures within the tributary area draining to the BMP to intercept sediment, trash, and debris. Pretreatment components, especially for sediment, will extend the life of the sand bed. For mosquitos, a Vector Management Plan, prepared with concurrence from the County of San Diego Department of Environmental Health, may be required.

Summary of Standard Inspection and Maintenance

The property owner is responsible to ensure inspection, operation and maintenance of permanent BMPs on their property unless responsibility has been formally transferred to an agency, community facilities district, homeowners association, property owners association, or other special district.

Maintenance frequencies listed in this table are average/typical frequencies. Actual maintenance needs are site-specific, and maintenance may be required more frequently. Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on maintenance indicators presented in this table. The BMP owner is responsible for conducting regular inspections to see when maintenance is needed based on the maintenance indicators. During the first year of operation of a structural BMP, inspection is recommended at least once prior to August 31 and then monthly from September through May. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined based on the results of the first year inspections.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris in forebay and/or filter bed	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials.	• Inspect monthly. If the forebay is 25% full* or more in one month, increase inspection frequency to monthly plus after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found within the filter bed at each inspection. • When the BMP includes a forebay, materials must be removed from the forebay when the forebay is 25% full*, or if accumulation within the forebay blocks flow to the filter bed.
Standing water in BMP for longer than 24-96 hours following a storm event	Make appropriate corrective measures to restore drainage such as removing obstructions of debris from the forebay, clearing underdrains or repairing/replacing clogged sand bed.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Clogged sand bed This is indicated when the drain time of the surface of the sand bed exceeds 24-96 hours.	Remove and properly dispose sand from the top of the sand bed (approximately 2 inches of sand, or as much as needed to restore flow). Restore sand depth to the design depth.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.
Obstructed inlet or outlet structure	Clear blockage.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.
Presence of mosquitos/larvae For images of egg rafts, larva, pupa, and adult mosquitos, see http://www.mosquito.org/biology	If mosquitos/larvae are observed: first, immediately remove and properly dispose any standing water by dispersing to nearby landscaping; second, make corrective measures as applicable to restore BMP drainage to prevent standing water. If mosquitos persist following corrective measures to remove standing water, the City Engineer shall be contacted to determine a solution. A different BMP type, or a Vector Management Plan prepared with concurrence from the County of San Diego Department of Environmental Health, may be required.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If mosquitos are observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed
Damage to structural components of the BMP such as weirs, underdrains, inlet or outlet structures	Repair or replace as applicable.	• Inspect annually. • Maintain when needed.

E.19 FT-4 Dry Extended Detention Basin*

MS4 Permit Category
Flow-thru Treatment Control
Manual Category
Flow-thru Treatment Control
Applicable Performance Standard
Pollutant Control Flow Control
Primary Benefits
Treatment Volume Reduction (Incidental) Peak Flow Attenuation

Location: Rolling Hills Ranch, Chula Vista, California; Photo Credit: Eric Mosolgo

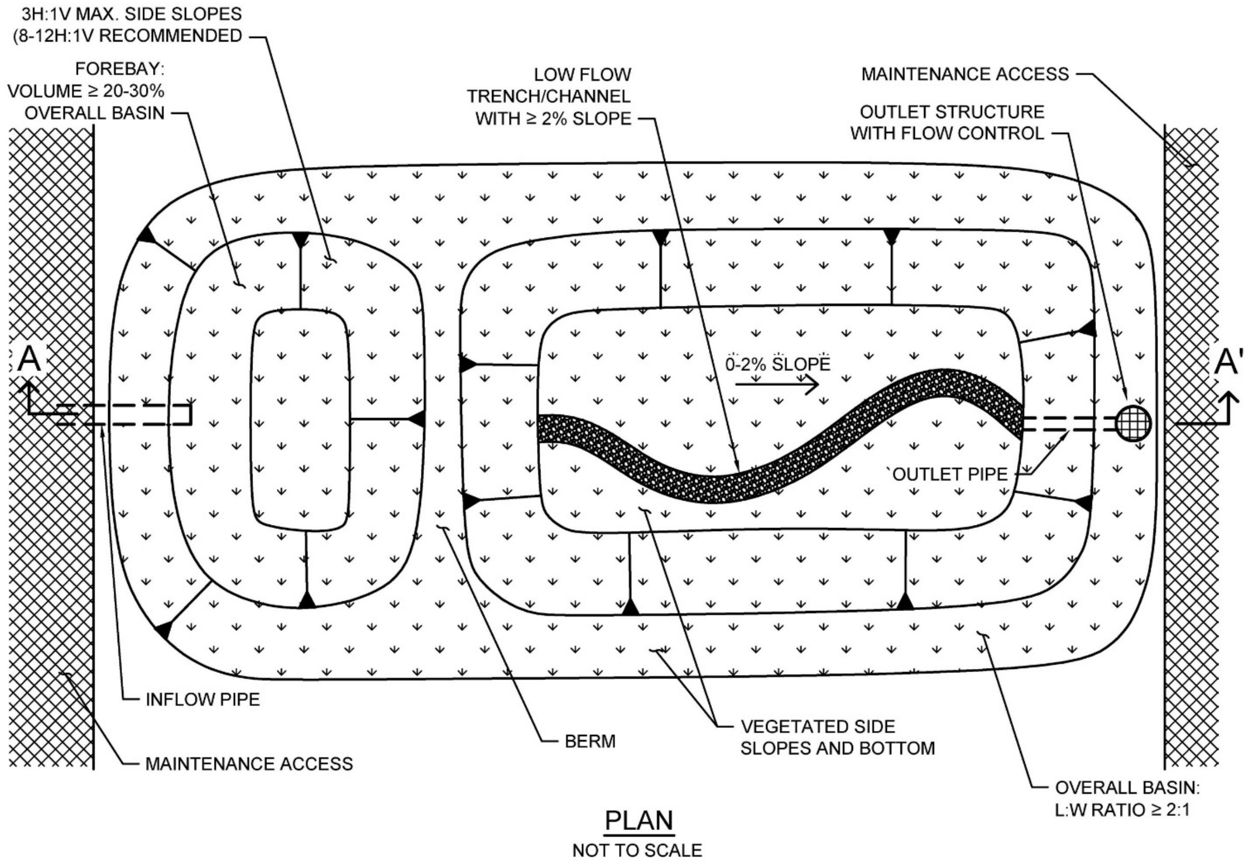
Description

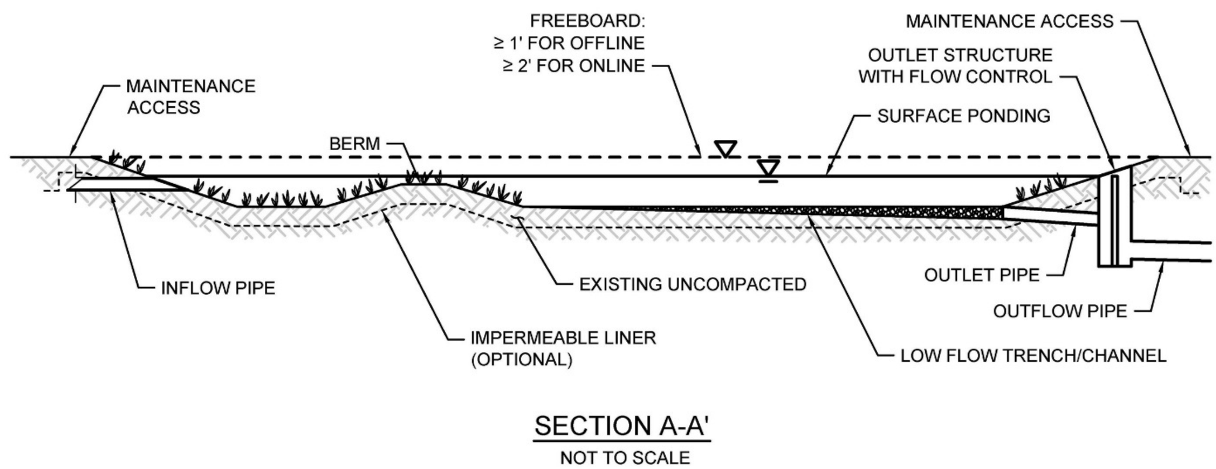
Dry extended detention basins are basins that have been designed to detain storm water for an extended period to allow sedimentation and typically drain completely between storm events. A portion of the dissolved pollutant load may also be removed by filtration, uptake by vegetation, and/or through infiltration. The slopes, bottom, and forebay of dry extended detention basins are typically vegetated. Considerable storm water volume reduction can occur in dry extended detention basins when they are located in permeable soils and are not lined with an impermeable barrier. Dry extended detention basins are generally appropriate for developments of ten acres or larger, and have the potential for multiple uses including parks, playing fields, tennis courts, open space, and overflow parking lots. They can also be used to provide flow control by modifying the outlet control structure and providing additional detention storage.

Typical dry extended detention basins components include:

- Forebay for pretreatment
- Surface ponding for captured flows
- Vegetation selected based on basin use, climate, and ponding depth
- Low flow channel, outlet, and overflow device
- Impermeable liner or uncompacted native soils at the bottom of the facility

* Dry Extended Detention Basin in regards to a flow-thru treatment control BMP is not an option as a structural BMP. Carlsbad has not adopted an Alternative Compliance Program. However, Dry Extended Detention Basins can be used for pretreatment and/or site design BMPs.





Typical plan and Section view of a Dry Extended Detention Basin BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Flow-thru treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control*. The system is lined or un-lined to provide incidental infiltration and designed to detain storm water to allow particulates and associated pollutants to settle out. This configuration is considered to provide flow-thru treatment, not biofiltration treatment. Storage provided as surface ponding above a restricted outlet invert is considered detention storage and is included in calculations for the flow-thru treatment volume.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. Dry extended detention basins can also be designed for flow control. The surface ponding can be designed to accommodate higher volumes than the storm water pollutant control volume and can utilize multi-stage outlets to mitigate both the duration and rate of flows within a prescribed range.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Dry extended detention basins must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, and liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
☐	An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is included if site constraints indicate that infiltration or lateral flows should not be allowed.	Lining prevents storm water from impacting groundwater and/or sensitive environmental or geotechnical features. Incidental infiltration, when allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge.
☐	Contributing tributary area is large (typically ≥ 10 acres).	Dry extended detention basins require significant space and are more cost-effective for treating larger drainage areas.
☐	Longitudinal basin bottom slope is 0 - 2%.	Flatter slopes promote ponding and settling of particles.

* Flow-thru treatment control BMP is not an option as a structural BMP. Carlsbad has not adopted an Alternative Compliance Program.

	Siting and Design	*Intent/Rationale*
☐	Basin length to width ratio is ≥ 2:1 (L:W).	A larger length to width ratio provides a longer flow path to promote settling.
☐	Forebay is included that encompasses 20 - 30% of the basin volume.	A forebay to trap sediment can decrease frequency of required maintenance.
☐	Side slopes are ≥ 3H:1V.	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.
☐	Surface ponding drawdown time is between 24 and 96 hours.	Minimum drawdown time of 24 hours allows for adequate settling time and maximizes pollutant removal. Maximum drawdown time of 96 hours provides vector control.
☐	Minimum freeboard provided is ≥1 foot for offline facilities and ≥2 feet for online facilities.	Freeboard provides room for head over overflow structures and minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.
☐	Inflow and outflow structures are accessible by required equipment (e.g., vactor truck) for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
☐	A low flow channel or trench with a ≥ 2% slope is provided. A gravel infiltration trench is provided where infiltration is allowable.	Aids in draining or infiltrating dry weather flows.
☐	Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point. Size overflow structure to pass 100-year peak flow.	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.
☐	The maximum rate at which runoff is discharged is set below the erosive threshold for the site.	Extended low flows can have erosive effects.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design dry extended detention basins for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, forebay volume, and maximum slopes for basin sides and bottom.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Use the sizing worksheet to determine flow-thru treatment sizing of the surface ponding of

the dry extended detention basin, which includes calculations for a maximum 96-hour drawdown time.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

Control of flow rates and/or durations will typically require significant surface ponding volume, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the manual.

1. Verify that siting and criteria have been met, including placement requirements, tributary area, and maximum slopes for basin sides and bottom.
2. Iteratively determine the surface ponding required to provide detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows.
3. If a dry extended detention basin cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, an upstream or downstream structure with appropriate storage volume such as an additional basin or underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After the dry extended detention basin has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

Maintenance Overview

Normal Expected Maintenance. Dry extended detention basins require routine maintenance to: remove accumulated materials such as sediment, trash or debris; maintain vegetation health; and maintain integrity of side slopes, inlets, energy dissipators, and outlets. A summary table of standard inspection and maintenance indicators is provided within this Fact Sheet.

Non-Standard Maintenance or BMP Failure. If any of the following scenarios are observed, the BMP is not performing as intended to protect downstream waterways from pollution and/or erosion. Corrective maintenance, increased inspection and maintenance, BMP replacement, or a different BMP type will be required.

- The BMP is not drained between storm events. Surface ponding longer than approximately 24 hours following a storm event may be detrimental to vegetation health, and surface or underground ponding longer than approximately 96 hours following a storm event poses a risk of vector (mosquito) breeding. Poor drainage can result from clogging of underlying native soils and/or the outlet structure. The specific cause of the drainage issue must be determined and corrected. If it is determined that the drainage of the basin relies on infiltration and the underlying native soils have been compacted or do not have the infiltration capacity expected, the [City Engineer] shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.

- Sediment, trash, or debris accumulation greater than 25% of the surface ponding volume within one month. This means the load from the tributary drainage area is too high, reducing BMP function or clogging the BMP. This would require pretreatment measures within the tributary area draining to the BMP to intercept the materials.
- Erosion due to concentrated storm water runoff flow that is not readily corrected by adding erosion control blankets, adding stone at flow entry points, or minor re-grading to restore proper drainage according to the original plan. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.

Other Special Considerations. Some above-ground dry extended detention basins are vegetated structural BMPs. Vegetated structural BMPs that are constructed in the vicinity of, or connected to, an existing jurisdictional water or wetland could inadvertently result in creation of expanded waters or wetlands. As such, vegetated structural BMPs have the potential to come under the jurisdiction of the United States Army Corps of Engineers, SDRWQCB, California Department of Fish and Wildlife, or the United States Fish and Wildlife Service. This could result in the need for specific resource agency permits and costly mitigation to perform maintenance of the structural BMP. Along with proper placement of a structural BMP, routine maintenance is key to preventing this scenario.

Underground dry extended detention basins are typically designed to be cleaned from above-ground using a vactor. If maintenance conditions require maintenance personnel to enter the underground structure, the maintenance personnel must be trained and certified in confined space entry.

Summary of Standard Inspection and Maintenance

The property owner is responsible to ensure inspection, operation and maintenance of permanent BMPs on their property unless responsibility has been formally transferred to an agency, community facilities district, homeowners association, property owners association, or other special district.

Maintenance frequencies listed in this table are average/typical frequencies. Actual maintenance needs are site-specific, and maintenance may be required more frequently. Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on maintenance indicators presented in this table. The BMP owner is responsible for conducting regular inspections to see when maintenance is needed based on the maintenance indicators. During the first year of operation of a structural BMP, inspection is recommended at least once prior to August 31 and then monthly from September through May. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined based on the results of the first year inspections.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris in forebay and/or basin	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials, (without damage to vegetation when applicable).	• Inspect monthly. If the forebay is 25% full* or more in one month, increase inspection frequency to monthly plus after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found within the basin area at each inspection. • When the BMP includes a forebay, materials must be removed from the forebay when the forebay is 25% full*, or if accumulation within the forebay blocks flow to the basin.
Obstructed inlet or outlet structure	Clear blockage.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. • Remove any accumulated materials found at each inspection.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Poor vegetation establishment (when the BMP includes vegetated surface by design)	Re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Dead or diseased vegetation (when the BMP includes vegetated surface by design)	Remove dead or diseased vegetation, re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Overgrown vegetation (when the BMP includes vegetated surface by design)	Mow or trim as appropriate.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Erosion due to concentrated irrigation flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas and adjust the irrigation system.	• Inspect monthly. • Maintain when needed.
Erosion due to concentrated storm water runoff flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas, and make appropriate corrective measures such as adding erosion control blankets, adding stone at flow entry points, or minor re-grading to restore proper drainage according to the original plan. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.	• Inspect after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If erosion due to storm water flow has been observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the [City Engineer] shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Standing water in above-ground BMP for longer than 24-96 hours following a storm event	Make appropriate corrective measures such as adjusting irrigation system, removing obstructions of debris or invasive vegetation, or removing/replacing clogged or compacted surface treatments and/or scarifying or tilling native soils. Always remove deposited sediments before scarification, and use a hand-guided rotary tiller. If it is determined that the drainage of the basin relies on infiltration and the underlying native soils have been compacted or do not have the infiltration capacity expected, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.
Standing water in underground BMP for longer than 24-96 hours following a storm event	Make appropriate corrective measures such as removing obstructions at the outlet, clearing underdrains, or flushing fine sediment from aggregate layer when applicable. If it is determined that the drainage of the basin relies on infiltration and the underlying native soils have been compacted or do not have the infiltration capacity expected, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If standing water is observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed.

Threshold/Indicator	Maintenance Action	Typical Maintenance Frequency
Presence of mosquitos/larvae For images of egg rafts, larva, pupa, and adult mosquitos, see http://www.mosquito.org/biology	If mosquitos/larvae are observed: first, immediately remove and properly dispose any standing water; second, make corrective measures as applicable to restore BMP drainage to prevent standing water. For underground detention basins, ensure access covers are tight fitting, with gaps or holes no greater than 1/16 inch, and/or install barriers such as inserts or screens that prevent mosquito access to the subsurface storage. If mosquitos persist following corrective measures to remove standing water, or if the BMP design does not meet the 96-hour drawdown criteria due to release rates controlled by an orifice installed on the underdrain, the City Engineer shall be contacted to determine a solution. A different BMP type, or a Vector Management Plan prepared with concurrence from the County of San Diego Department of Environmental Health, may be required.	• Inspect monthly and after every 0.5-inch or larger storm event. If mosquitos are observed, increase inspection frequency to after every 0.1-inch or larger storm event. • Maintain when needed
Damage to structural components such as weirs, inlet or outlet structures	Repair or replace as applicable.	• Inspect annually. • Maintain when needed.

"25% full" is defined as ¼ of the depth from the design bottom elevation to the crest of the outflow structure (e.g., if the height to the outflow opening is 12 inches from the bottom elevation, then the materials must be removed when there is 3 inches of accumulation – this should be marked on the outflow structure).

E.20 FT-5 Proprietary Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMPs*

The purpose of this fact sheet is to help explain the potential role of proprietary BMPs in meeting flow thru treatment control BMP requirements. The fact sheet does not describe design criteria like the other fact sheets in this appendix because this information varies by BMP product model.

Criteria for Use of a Proprietary BMP as a Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMP

A proprietary BMP may be acceptable as a "flow-thru treatment control BMP" under the following conditions:

(1) The BMP is selected and sized consistent with the method and criteria described in Appendix B.4.4;

(2) The BMP is designed and maintained in a manner consistent with its performance certifications (See explanation in Appendix B); and

(3) The BMP is acceptable at the discretion of the City Engineer. In determining the acceptability of a BMP, the City Engineer should consider, as applicable, (a) the data submitted; (b) representativeness of the data submitted; (c) consistency of the BMP performance claims with pollutant control objectives; certainty of the BMP performance claims; (d) for projects within the public right of way and/or public projects: maintenance requirements, cost of maintenance activities, relevant previous city experience with operation and maintenance of the BMP type, ability to continue to operate the system in event that the vending company is no longer operating as a business; and (e) other relevant factors. If a proposed BMP is not accepted by the City Engineer, a written explanation/reason will be provided to the applicant.

Guidance for Sizing Proprietary BMPs

Proprietary flow-thru BMPs must meet the same sizing guidance as other flow-thru treatment control BMPs. Guidance for sizing flow-thru BMPs to comply with requirements of this manual is provided in Appendix B.

Maintenance Overview

Refer to manufacturer for maintenance information.

* Proprietary Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMP is not an option as a structural BMP. Carlsbad has not adopted an Alternative Compliance Program. However, Proprietary Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMPs can be used for pretreatment and/or site design BMPs.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

E.21 PL Plant List

Plant Name		Irrigation Requirements		Preferred Location in Basin		Applicable Bioretention Sections (Un-Lined Facilities)				Applicability to Biofiltration? (Lined Facility)	
Latin Name	Common Name	Temporary Irrigation during Plant Establishment Period	Permanent Irrigation (Drip / Spray)[1]	Basin Bottom	Basin Side Slopes	Section A Treatment-Only Bioretention in Hydrologic Soil Group A or B Soils	Section B Treatment-Only Bioretention in Hydrologic Soil Group C or D soils	Section C Treatment Plus Flow Control Bioretention in Hydrologic Soil Group A or B Soils	Section D Treatment Plus Flow Control Bioretention in Hydrologic Soil Group C or D Soils	**NO** Applicable to Un-lined Facilities Only	**YES** Can Use in Lined or Un-Lined Facility
TREES[2]											
Agonis flexuosa	Peppermint Tree		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Alnus rhombifolia	White Alder	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Arbutus 'Marina'	Strawberry Tree		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Cassia leptophylla	Gold Medallion Tree		X		X	X	X				X
Cercus canadensis 'Forest Pansy'	Eastern Redbud		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Cercis occidentalis	Western Redbud		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Feijoa sellowiana	Pineapple Guava		X	X		X	X	X	X		X
Hymenosporum flavum	Sweet Shade		X	X		X	X	X	X		X
Koelreuteria paniculata	Golden Raintree		X	X		X	X	X	X	X	
Lagerstroemia indica	Crape Myrtle		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Magnolia grandiflora 'Little Gem'	Little Gem Magnolia		X	X	X	X	X				X
Metrosideros excelsa	New Zealand Christmas Tree		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Olea europaea	Olive	X	X		X	X	X				X
Olneya tesota	Desert Ironwood		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Parkinsonia (Cercidium) X 'Desert Museum'	Desert Museum Palo Verde	X		X		X	X	X	X	X	
Platanus racemosa	California Sycamore	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Prosopis spp.	Mesquite	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Quercus agrifolia	Coast Live Oak	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Rhus lancea	African Sumac		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Salix lasiolepis	Arroyo Willow	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	
Salix lucida	Lance-Leaf Willow	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	
Sambucus mexicana	Blue Elderberry	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	
Senegalia (Acacia) greggii	Catclaw	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Umbellularia calfironica	California Bay	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
SHRUBS / GROUNDCOVER											
Acacia redolens	Prostrate Acacia	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Achillea millefolium[3]	Yarrow	X			X	X	X				X
Agrostis palens[3]	Thingrass	X			X	X	X	X	X		X
Aloe spp.[3]	Aloe	X	X		X	X	X				X
Anemopsis californica[3]	Yerba Manza	X			X	X	X	X	X		X
Anigozanthus flavidus[3]	Kangaroo Paws		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Aristida purpurea[3]	Purple three-awn	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X

Baccharis douglasii	Marsh Baccahris	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
Baccharis pilularis 'Pigeon Point'	Dwarf Coyote Bush	X	X	X	X	X	X				X
Carex pansa	Dune Sedge		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Carex praegracillis	California Field Sedge	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
Carex spissa	San Diego Sedge	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
Carex subfusca	Rusty Sedge	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Carissa macrocarpa	Natal Plum		X		X	X	X				X
Chondropetalum tectorum	Small Cape Rush		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Cistus spp	Rockrose	X	X		X	X	X				X
Delosperma 'Alba'	Disney White Ice Plant		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Dietes iridioides	White Fortnight Lily		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Distichlis spicata	Salt Grass	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
Dodonaea viscosa 'Purpurea'	Purpple Hopbush		X	X	X	X	X				X
Drosanthemum floribundum	Rosea Ice Plant		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Echeveria spp	Echeveria	X	X		X	X	X				X
Eleocharis macrostachya	Pale Spike Rush	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
Epilobium canum[3]	California Fuschia		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
ErIogonum fasciculatum[3]	California Buchwheat	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Eriogonum grande rubescens[3]	San Miguel Island Buckwheat	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Festuca rubra[3]	Red Fescue	X	X	X	X	X	X				X
Festuca californica[3]	California Fescue	X	X		X	X	X				X
Grevillea spp.	Grevillea		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Hakea laurina	Pin-cushion Hakea		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Heteromeles arbutifolia	Toyon	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Iris douglasiana	Douglas Iris		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Iva hayesiana	Hayes Iva	X			X	X	X				X
Juncus Mexicana[3]	Mexican Rush	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Jucus patens	California Gray Rush	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Lantana spp.	Lantana	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Leymus condensatus 'Canyon Prince'	Canyon Prince Wild Rye	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Mahonia nevinii	Nevin's Barberry	X			X	X	X	X	X		X
Muhlenburgia rigens	Deergrass	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Mimulus cardinalis	Scarlet Monkeyflower	X		X	X	X	X				X
Myoporum parvifolium	Creeping Myoporum	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Myrica californica	Pacific Wax Myrtle	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Phormium spp.	New Zealand Flax		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Rhaphiolepis indica	India Hawthorn	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Ribes speciosum	Fushia Flowering Goose.	X			X	X	X				X
Romneya coulteri	Matilija Poppy		X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Rosa californica	California Wild Rose	X	X		X	X	X				X
Rosmarinus officinalis	Rosemary	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X

Scirpus cenuus(3)	Low Bullrush	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
Sisyrinchium bellum(3)	Blue-eyed Grass	X			X	X	X				X
Solidago californica	California Goldenrod	X	X	X	X	X	X				X
Sphaeralcea ambigua	Desert Mallow	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Stipa pulchra	Purple Needle Grass	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X

1. All plants will benefit from some supplemental irrigation during hot dry summer months, particularly those on basin side slopes and further inland.
2. All trees should be planted a min. of 10’ away from any drain pipes or structures.
3. Suitable species for minimum 18-inch soil media depth

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Appendix

F

CARLSBAD BMP DESIGN MANUAL

Biofiltration Standard and Checklist

Appendix F Biofiltration Standard and Checklist

Introduction

The MS4 Permit and this manual define a specific category of storm water pollutant treatment BMPs called "biofiltration BMPs." The MS4 Permit (Section E.3.c.1) states:

Biofiltration BMPs must be designed to have an appropriate hydraulic loading rate to maximize storm water retention and pollutant removal, as well as to prevent erosion, scour, and channeling within the BMP, and must be sized to:

a) Treat 1.5 times the DCV not reliably retained onsite, OR

b) Treat the DCV not reliably retained onsite with a flow-thru design that has a total volume, including pore spaces and pre-filter detention volume, sized to hold at least 0.75 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite.

A project applicant must be able to affirmatively demonstrate that a given BMP is designed and sized in a manner consistent with this definition to be considered as a "biofiltration BMP" as part of a compliant storm water management plan. Retention is defined in the MS4 Permit as evapotranspiration, infiltration, and harvest and use of storm water vs. discharge to a surface water system.

Contents and Intended Uses

This appendix contains a checklist of the key underlying criteria that must be met for a BMP to be considered a biofiltration BMP. The purpose of this checklist is to facilitate consistent review and approval of biofiltration BMPs that meet the "biofiltration standard" defined by the MS4 Permit.

This checklist includes specific design criteria that are essential to defining a system as a biofiltration BMP; however it does not present a complete design basis. This checklist was used to develop BMP Fact Sheets for PR-1 biofiltration with partial retention and BF-1 biofiltration, which do present a complete design basis. Therefore, biofiltration BMPs that substantially meet all aspects of the Fact sheets PR-1 or BF-1 should be able to complete this checklist without additional documentation beyond what would already be required for a project submittal.

Other biofiltration BMP designs[1] (including both non-proprietary and proprietary designs) may also meet the underlying MS4 Permit requirements to be considered biofiltration BMPs. These BMPs may be classified as biofiltration BMPs if they (1) meet the minimum design criteria listed in this appendix, including the pollutant treatment performance standard in Appendix F.1, (2) are designed and maintained in a manner consistent with their performance certifications (See explanation in Appendix F.2), if applicable, and (3) are acceptable at the discretion of the City Engineer. The applicant may be required to provide additional studies and/or required to meet additional design criteria beyond the scope of this document in order to demonstrate that these criteria are met.

Organization

The checklist in this appendix is organized into the seven (7) main objectives associated with biofiltration BMP design. It describes the associated minimum criteria that must be met in order to qualify a biofiltration BMP as meeting the biofiltration standard. The seven main objectives are listed below. Specific design criteria and associated manual references associated with each of these objectives is provided in the checklist in the following section.

1. Biofiltration BMPs shall be allowed only as described in the BMP selection process in this manual (i.e., retention feasibility hierarchy).

2. Biofiltration BMPs must be sized using acceptable sizing methods described in this manual.

3. Biofiltration BMPs must be sited and designed to achieve maximum feasible infiltration and evapotranspiration.

4. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed with a hydraulic loading rate to maximize pollutant retention, preserve pollutant control/sequestration processes, and minimize potential for pollutant washout.

5. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed to promote appropriate biological activity to support and maintain treatment processes.

6. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed to prevent erosion, scour, and channeling within the BMP.

[1] Defined as biofiltration designs that do not conform to the specific design criteria described in Fact Sheets PR-1 or BF-1. This category includes proprietary BMPs that are sold by a vendor as well as non-proprietary BMPs that are designed and constructed of primarily of more elementary construction materials.

7. Biofiltration BMP must include operations and maintenance design features and planning considerations to provide for continued effectiveness of pollutant and flow control functions.

Biofiltration Criteria Checklist

The applicant shall provide documentation of compliance with each criterion in this checklist as part of the project submittal. The right column of this checklist identifies the submittal information that is recommended to document compliance with each criterion. Biofiltration BMPs that substantially meet all aspects of Fact Sheets PR-1, BF-1, or BF-3 should still use this checklist; however additional documentation (beyond what is already required for project submittal) should not be required.

	1. Biofiltration BMPs shall be allowed to be used only as described in the BMP selection process based on a documented feasibility analysis. Intent: This manual defines a specific prioritization of pollutant treatment BMPs, where BMPs that retain water (retained includes evapotranspired, infiltrated, and/or harvested and used) must be used before considering BMPs that have a biofiltered discharge to the MS4 or surface waters. Use of a biofiltration BMP in a manner in conflict with this prioritization (i.e., without a feasibility analysis justifying its use) is not permitted, regardless of the adequacy of the sizing and design of the system.	
☐	The project applicant has demonstrated that it is not technically feasible to retain the full DCV onsite.	Document feasibility analysis and findings in project SWQMP per Appendix D.
	2. Biofiltration BMPs must be sized using acceptable sizing methods. Intent: The MS4 Permit and this manual defines specific sizing methods that must be used to size biofiltration BMPs. Sizing of biofiltration BMPs is a fundamental factor in the amount of storm water that can be treated and also influences volume and pollutant retention processes.	
☐	The project applicant has demonstrated that biofiltration BMPs are sized to meet one of the biofiltration sizing options available (Appendix B).	Submit sizing worksheets (Appendix B) or other equivalent documentation with the project SWQMP.
	3. Biofiltration BMPs must be sited and designed to achieve maximum feasible infiltration and evapotranspiration. Intent: Various decisions about BMP placement and design influence how much water is retained via infiltration and evapotranspiration. The MS4 Permit requires that biofiltration BMPs achieve maximum feasible retention (evapotranspiration and infiltration) of storm water volume.	

☐	The biofiltration BMP is sited to allow for maximum infiltration of runoff volume based on the feasibility factors considered in site planning efforts. It is also designed to maximize evapotranspiration through the use of amended media and plants.	Document site planning and feasibility analyses in project SWQMP per Section 5.3.
☐	For biofiltration BMPs categorized as "Partial Infiltration Condition," the infiltration storage depth in the biofiltration design has been selected to drain in 36 hours (+/-25%) or an alternative value shown to maximize infiltration on the site.	Include documentation of estimated infiltration rate per Appendix D; provide calculations using Appendix B.3 to show that the infiltration storage depth meets this criterion. Note, depths that are too shallow or too deep may not be acceptable.
☐	For biofiltration BMP locations categorized as "Partial Infiltration Condition," the infiltration storage is over the entire bottom of the biofiltration BMP footprint.	Document on plans that the infiltration storage covers the entire bottom of the BMP (i.e., not just underdrain trenches); or an equivalent footprint elsewhere on the site.
☐	For biofiltration BMP locations categorized as "Partial Infiltration Condition," the sizing factor used for the infiltration storage area is not less than the minimum biofiltration BMP sizing factors calculated using Worksheet B.3 to achieve 40% average annual percent capture within the BMP or downstream of the BMP.	Provide calculations using Worksheet B.3. Note: The infiltration storage area could be a separate storage feature located downstream of the biofiltration BMP, not necessarily within the same footprint.
☐	An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is only used when needed to avoid geotechnical and/or subsurface contamination issues in locations identified as "No Infiltration Condition."	If using an impermeable liner or hydraulic restriction layer, provide documentation of feasibility findings per Appendix D that recommend the use of this feature.
☐	The use of proprietary biofiltration BMP design[2] is permitted only in conditions identified as "No Infiltration Condition" and where site-specific documentation demonstrates that the use of larger footprint biofiltration BMPs would be infeasible.	Provide documentation of feasibility findings that recommend no infiltration is feasible. Provide site-specific information to demonstrate that a larger footprint biofiltration BMP would not be feasible.

[2] Proprietary biofiltration BMPs are defined as features with infiltration storage footprint less than the minimum sizing factors required to achieve 40% volume retention. Note that if a biofiltration BMP is accompanied by an infiltrating area downstream that has a footprint equal to at least the minimum sizing factors calculated using

4. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed with a hydraulic loading rate to maximize pollutant retention, preserve pollutant control processes, and minimize potential for pollutant washout.

Intent: Various decisions about biofiltration BMP design influence the degree to which pollutants are retained. The MS4 Permit requires that biofiltration BMPs achieve maximum feasible retention of storm water pollutants.

☐	Media selected for the biofiltration BMP meets minimum quality and material specifications, including the maximum allowable design filtration rate and minimum thickness of media.	Provide documentation that media meets the specifications.
	OR	
☐	Alternatively, for proprietary designs and custom media mixes not meeting the media specifications, field scale testing data are provided to demonstrate that proposed media meets the pollutant treatment performance criteria in Section F.1 below.	Provide documentation of performance information as described in Section F.1.
☐	To the extent practicable, filtration rates are outlet controlled (e.g., via an underdrain and orifice/weir) instead of controlled by the infiltration rate of the media.	Include outlet control in designs or provide documentation of why outlet control is not practicable.
☐	The water surface drains to at least 12 inches below the media surface within 24 hours from the end of storm event flow to preserve plant health and promote healthy soil structure.	Include calculations to demonstrate that drawdown rate is adequate. Surface ponding drawdown time greater than 24-hours but less than 96 hours may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if certified by a landscape architect or agronomist.

Worksheet B.3 assuming a partial infiltration condition, then it is not considered to be a proprietary biofiltration BMP for the purpose of Item 4 of the checklist. For potential configurations with a higher rate biofiltration BMP upstream of an larger footprint infiltration area, the BMP would still need to comply with Item 5 of this checklist for pollutant treatment effectiveness.

☐	If nutrients are a pollutant of concern, design of the biofiltration BMP follows nutrient-sensitive design criteria.	Follow specifications for nutrient sensitive design in Fact Sheet BF-2. Or provide alternative documentation that nutrient treatment is addressed and potential for nutrient release is minimized.
☐	Media gradation calculations or geotextile selection calculations demonstrate that migration of media between layers will be prevented and permeability will be preserved.	Follow specification for choking layer or geotextile in Fact Sheet PR-1 or BF-1. Or include calculations to demonstrate that choking layer is appropriately specified.
	5. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed to promote appropriate biological activity to support and maintain treatment processes. Intent: Biological processes are an important element of biofiltration performance and longevity.	
☐	Plants have been selected to be tolerant of project climate, design ponding depths and the treatment media composition.	Provide documentation justifying plant selection. Refer to the plant list in Appendix E.21.
☐	Plants have been selected to minimize irrigation requirements.	Provide documentation describing irrigation requirements for establishment and long term operation.
☐	Plant location and growth will not impede expected long-term media filtration rates and will enhance long term infiltration rates to the extent possible.	Provide documentation justifying plant selection. Refer to the plant list in Appendix E.21.
	6. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed with a hydraulic loading rate to prevent erosion, scour, and channeling within the BMP. Intent: Erosion, scour, and/or channeling can disrupt treatment processes and reduce biofiltration effectiveness.	
☐	Scour protection has been provided for both sheet flow and pipe inflows to the BMP, where needed.	Provide documentation of scour protection as described in Fact Sheets PR-1 or BF-1 or approved equivalent.
☐	Where scour protection has not been provided, flows into and within the BMP are kept to non-erosive velocities.	Provide documentation of design checks for erosive velocities as described in Fact Sheets PR-1 or BF-1 or approved equivalent.

☐	For proprietary BMPs, the BMP is used in a manner consistent with manufacturer guidelines and conditions of its third-party certification[3] (i.e., maximum tributary area, maximum inflow velocities, etc., as applicable).	Provide copy of manufacturer recommendations and conditions of third-party certification.

7. Biofiltration BMP must include operations and maintenance design features and planning considerations for continued effectiveness of pollutant and flow control functions.

Intent: Biofiltration BMPs require regular maintenance in order provide ongoing function as intended. Additionally, it is not possible to foresee and avoid potential issues as part of design; therefore plans must be in place to correct issues if they arise.

☐	The biofiltration BMP O&M plan describes specific inspection activities, regular/periodic maintenance activities and specific corrective actions relating to scour, erosion, channeling, media clogging, vegetation health, and inflow and outflow structures.	Include O&M plan with project submittal as described in Chapter 7.
☐	Adequate site area and features have been provided for BMP inspection and maintenance access.	Illustrate maintenance access routes, setbacks, maintenance features as needed on project water quality plans.
☐	For proprietary biofiltration BMPs, the BMP maintenance plan is consistent with manufacturer guidelines and conditions of its third-party certification (i.e., maintenance activities, frequencies).	Provide copy of manufacturer recommendations and conditions of third-party certification.

[3] Certifications or verifications issued by the Washington Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology program and the New Jersey Corporation for Advanced Technology programs are typically accompanied by a set of guidelines regarding appropriate design and maintenance conditions that would be consistent with the certification/verification

F.1 Pollutant Treatment Performance Standard

Standard biofiltration BMPs that are designed following the criteria in Fact Sheets PR-1 and BF-1 are presumed to the meet the pollutant treatment performance standard associated with biofiltration BMPs. This presumption is based on the MS4 Permit Fact Sheet which cites analyses of standard biofiltration BMPs conducted in the Ventura County Technical Guidance Manual (July 2011).

For BMPs that do not meet the biofiltration media specification and/or the range of acceptable media filtration rates described in Fact Sheet, PR-1 and BF-1, additional documentation must be provided to demonstrate that adequate pollutant treatment performance is provided to be considered a biofiltration BMP. Project applicants have three options for documenting compliance:

1) Project applicants may provide documentation to substantiate that the minor modifications to the design is expected to provide equal or better pollutant removal performance for the project pollutants of concern than would be provided by a biofiltration design that complies with the criteria in Fact Sheets PR-1 and BF-1. Minor modifications are design elements that deviate only slightly from standard design criteria and are expected to either not impact performance or to improve performance compared to standard biofiltration designs. The City has the discretion to accept or reject this documentation and/or request additional documentation to substantiate equivalent or better performance to BF-1 or PR-1, as applicable. Examples of minor deviations include:

    A. Different particle size distribution of aggregate, with documentation that system filtration rate will meet specifications.

    B. Alternative source of organic components, with documentation of material suitability and stability from appropriate testing agency.

    C. Specialized amendments to provide additional treatment mechanisms, and which have negligible potential to upset other treatment mechanisms or otherwise deteriorate performances.

2) For proprietary BMPs, project applicants may provide evidence that the BMP has been certified for use as part of the Washington State Technology Assessment Protocol-Ecology certification program and meets each of the following requirements:

    a. The applicant must demonstrate (using the checklist in this Appendix) that the BMP meets all other conditions to be considered as a biofiltration BMP. For example, a cartridge media filter or hydrodynamic separator would not meet biofiltration BMP design criteria regardless of Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification because they do not support effective biological processes.

b. The applicant must select BMPs that have an active Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification, with General Use Level Designation for the appropriate project pollutants of concern as identified in Table F.1-1. The list of certified technologies is updated as new technologies are approved (link below). Technologies with Pilot Use Level Designation and Conditional Use Level Designations are not acceptable. Refer to:
http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/technologies.html.

c. The applicant must demonstrate that BMP is being used in a manner consistent with all conditions of the Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification while meeting the flow rate or volume design criteria that is required for biofiltration BMPs under this manual. Conditions of Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification are available by clicking on the technology name at the website listed in bullet b. Additional discussion about sizing of proprietary biofiltration BMPs to comply with applicable sizing standards is provided below in Section F.2.

3) For BMPs that do not fall into options 1 or 2 above, the City Engineer may allow the applicant to submit alternative third-party documentation that the pollutant treatment performance of the system is consistent with the performance levels associated with the necessary Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certifications. Table F.1-1 describes the required levels of certification and Table F.l-2 describes the pollutant treatment performance levels associated with each level of certification. Acceptance of this approach is at the sole discretion of the City Engineer. If Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certifications are not available, preference shall be given to:

a. Verified third-party, field-scale testing performance under the Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership Tier II Protocol. This protocol is no longer operated, however this is considered to be a valid protocol and historic verifications are considered to be representative provided that product models being proposed are consistent with those that were tested. Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership verifications were conducted under New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing and are archived at the website linked below. Note that Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership verifications must be matched to pollutant treatment standards in Table F.1-2 then matched to an equivalent Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification in Table F.1-1.

b. Verified third-party, field-scale testing performance under the New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing protocol. Note that New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing verifications must be matched to pollutant treatment standards in Table F.1-2 then matched to an equivalent Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification in

Table F.1-1.

A list of field-scale verified technologies under Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership Tier II and New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing can be accessed at: http://www.njcat.org/verification-process/technology-verification-database.html (refer to field verified technologies only).

Table F.1-1: Required Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology Certifications for Polltuants of Concern for Biofiltration Performance Standard

Project Pollutant of Concern	Required Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology Certification for Biofiltration Performance Standard
Trash	Basic Treatment OR Phosphorus Treatment OR Enhanced Treatment
Sediments	Basic Treatment OR Phosphorus Treatment OR Enhanced Treatment
Oil and Grease	Basic Treatment OR Phosphorus Treatment OR Enhanced Treatment
Nutrients	Phosphorus Treatment[1]
Metals	Enhanced Treatment
Pesticides	Basic Treatment (including filtration)[2] OR Phosphorus Treatment OR Enhanced Treatment
Organics	Basic Treatment (including filtration)[2] OR Phosphorus Treatment OR Enhanced Treatment
Bacteria and Viruses	Basic Treatment (including bacteria removal processes)[3] OR Phosphorus Treatment OR Enhanced Treatment

1 – There is no Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology equivalent for nitrogen compounds; however systems that are designed to retain phosphorus (as well as meet basic treatment designation), generally also provide treatment of nitrogen compounds. Where nitrogen is a pollutant of concern, relative performance of available certified systems for nitrogen removal should be considered in BMP selection.

2 – Pesticides, organics, and oxygen demanding substances are typically addressed by particle filtration consistent with the level of treatment required to achieve Basic treatment certification; if a system with Basic treatment certification does not provide filtration, it is not acceptable for pesticides, organics or oxygen demanding substances.

3 – There is no Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology equivalent for pathogens (viruses and bacteria), and testing data are limited because of typical sample hold times. Systems with Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology Basic Treatment must be include one or more significant bacteria removal process such as media filtration, physical sorption, predation, reduced redox conditions, and/or solar inactivation. Where design options are available to enhance pathogen removal (i.e., pathogen-specific media mix offered by vendor), this design variation should be used.

Table F.1-2: Performance Standards for Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology Certification

Performance Goal	Influent Range	Criteria
Basic Treatment	20 – 100 mg/L TSS	Effluent goal ≤ 20 mg/L TSS
	100 – 200 mg/L TSS	≥ 80% TSS removal
	>200 mg/L TSS	> 80% TSS removal
Enhanced (Dissolved Metals) Treatment	Dissolved copper 0.005 – 0.02 mg/L	Must meet basic treatment goal and better than basic treatment currently defined as >30% dissolved copper removal
	Dissolved zinc 0.02 – 0.3 mg/L	Must meet basic treatment goal and better than basic treatment currently defined as >60% dissolved zinc removal
Phosphorous Treatment	Total phosphorous 0.1 – 0.5 mg/L	Must meet basic treatment goal and exhibit ≥50% total phosphorous removal
Oil Treatment	Total petroleum hydrocarbon > 10 mg/L	No ongoing or recurring visible sheen in effluent Daily average effluent Total petroleum hydrocarbon concentration < 10 mg/L Maximum effluent Total petroleum hydrocarbon for a 15 mg/L for a discrete (grab) sample
Pretreatment	50 – 100 mg/L TSS	≤ 50 mg/L TSS
	≥ 200 mg/L TSS	≥ 50% TSS removal

F.2 Guidance on Sizing and Design of Non-Standard Biofiltration BMPs

This section explains the general process for design and sizing of non-standard biofiltration BMPs. This section assumes that the BMPs have been selected based on the criteria in Section F.1.

F.2.1 Guidance on Design per Conditions of Certification/Verification

The biofiltration standard and checklist in this appendix requires that "the BMP is used in a manner consistent with manufacturer guidelines and conditions of its third-party certification." Practically, what this means is that the BMP is used in the same way in which it was tested and certified. For example, it is not acceptable for a BMP of a given size to be certified/verified with a 100 gallon per minute treatment rate and be applied at a 150 gallon per minute treatment rate in a design.
Certifications or verifications issued by the Washington Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology program and the Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership or New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing programs are typically accompanied by a set of guidelines regarding appropriate design and maintenance conditions that would be consistent with the certification/verification. It is common for these approvals to specify the specific model of BMP, design capacity for given unit sizes, type of media that is the basis for approval, and/or other parameter. The applicant must demonstrate conclusively that the proposed application of the BMP is consistent with these criteria.

For alternate non-proprietary systems that do not have a Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology / Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership / New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing certification (but which still must provide quantitative data per Appendix F.1), it must be demonstrate that the configuration and design proposed for the project is reasonably consistent with the configuration and design under which the BMP was tested to demonstrate compliance with Appendix F.1.

F.2.2 Sizing of Proprietary Biofiltration BMP

This sizing method is <u>only</u> available when the BMP meets the pollutant treatment performance standard in Appendix F.1.

Proprietary biofiltration BMPs are typically designed as a flow-based BMPs (i.e., a constant treatment capacity with negligible storage volume). Proprietary biofiltration is only acceptable if the sizing criteria in this Appendix and the retention performance standard identified in Appendix B.2 are satisfied. The applicable sizing method for biofiltration is reduced to: Treat 1.5 times the DCV.

The following steps should be followed to demonstrate that the system is sized to treat 1.5 times the DCV.

1. Calculate the flow rate required to meet the pollutant treatment performance standard without scaling for the 1.5 factor. Options include either:
    - Calculate the runoff flow rate from a 0.2 inch per hour uniform intensity precipitation

event (See methodology Appendix B.6), or

- Conduct a continuous simulation analysis to compute the size required to capture and treat 80 percent of average annual runoff; for small catchments, 5-minute precipitation data should be used to account for short time of concentration. Nearest rain gage with 5-minute precipitation data is allowed for this analysis.

2. Multiply the flow rate from Step 1 by 1.5 to compute the design flow rate for the biofiltration system.
3. Based on the conditions of certification/verification (discussed above), establish the design capacity, as a flow rate, of a given sized unit.
4. Demonstrates that an appropriate unit size and number of units is provided to provide a flow rate that meets the required flow rate from Step 2.
5. Provide supplemental retention BMPs within the DMA that will meet the volume retention performance standard in Appendix B.

F.3 Bioretention Soil Media (BSM)

SECTION 803 - BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA COMPOSITION, TESTING, AND INSTALLATION

803-1 GENERAL.

Bioretention Soil Media (BSM) is intended to filter storm water and support plant growth while minimizing the leaching of potential pollutants. This specification includes requirements that apply to BSM used in stormwater treatment BMPs, including bioretention and biofiltration.

803-2 BLENDED BSM CRITERIA AND TESTING REQUIREMENTS

803-2.1 General. Blended BSM shall consist of 60% to 80% by volume sand, up to 20% by volume topsoil, and up to 20% by volume compost. Sand, Topsoil, and Compost used in BSM shall conform to requirements listed in Sections 803-3, 803-4, and 803-5, respectively. For bioretention/biofiltration with outlet-controlled designs, it is likely that topsoil will need to be omitted or reduced to achieve permeability targets.

Alternative mix components and proportions may be utilized, provided that the whole blended mix conforms to whole BSM criteria, detailed in Section 803-2.3 through 803-2.5. Alternative mix designs may include alternative proportions and/or alternative organic amendments. Alternative mixes are subject to approval by the City Engineer. Alternative mixes that use an alternative organic component (rather than compost) may be necessary when BMPs are installed in areas with nitrogen or phosphorus impaired receiving waters in order to meet more stringent BSM quality requirements as detailed in Section 803-2.5.

803-2.2 Testing and Submittals. At least 30 days prior to ordering materials, the Contractor shall submit the following to the City's Construction Management & Inspection division (upon request): source/supplier of BSM, location of source/supplier, a physical sample of the BSM, whole BSM test results from a third party independent laboratory, test results for individual component materials as required, and description of proposed methods and schedule for mixing, delivery, and placement of BSM. The test results shall be no older than 120 days and shall accurately represent the materials and feed stocks that are currently available from the supplier.

Test results shall demonstrate conformance to agronomic suitability and hydraulic suitability criteria listed in Sections 803-2.3 and 803-2.4, respectively. BSM for use in BMPs in areas with water quality impairments in receiving waters shall also comply with applicable Chemical Suitability criteria in Section 803-2.5. No delivery, placement, or planting of BSM shall begin until test results confirm the suitability of the BSM. The Contractor shall submit a written request for approval which shall be accompanied by written analysis results from a written report of a testing agency. The testing agency must be registered by the State for agronomic soil evaluation laboratory test fees shall be paid for by the Contractor.

803-2.3 Agronomic Suitability. The BSM shall conform to the requirements herein to support plant growth. BSM which requires amending to comply with the below specifications shall be uniformly blended and tested in its blended state prior to testing and delivery.

a) pH range shall be between 6.0-8.5.

b) Salinity shall be between 0.5 and 3.0 millimho/cm (as measure by electrical conductivity)

c) Sodium absorption ratio (SAR) shall be less than 5.0

d) Chloride shall be less than 800 ppm.

e) Cation exchange capacity shall be greater than 10 meq/100 g.

f) Organic matter shall be between 2 and 5%.

g) Carbon:Nitrogen ratio shall be between 12 and 40 (15 to 40 preferred).

Textural class fraction shall adhere to limits in Table 803-2.1, as determined by ASTM Method D422 or an approved alternative method:

TABLE 803-2.3

Textural Class (ASTM D422)	**Size Range**	**Mass Fraction (percent)**
Gravel	Larger than 2 mm	0 to 25 of total sample
Clay	Smaller than 0.005 mm	0 to 5 of non-gravel fraction

Test results shall show the following information:

a) Date of testing

b) Project name, contractor name, and source of materials and supplier name

c) Copies of all testing reports including, at a minimum, analytical results sufficient to confirm compliance with all requirements listed in this section.

803-2.4 Hydraulic Suitability. BSM shall meet the have appropriate hydraulic properties for filtering stormwater. The BSM shall conform to the requirements herein to support plant growth. BSM which requires amending, shall be uniformly blended and tested in its blended state prior to testing and delivery.

803-2.4.1 Testing. The saturated hydraulic conductivity of the whole BSM shall be measured according to the method detailed in the measurement of hydraulic conductivity (USDA Handbook 60, method 34b), commonly available as part of standard agronomic soil evaluation, or ASTM D24234 Permeability of Granular Soils (at approximately 85% relative compaction Standard Proctor, ASTM D698). BSM shall conform to hydraulic criteria associated with the BMP design configuration that best applies to the facility where the BSM will be installed (Section 803-2.4.2 or 803-2.4.3).

803-2.4.2 Systems with Unrestricted Underdrain System (i.e., media control). For systems with underdrains that are not restricted, the BSM shall meet the minimum and maximum measured hydraulic conductivity found in Table 803-2.4 to ensure adequate flow rate through the BMP and longevity of the system but reduce excessive velocities through the media. In all cases, an upturned elbow system on the underdrain, measuring 9 to 12 inches above the invert of the underdrain, should be used to control velocities in the underdrain pipe and reduce potential for solid migration through the system.

803-2.4.3 Systems with Restricted Underdrain System (i.e., outlet control). For systems in which the flow rate of water through the media is controlled via an outlet control device (e.g., orifice or valve) affixed to the outlet of the underdrain system, the hydraulic conductivity of the media should meet the requirements in Table 803-2.4 and the outlet control device should control the flow rate to between 5 and 12 inches per hour. This configuration reduces the sensitivity of system performance to the hydraulic conductivity, compaction, and clogging of the material, reduces the likelihood of preferential flow through media, and allows more precise design and control of system flow rates. <u>For these reasons, outlet control should be considered the preferred design option over unrestricted underdrain systems.</u>

803-2.4.4 Systems without Underdrains. For systems without underdrains, the BSM shall have a hydraulic conductivity of at least 5 inches per hour, or at least 2 times higher than the design infiltration rate of the underlying soil, whichever is greater.

Table 803-2.4.

	Hydraulic Conductivity Requirements	
Underdrain System	**Minimum (in/hr)**	**Maximum (in/hr)**
Unrestricted (media control)	8	24
Restricted (outlet control) Preferred Design Option.	20	80

803-2.5 Chemical Suitability for Areas Draining to Impaired Receiving Waters.

803-2.5.1 General. The chemical suitability criteria listed in this section do not apply to systems without underdrains, unless groundwater is impaired or susceptible to nutrient contamination. Limits for a given parameter only apply if that parameter is associated with a water quality impairment, priority water quality condition, and/or TMDL in the receiving water. Limits may be waived at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined by the City that it is unreasonable to meet the specification using locally-available materials (available within 100 miles).

803-2.5.2 Testing. Potential for pollutant leaching shall be assessed using either the Saturated Media Extract Method (aka, Saturation Extract) that is commonly performed by agronomic laboratories or the Synthetic Precipitation Leaching Procedure (SPLP) (EPA SW-846, Method 1312). If the saturation extract method is used, samples may be rinsed with up to five pore volumes before collecting extract for analysis.

803-2.5.3 BSM Limits in Areas Draining to Impaired Receiving Waters. The limits in this section are in terms of the concentration of a parameter in water that has been contacted with the BSM.

Table 803-2.5.3

Applicable Pollutant(s)	Saturation Extract or SPLP Criteria
Phosphorus*	< 1 mg/L
Zinc	< 1 mg/L
Copper	< 0.04 mg/L
Lead	< 0.025 mg/L
Arsenic	< 0.02 mg/L
Cadmium	< 0.01 mg/L
Mercury	< 0.01 mg/L
Selenium	< 0.01 mg/L

803-2.5.4 Alternative BSM for Reduced Phosphorus Leaching. In areas with impaired receiving waters, alternative BSM should be considered, especially if receiving waters are phosphorus impaired. BSM with 20% compost may result in phosphorus leaching and soluble phosphorus test results in excess of the 1 mg/L limit presented in Table 803-2.5.3 Alternative organic amendments, such as coco coir pith and/or composted wood products, in place of compost should be considered in these areas. Sand and soil components with higher levels of iron and aluminum should also be considered to limit the solubility of phosphorus.

803-5.5.5. Nitrogen Impaired Receiving Waters. In areas with a downstream water quality impairment or TMDL for nitrogen, a combination of BSM composition and BMP design shall be used to reduce the potential for nitrate leaching from BMPs.

- BSM: The C:N ratio of BSM shall be between 15 and 40 to reduce the potential for nitrate leaching.
- BMP design: BMPs shall be designed to either enhance infiltration into underlying soils or with internal water storage to promote reduction of nitrogen:
  - If a BMP is installed with a liner, the BMP must include an internal saturated zone, consisting of at least an 18-inch thick layer of gravel, to enhance denitrification.
  - If a BMP does not include a liner, it must be installed with a retention zone below the underdrain discharge elevation, consisting of at least an 18-inch thick layer of gravel, to enhance infiltration into underlying soils.

803-3 SAND FOR BSM.

803-3.1 General. Sand used in BSM should preferably be washed prior to delivery. If sand is not washed it must still meet sieve analysis requirements in Table 1.

803-3.2 Gradation Limits. A sieve analysis shall be performed in accordance with California Test 202, ASTM D 422, or approved equivalent method to demonstrate compliance with the gradation limits shown in Table 803-3.2. Fines passing the No. 200 sieve shall be non-plastic.

TABLE 803-3.2

	Percentage Passing Sieve (by weight)	
Sieve Size (ASTM D422)	**Minimum**	**Maximum**
3/8 inch	100	100
#4	90	100
#8	70	100
#16	40	95
#30	15	70
#40	5	55
#100	0	15
#200	0	5

803-4 TOPSOIL FOR BSM.

803-4.1 General. Topsoil shall be free of hazardous materials and shall be consistent with a common definition of topsoil. Decomposed granite and derivatives of decomposed granite are not considered to be topsoil for the purpose of this specification.

803-4.2 Textural Class. Topsoil shall be classified as a sandy loam or a loamy sand according to the US Department of Agriculture soil classification system. In addition, a textural class analysis shall be performed in accordance with ASTM D422, or an approved alternative method to demonstrate compliance with the gradation limits in Table 803-4.2.

Table 803-4.2

Textural Class (ASTM D422)	Size Range	Mass Fraction (percent)
Gravel	Larger than 2 mm	0 to 25 of total sample
Clay	Smaller than 0.005 mm	0 to 15 of non-gravel fraction

803-5 COMPOST FOR BSM.

803-5.1 General. Compost shall be produced at a facility inspected and regulated by the local enforcement agency for CalRecycle. Compost should also preferably be certified by the U.S. Composting Council's Seal of Testing Assurance Program (USCC STA) or an approved equivalent program. Compost shall not be produced from biosolids feedstock.

803-5.1.1 Gradation Limits. A sieve analysis shall be performed in accordance with ASTM D 422, or approved equivalent method to demonstrate compliance with the gradation limits show in Table 803-5.1.1.

Table 803-5.1.1

Sieve Size (ASTM D422)	Percent Passing Sieve (by weight)
1/2”	97 to 100
2 mm	40 to 90

803-5.1.2 Material Content. Organic Material Content shall be 35% to 100% by dry weight and moisture shall be 25% to 60% wet weight basis. Physical contaminants (manmade inert materials) shall not exceed 1% by dry weight.

803-5.2 Compost Testing. Compost shall meet the following requirements as demonstrated through standard agronomic testing methods:

a) **Carbon to nitrogen (C:N) ratio.** C:N shall be between 15:1 and 40:1, preferably above 20:1 to reduce the potential for nitrogen leaching/washout.

b) **pH.** pH shall be between 6.0 and 8.5.

c) **Soluble Salt Concentration.** Soluble Salt Concentration shall be less than 10 dS/m. (Method TMECC 4.10-A, USDA and U.S. Composting Council).

d) **Stability.** Carbon Dioxide evolution rate shall be less than 3.0 mg CO2-C per g compost organic matter (OM) per day or less than 6 mg CO2-C per g compost carbon per day, whichever unit is reported. (Method TMECC 5.08-B, USDA and U.S. Composting Council). Alternatively a Solvita rating of 5.5 or higher is acceptable.

803-5.2.1 Pathogens and Pollutant Limits. Select pathogens shall pass US EPA Class A standard, 40 CFR Section 503.32(a). Trace Metals shall pass US EPA Class A standard, 40 CFR Section 503.13, Table 1 for Ceiling Concentrations.

803-6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, HANDLING, AND PAYMENT

803-6.1 General. BSM shall be thoroughly mixed prior to delivery using mechanical mixing methods such as a drum mixer. The Contractor shall protect soils and mixes from absorbing excess water and from erosion at all times.

803-6.1.1 Delivery. The Contractor shall not deliver or place soils in wet or muddy conditions.

803-6.1.2 Storage. The Contractor shall not store materials unprotected during large rainfall events (>0.25 inches). If water is introduced into the material while it is stockpiled, the Contractor shall allow the material to drain to the acceptance of the reviewing jurisdiction before placement.

803-6.1.3 Handling and Placement. BSM shall be lightly compacted and placed in loose lifts approximately 12 inches (300 mm) to ensure reasonable settlement without excessive compaction. Compaction within the BSM area should not exceed 75 to 85% standard proctor within the BSM. Machinery shall not be used in the bioretention facility to place the BSM. A conveyor or spray system shall be used for media placement in large facilities. Low ground pressure equipment may be authorized for large facilities at the discretion of the reviewing jurisdiction. Placement methods and BSM quantities shall account for approximately 10% loss of volume due to settling. Planting methods and timing shall account for settling of media without exposing plant root systems.

803-6.1.4 Hydraulic Suitability. The City may request up to three double ring infiltrometer tests (ASTM D3385) or approved alternative tests to confirm that the placed material meets applicable hydraulic suitability criteria. In the event that the infiltration rate of placed material does not meet applicable criteria, the reviewing jurisdiction may require replacement and/or de-compaction of materials.

803-6.2 Quality Control and Acceptance

803-6.2.1 General. Close adherence to the material quality controls herein are necessary in order to support healthy vegetation, minimize pollutant leaching, and assure sufficient permeability to infiltrate/filter runoff during the life of the facility. Amendments may be included to adjust agronomic properties. Acceptance of the material will be based on test results certified to be representative. Test results shall be conducted no more than 120 days prior to delivery of the blended BSM to the project site. For projects installing more than 100 cubic yards of BSM, batch-specific tests of the blended mix shall be provided to the reviewing jurisdiction for every 100 cubic yards of BSM along with a site plan showing the placement locations of each BSM batch within the facility.

803-6.5 Measurement and Payment. Quantities of mixed BSM will be measured as shown in the Bid. The volumetric quantity of mixed BSM to be paid for shall be the volume of BSM placed within the limits of the dimensions shown on the Plans.

803-7 AGGREGATE MATERIALS FOR BIORETENTION AND BIOFILTRATION DRAINAGE LAYERS

803-7.1 General. This section provides material specifications for drainage layers below BSM in bioretention BMPs. This consists of a two-layer filter course placed below the BSM and above an open-graded aggregate stone reservoir.

803-7.2 Rock and Sand Materials for Drainage Layers

803-7.2.1 General. All sand and stone products used in BSM drainage layers shall be clean and thoroughly washed.

803-7.2.2 Filter Course. Graded aggregate choker material is installed as a filter course to separate BSM from the drainage rock reservoir layer. The purpose of this layer is to limit migration of sand or other fines from the BSM. The filter course consists of two layers of choking material increasing in particle size. The top layer (closets to the BSM) of the filter course shall be constructed of thoroughly washed ASTMC33 Choker Sand as detailed in Table 200-1.5.5. The bottom layer of the filter course shall be constructed of thoroughly washed ASTM No. 8 aggregate material conforming to gradation limits contained in Table 200-1.2.1.

803-7.2.3 Open-Graded Aggregate Stone. Open-graded aggregate material is installed below filter course layers to provide additional storm water storage capacity and contain the underdrain pipe(s). This layer shall be constructed of thoroughly washed AASHTO No. 57 open graded aggregate material conforming to gradation limits contained in Table 200-1.2.1.

803-7.3 Layer Thicknesses and Construction.

803-7.3.1 General. Aggregate shall be deposited on underlying layers at a uniform quantity per linear foot (meter), which quantity will provide the required compacted thickness within the tolerances specified herein without resorting to spotting, picking up, or otherwise shifting the aggregate material.

803-7.3.2 Filter Course Layers. Each of the two filter course layers (top layer of ASTM C33 Choker Sand and bottom layer of ASTM No. 8) shall be installed to a thickness of 3 inches (75 mm). Both layers shall be spread in single layers. Marker stakes should be used to ensure uniform lift thickness.

803-7.3.3 Aggregate Drainage and Storage Layer. The thickness of the aggregate drainage and storage layer (AASHTO No. 57) will depend on site specific design and shall be detailed in contract documents.

803-7.3.4 Spreading. Drainage layers shall be as delivered as uniform mixtures and each layer shall be spread in one operation. Segregation within each aggregate layer shall be avoided and the layers shall be free from pockets of coarse or fine material.

803-7.3.5 Compacting. Filter course material and aggregate storage material shall be lightly compacted to approximately 80% standard proctor without the use of vibratory compaction.

803-7.4 Measurement and Payment. Quantities of graded aggregate choker material and open-graded aggregate storage material will be measured as shown in the Bid. The volumetric quantities of graded aggregate choker stone material and open-graded storage material shall be those placed within the limits of the dimensions shown on the Plans. The weight of material to be paid for will be determined by deducting (from the weight of material delivered to the Work) the weight of water in the material (at the time of weighing) in excess of 1% more than the optimum moisture content. No payment will be made for the weight of water deducted as provided in this subsection.

803-8 SUMMARY

Summary of BSM specification requirements are included in Table 803-8.

Table 803-8

Component	Requirement
BSM Material Composition	Sand: 60-80% by volume Topsoil: 0-20% by volume Compost: 20% by volume
Alternative Blends Acceptable?	Yes, but they must meet performance-based specifications.
Sand Type	Washed sand conforming to particle size distribution
Topsoil Type	Sandy loam or loamy sand with clay < 15% and gravel < 25%
Compost Type	From a CalRecycle permitted facility. Biosolids derived materials are not acceptable
BSM Permeability	8-24 inches/hour for BMPs without outlet control; 15-80 inches/hour for BMPs with outlet control; testing is required to demonstrate.
Agronomic Suitability Requirements	Limits for salts and potential toxins. C:N ration between 12 and 40.
Water Quality Related Limits?	Requirements related to specific pollutants when water quality of receiving waters is impaired for those pollutants.

Appendix G

CARLSBAD BMP DESIGN MANUAL

Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Jan. 2024

Appendix G Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

G.1 Guidance for Continuous Simulation Hydrologic Modeling for Hydromodification Management Studies in San Diego County Region 9

G.1.1 Introduction

Continuous simulation hydrologic modeling is used to demonstrate compliance with the performance standards for hydromodification management in Carlsbad. There are several available hydrologic models that can perform continuous simulation analyses. Each has different methods and parameters for determining the amount of rainfall that becomes runoff, and for representing the hydraulic operations of certain structural BMPs such as biofiltration with partial retention or biofiltration. This Appendix is intended to:

- Identify acceptable models for continuous simulation hydrologic analyses for hydromodification management;
- Provide guidance for selecting climatology input to the models;
- Provide standards for rainfall loss parameters to be used in the models;
- Provide standards for defining physical characteristics of LID components; and
- Provide guidance for demonstrating compliance with performance standards for hydromodification management.

This Appendix is not a user's manual for any of the acceptable models, nor a comprehensive manual for preparing a hydrologic model. This Appendix provides guidance for selecting model input parameters for the specific purpose of hydromodification management studies. The model preparer must be familiar with the user's manual for the selected software to determine how the parameters are entered to the model.

G.1.2 Software for Continuous Simulation Hydrologic Modeling

The following software models may be used for hydromodification management studies in Carlsbad:

- HSPF – Hydrologic Simulation Program-FORTRAN, distributed by USEPA, public domain.

- SDHM – San Diego Hydrology Model, distributed by Clear Creek Solutions, Inc. This is an HSPF-based model with a proprietary interface that has been customized for use in San Diego County for hydromodification management studies.
- SWMM – Storm Water Management Model, distributed by USEPA, public domain.

G.1.3 Climatology Parameters

G.1.3.1 Rainfall

In all software applications for preparation of hydromodification management studies in Carlsbad, rainfall data must be selected from approved data sets that have been prepared for this purpose. As part of the development of the March 2011 Final HMP, long-term hourly rainfall records were prepared for public use. The rainfall record files are provided on the Project Clean Water website. The rainfall station map is provided in the March 2011 Final HMP and is included in this Appendix as Figure G.1-1.

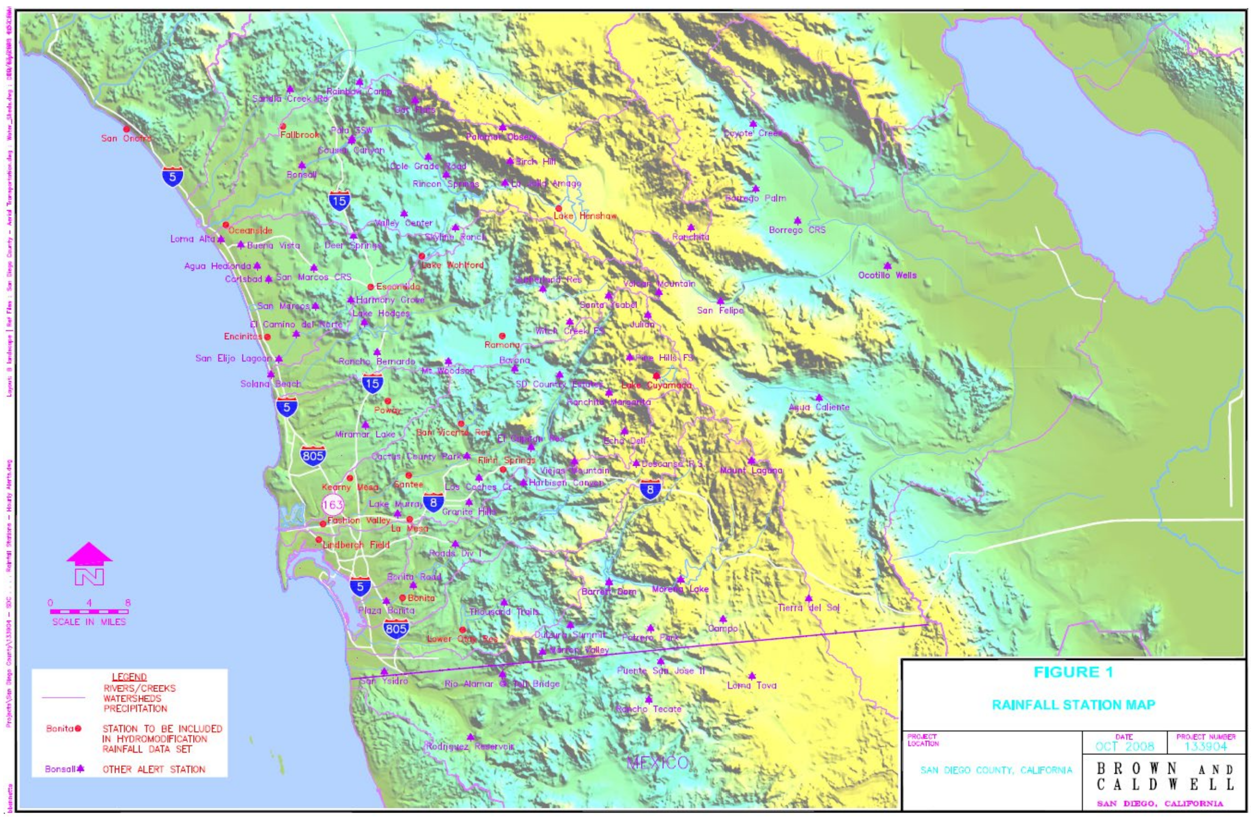


Figure G.1-1: Rainfall Station Map

Project applicants preparing continuous simulation models shall select the most appropriate rainfall data set from the rainfall record files provided on the Project Clean Water website. For a given project location, the following factors should be considered in the selection of the appropriate rainfall data set:

- In most cases, the Oceanside rainfall data set in closest proximity to the project site will be the appropriate choice for projects within the City (refer to the rainfall station map). However, the rainfall data set closest to the proximity of the project site should be used.
- In some cases, the rainfall data set in closest proximity to the project site may not be the most applicable data set. Such a scenario could involve a data set with an elevation significantly different from the project site. In addition to a simple elevation comparison, the project proponent may also consult with the San Diego County's average annual precipitation isopluvial map, which is provided in the San Diego County Hydrology Manual (2003). Review of this map could provide an initial estimate as to whether the project site is in a similar rainfall zone as compared to the rainfall stations. Generally, precipitation totals in San Diego County increase with increasing elevation.
- Where possible, rainfall data sets should be chosen so that the data set and the project location are both located in the same topographic zone (coastal, foothill, mountain) and major watershed unit (Upper San Luis Rey, Lower San Luis Rey, Upper San Diego River, Lower San Diego River, etc.).

For SDHM users, the approved rainfall data sets are pre-loaded into the software package. SDHM users may select the appropriate rainfall gage within the SDHM program. HSPF or SWMM users shall download the appropriate rainfall record from the Project Clean Water website and load it into the software program.

Both the pre-development and post-project model simulation period shall encompass the entire rainfall record provided in the approved rainfall data set. Scaling the rainfall data is not permitted.

G.1.3.2 Potential Evapotranspiration

Project applicants preparing continuous simulation models shall select a data set from the sources described below to represent potential evapotranspiration.

For HSPF users, this parameter may be entered as an hourly time series. The hourly time series that was used to develop the BMP Sizing Calculator parameters is provided on the project clean water website and may be used for hydromodification management studies in San Diego. For SDHM users, the hourly evaporation data set is pre-loaded into the program. HSPF users may download the evaporation record from the Project Clean Water website and load it into the software program.

For HSPF or SWMM users, this parameter may be entered as monthly values in inches per month or inches per day. Monthly values may be obtained from the California Irrigation Management Information System "Reference Evapotranspiration Zones" brochure and map (herein "CIMIS ETo

Zone Map"), prepared by California Department of Water Resources, dated January 2012. The CIMIS ETo Zone Map is available from www.cimis.gov, and is provided in this Appendix as Figure G.1-2. Determine the appropriate reference evapotranspiration zone for the project from the CIMIS ETo Zone Map. The monthly average reference evapotranspiration values are provided below in Table G.1-1.

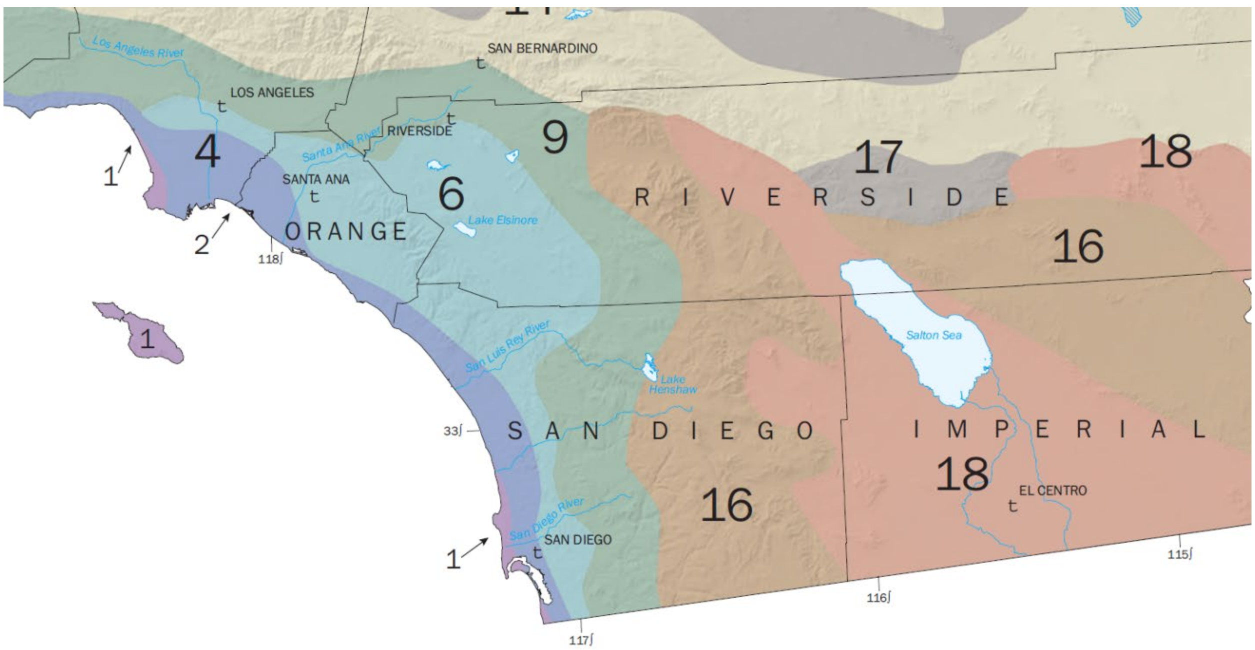


Figure G.1-2: California Irrigation Management Information System "Reference Evapotranspiration Zones"

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Table G.1-1: Monthly Average Reference Evapotranspiration by ETo Zone (inches/month and inches/day) for use in SWMM Models for Hydromodification Management Studies in San Diego County CIMIS Zones 1, 4, 6, 9, and 16 (See CIMIS ETo Zone Map)

	January	February	March	April	May	June	July	August	September	October	November	December
Zone	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month
1	0.93	1.4	2.48	3.3	4.03	4.5	4.65	4.03	3.3	2.48	1.2	0.62
4	1.86	2.24	3.41	4.5	5.27	5.7	5.89	5.58	4.5	3.41	2.4	1.86
6	1.86	2.24	3.41	4.8	5.58	6.3	6.51	6.2	4.8	3.72	2.4	1.86
9	2.17	2.8	4.03	5.1	5.89	6.6	7.44	6.82	5.7	4.03	2.7	1.86
16	1.55	2.52	4.03	5.7	7.75	8.7	9.3	8.37	6.3	4.34	2.4	1.55
	January	February	March	April	May	June	July	August	September	October	November	December
Days	31	28	31	30	31	30	31	31	30	31	30	31
Zone	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day
1	0.030	0.050	0.080	0.110	0.130	0.150	0.150	0.130	0.110	0.080	0.040	0.020
4	0.060	0.080	0.110	0.150	0.170	0.190	0.190	0.180	0.150	0.110	0.080	0.060
6	0.060	0.080	0.110	0.160	0.180	0.210	0.210	0.200	0.160	0.120	0.080	0.060
9	0.070	0.100	0.130	0.170	0.190	0.220	0.240	0.220	0.190	0.130	0.090	0.060
16	0.050	0.090	0.130	0.190	0.250	0.290	0.300	0.270	0.210	0.140	0.080	0.050

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

G.1.4 LAND CHARACTERISTICS AND LOSS PARAMETERS

In all software applications for preparation of hydromodification management studies in San Diego, rainfall loss parameters must be consistent with this Appendix unless the preparer can provide documentation to substantiate use of other parameters, subject to City Engineer. HSPF and SWMM use different processes and different sets of parameters. SDHM is based on HSPF, therefore parameters for SDHM and HSPF are presented together in Section G.1.4.1. Parameters that have been pre-loaded into SDHM may be used for other HSPF hydromodification management studies outside of SDHM. Parameters for SWMM are presented separately in Section G.1.4.2.

G.1.4.1 Rainfall Loss Parameters for HSPF and SDHM

Rainfall losses in HSPF are characterized by PERLND/PWATER parameters and IMPLND parameters, which describe processes occurring when rainfall lands on pervious lands and impervious lands, respectively. "BASINS Technical Notice 6, Estimating Hydrology and Hydraulic Parameters for HSPF," prepared by the USEPA, dated July 2000, provides details regarding these parameters and summary tables of possible ranges of these parameters. Table G.1-2, excerpted from the above-mentioned document, presents the ranges of these parameters.

For HSPF studies for hydromodification management in San Diego, PERLND/PWATER parameters and IMPLND parameters shall fall within the "possible" range provided in EPA Technical Note 6. To select specific parameters, HSPF users may use the parameters established for development of the San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator, and/or the parameters that have been established for SDHM. Parameters for the San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator and SDHM are based on research conducted specifically for HSPF modeling in San Diego.

Documentation of parameters selected for the San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator is presented in the document titled, San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology, prepared by Brown and Caldwell, dated January 2012 (herein "BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology"). The PERLND/PWATER parameters selected for development of the San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator represent a single composite pervious land cover that is representative of most pre-development conditions for sites that would commonly be managed by the BMP Sizing Calculator. The parameters shown below in Table G.1-3 are excerpted from the BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Table G.1-2: HSPF PERLND/PWATER and IMPLND Parameters from EPA Technical Note 6

			Range of Values					
Name	Definition	Units	Typical		Possible		Function of ...	Comment
			Min	Max	Min	Max		
PWAT – PARM2								
FOREST	Fraction forest cover	none	0.0	0.50	0.0	0.95	Forest cover	Only impact when SNOW is active
LZSN	Lower Zone Nominal Soil Moisture Storage	inches	3.0	8.0	2.0	15.0	Soils, climate	**Calibration**
INFILT	Index to Infiltration Capacity	in/hr	0.01	0.25	0.001	0.50	Soils, land use	**Calibration**, divides surface and subsurface flow
LSUR	Length of overland flow	feet	200	500	100	700	Topography	Estimate from high resolution topo maps or GIS
SLSUR	Slope of overland flow plane	ft/ft	0.01	0.15	0.001	0.30	Topography	Estimate from high resolution topo maps or GIS
KVARY	Variable groundwater recession	1/inches	0.0	3.0	0.0	5.0	Baseflow recession variation	Used when recession rate varies with GW levels
AGWRC	Base groundwater recession	none	0.92	0.99	0.85	0.999	Baseflow recession	**Calibration**
PWAT – PARM3								
PETMAX	Temp below which ET is reduced	deg. F	35.0	45.0	32.0	48.0	Climate, vegetation	Reduces ET near freezing, when SNOW is active
PETMIN	Temp below which ET is set to zero	deg. F	30.0	35.0	30.0	40.0	Climate, vegetation	Reduces ET near freezing, when SNOW is active
INFEXP	Exponent in infiltration equation	none	2.0	2.0	1.0	3.0	Soils variability	Usually default to 2.0
INFILD	Ratio of max/mean infiltration capacities	none	2.0	2.0	1.0	3.0	Soils variability	Usually default to 2.0
DEEPFR	Fraction of GW inflow to deep recharge	none	0.0	0.20	0.0	0.50	Geology, GW recharge	Accounts for subsurface losses
BASETP	Fraction of remaining ET from baseflow	none	0.0	0.05	0.0	0.20	Riparian vegetation	Direct ET from riparian vegetation
AGWETP	Fraction of remaining ET from active GW	none	0.0	0.05	0.0	0.20	Marsh/wetlands extent	Direct ET from shallow GW
PWAT – PARM4								
CEPSC	Interception storage capacity	inches	0.03	0.20	0.01	0.40	Vegetation type/density, land use	Monthly values usually used
UZSN	Upper zone nominal soil moisture storage	inches	0.10	1.0	0.05	2.0	Surface soil conditions, land use	Accounts for near surface retention
NSUR	Manning's n (roughness) for overland flow	none	0.15	0.35	0.05	0.50	Surface conditions, residue, etc.	Monthly values often used for croplands
INTFW	Interflow inflow parameter	none	1.0	3.0	1.0	10.0	Soils, topography, land use	**Calibration**, based on hydrograph separation
IRC	Interflow recession parameter	none	0.5	0.70	0.30	0.85	Soils, topography, land use	Often start with a value of 0.7, and then adjust
LZETP	Lower zone ET parameter	none	0.2	0.70	0.1	0.9	Vegetation type/density, root depth	**Calibration**
IWAT – PARM2								
LSUR	Length of overland flow	feet	50	150	50	250	Topography, drainage system	Estimate from maps, GIS, or field survey
SLSUR	Slope of overland flow plane	ft/ft	0.01	0.05	0.001	0.15	Topography, drainage	Estimate from maps, GIS, or field survey
NSUR	Manning's n (roughness) for overland flow	none	0.03	0.10	0.01	0.15	Impervious surface conditions	Typical range is 0.05 to 0.10 for roads/parking lots
RETSC	Retention storage capacity	inches	0.03	0.10	0.01	0.30	Impervious surface conditions	Typical range is 0.03 to 0.10 for roads/parking lots
IWAT – PARM3 (PETMAX and PETMIN, same values as shown for PWAT – PARM3)								

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Table G.1-3: HSPF PERLND/PWATER Parameters from BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology

		Hydrologic Soil Group A			Hydrologic Soil Group B			Hydrologic Soil Group C			Hydrologic Soil Group D		
	Slope	5%	10%	15%	5%	10%	15%	5%	10%	15%	5%	10%	15%
PWAT_PARM2	Units												
FOREST	None	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
LZSN	inches	5.2	4.8	4.5	5.0	4.7	4.4	4.8	4.5	4.2	4.8	4.5	4.2
INFILT	in/hr	0.090	0.070	0.045	0.070	0.055	0.040	0.050	0.040	0.032	0.040	0.030	0.020
LSUR	Feet	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200
SLSUR	ft/ft	0.05	0.1	0.15	0.05	0.1	0.15	0.05	0.1	0.15	0.05	0.1	0.15
KVARY	1/inches	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
AGWRC	None	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92
PWAT_PARM3													
PETMAX (F)	F	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35
PETMIN (F)	F	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30
INFEXP	None	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
INFILD	None	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
DEEPFR	None	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4
BASETP	None	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05
AGEWTP	None	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05
PWAT_PARM4													
CEPSC	inches	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08
UZSN	inches	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6
NSUR	None	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2
INTFW	None	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
IRC	None	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7
LZETP	None	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5

Parameters within SDHM are documented in "San Diego Hydrology Model User Manual," prepared by Clear Creek Solutions, Inc. (as of the development of the Manual, the current version of the SDHM User Manual is dated January 2012). Parameters established for SDHM represent "grass" (non-turf grasslands), "dirt," "gravel," and "urban" cover. The documented PERLND and IMPLND parameters for the various land covers and soil types have been pre-loaded into SDHM. SDHM users shall use the parameters that have been pre-loaded into the program without modification unless the preparer can provide documentation to substantiate use of other parameters.

G.1.4.2 Rainfall Loss Parameters for SWMM

In SWMM, rainfall loss parameters (parameters that describe processes occurring when rainfall lands on pervious lands and impervious lands) are entered in the "subcatchment" module. In addition to specifying parameters, the SWMM user must also select an infiltration model.

The SWMM Manual provides details regarding the subcatchment parameters and summary tables of possible ranges of these parameters. For SWMM studies for hydromodification management in San Diego, subcatchment parameters shall fall within the range provided in the SWMM Manual. Some of the parameters depend on the selection of the infiltration model. For consistency across the San Diego region, SWMM users shall use the Green-Ampt infiltration model for hydromodification management studies. Table G.1-4 presents SWMM subcatchment parameters for use in hydromodification management studies in the San Diego region.

Table G.1-4: Subcatchment Parameters for SWMM Studies for Hydromodification Management in San Diego

SWMM Parameter Name	Unit	Range	Use in San Diego
Name X-Coordinate Y-Coordinate Description Tag Rain Gage Outlet	N/A	N/A – project-specific	Project-specific
Area	acres (ac)	Project-specific	Project-specific
Width	feet (ft)	Project-specific	Project-specific
% Slope	percent (%)	Project-specific	Project-specific
% Imperv	percent (%)	Project-specific	Project-specific
N-imperv	--	0.011 – 0.024 presented in Table A.6 of SWMM Manual	default use 0.012 for smooth concrete, otherwise provide documentation of other surface consistent with Table A.6 of SWMM Manual
N-Perv	--	0.05 – 0.80 presented in Table A.6 of SWMM Manual	default use 0.15 for short prairie grass, otherwise provide documentation of other surface consistent with Table A.6 of SWMM Manual
Dstore-Imperv	inches	0.05 – 0.10 inches presented in Table A.5 of SWMM Manual	0.05
Dstore-Perv	inches	0.10 – 0.30 inches presented in Table A.5 of SWMM Manual	0.10
%ZeroImperv	percent (%)	0% – 100%	25%
Subarea routing	--	OUTLET IMPERVIOUS PERVIOUS	Project-specific, typically OUTLET
Percent Routed	%	0% – 100%	Project-specific, typically 100%
Infiltration	Method	HORTON GREEN_AMPT CURVE_NUMBER	GREEN_AMPT

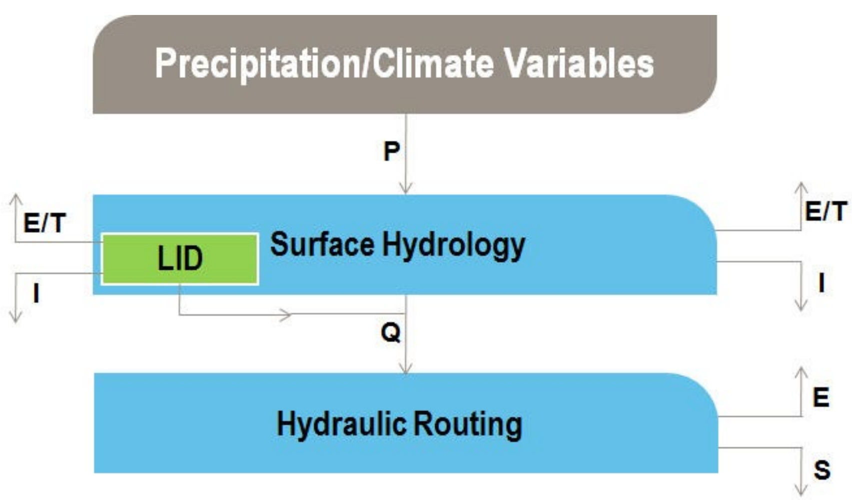
SWMM Parameter Name	Unit	Range	Use in San Diego
Suction Head (Green-Ampt)	Inches	1.93 – 12.60 presented in Table A.2 of SWMM Manual	Hydrologic Soil Group A: 1.5 Hydrologic Soil Group B: 3.0 Hydrologic Soil Group C: 6.0 Hydrologic Soil Group D: 9.0
Conductivity (Green-Ampt)	Inches per hour	0.01 – 4.74 presented in Table A.2 of SWMM Manual by soil texture class 0.00 – ≥0.45 presented in Table A.3 of SWMM Manual by hydrologic soil group	Hydrologic Soil Group A: 0.3 Hydrologic Soil Group B: 0.2 Hydrologic Soil Group C: 0.1 Hydrologic Soil Group D: 0.025 Note: reduce conductivity by 25% in the post-project condition when native soils will be compacted. Conductivity may also be reduced by 25% in the pre-development condition model for redevelopment areas that are currently concrete or asphalt but must be modeled according to their underlying soil characteristics. For fill soils in post-project condition, see Section G.1.4.3.
Initial Deficit (Green-Ampt)		The difference between soil porosity and initial moisture content. Based on the values provided in Table A.2 of SWMM Manual, the range for completely dry soil would be 0.097 to 0.375	Hydrologic Soil Group A: 0.33 Hydrologic Soil Group B: 0.32 Hydrologic Soil Group C: 0.31 Hydrologic Soil Group D: 0.30 Note: in long-term continuous simulation, this value is not important as the soil will reach equilibrium after a few storm events regardless of the initial moisture content specified.
Groundwater	yes/no	yes/no	NO
LID Controls			Project Specific

SWMM Parameter Name	Unit	Range	Use in San Diego
Snow Pack Land Uses Initial Buildup Curb Length			Not applicable to hydromodification management studies

A schematic of the basic SWMM setup for hydromodification management studies is shown below, with the LID module is shown as a feature within the hydrology computational block. Surface water hydrology is distinguished from groundwater, however the groundwater module is not typically used in hydromodification management studies.

The rainfall and climatology input time series data are used to generate surface runoff which in turn is hydraulically routed through the collection system and storage/treatment facilities. The figure includes the following terms in the water balance equation:

- P = Precipitation
- E/T = Evaporation / Transpiration
- I/S = Infiltration / Seepage
- Q = Runoff



Evapotranspiration was previously addressed above; the remainder of this section discusses the other hydrologic losses and parameters.

Soil and Infiltration Parameters

Of the infiltration options available in SWMM, the Green-Ampt equation can best handle variable water content conditions in the shallow soil layers beneath the ground surface, which is critical for long-term continuous simulation of surface water hydrology. The Green-Ampt parameters suggested in Table G.1-4 are referenced according to hydrologic soil group. Green-Ampt parameters can also be determined by relating infiltration parameters to soil texture properties, as identified by in-situ geotechnical analysis results or published County soil survey information. Infiltration parameters include:

- Capillary Tension (Suction Head): a measure of how tightly water is held within the soil pore space;
- Saturated Hydraulic Conductivity: a measure of how quickly the water can be drained vertically; and
- Initial Moisture Deficit: a measure of the initial soilwater deficit, also known as porosity (i.e., the volumetric fraction of water within the soil pore space under initially dry conditions).

Note that when SWMM is used without the Groundwater module, there is no distinction between the upper and lower zone soil moisture storage as in HSPF/SDHM. The LID module does however distinguish several layers/zones within each facility, and these are described below.

Overland Flow Parameters

Overland flow parameters describe the slope and length characteristics of shallow surface runoff. These are determined by identifying representative overland flow paths for each subcatchment using available digital topographic data for pre-development conditions and the proposed grading plan for post-project conditions. Overland flow path lengths and slopes are measured directly from the available information. Generally, overland flow paths should be less than 1,000 feet in length, otherwise channelized flow is likely present and should be modeled hydraulically. Overland flow path widths are determined based on the subcatchment area divided by the corresponding flow path length for each subcatchment.

Although Surface Storage is not depicted in SWMM schematic, it is a component of the water balance equation and includes excess runoff that is held in both hydrologic depression storage and hydraulic storage units.

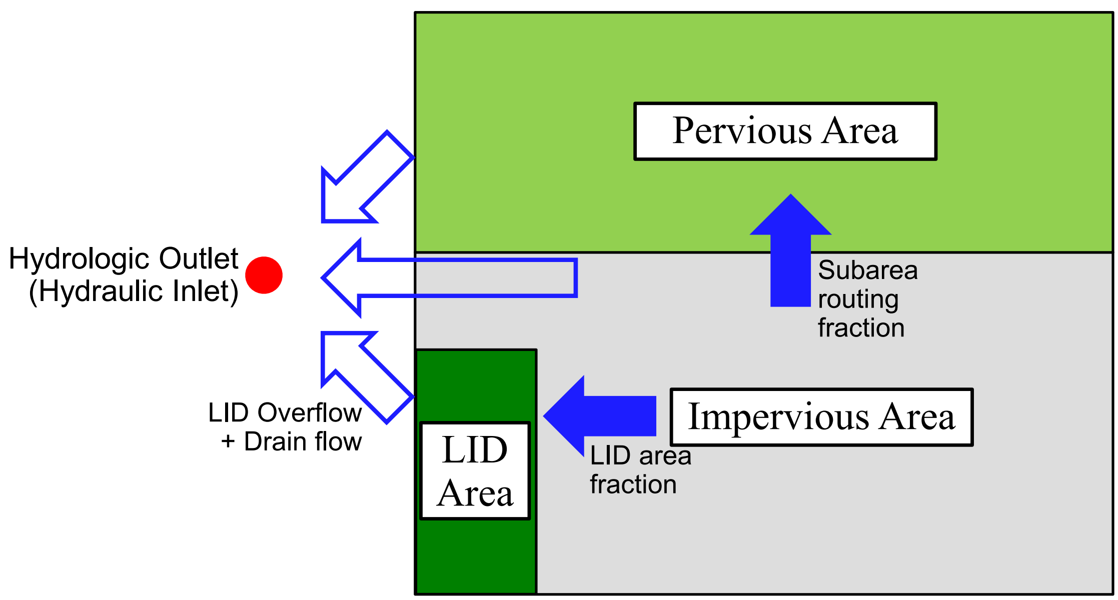
LID Module

There are two approaches for representing LID facilities in SWMM:

- **Modeling Approach No. 1:** Place LID controls within the appropriate subcatchment and then adjust parameters accordingly to reflect untreated areas within the parent subcatchment; and

- **Modeling Approach No. 2:** Create a new subcatchment for each LID control, allowing "run-on" from the treated portion of the parent subcatchment.

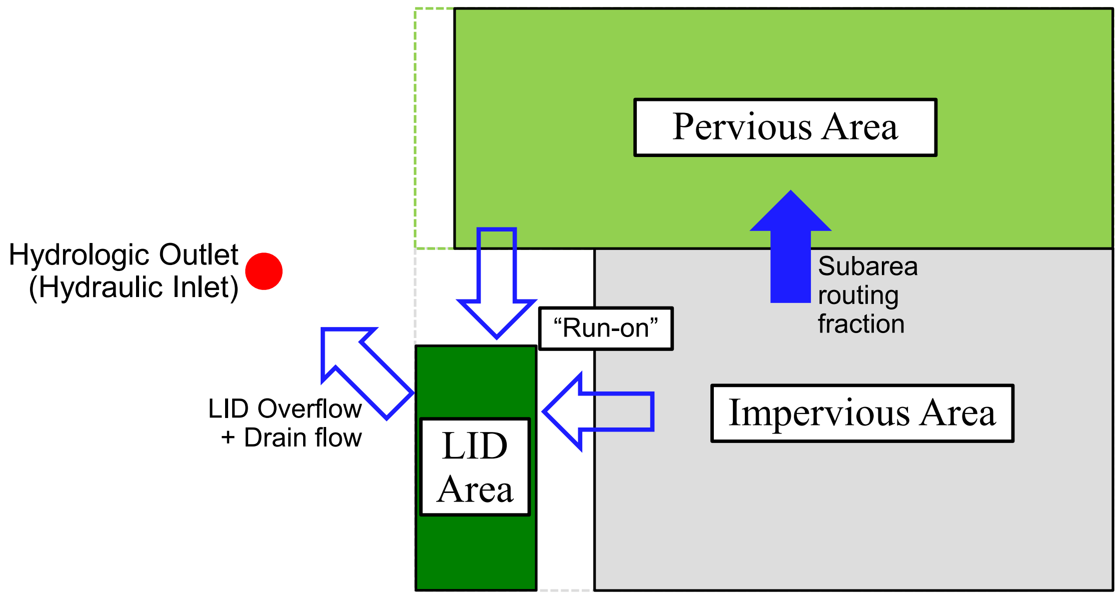
Modeling Approach No.1 schematic is presented below. As described above, a portion of the impervious subarea from a given subcatchment can be routed onto the pervious area for infiltration (see arrow denoting subarea routing fraction). When the LID module of SWMM is used, the portion of the impervious area that is captured and treated by a LID facility is specified (see arrow denoting LID area fraction). The remaining impervious area, if any, is routed directly to the outlet.



Modeling Approach No. 1 (LID within Parent Subcatchment)

The first approach is the easiest of the two for representing LID facilities in SWMM, as it allows a mix of controls to be placed within an existing subcatchment and each facility can capture and treat a different portion of the runoff generated from the parent subcatchment (i.e., outside of the LID footprint). A drawback of this approach is that it will not appropriately represent LID facilities in series (i.e., where the outflow from one LID control becomes the inflow to another LID control). No adjustments to the parent subcatchment hydrology parameters are needed if the cumulative LID area is small in comparison to the subcatchment area. However when the cumulative LID area is significant (e.g., greater than 10% of the subcatchment), at a minimum, the imperviousness and overland flow width values will need to be adjusted to compensate for the parent subcatchment area that was replaced with the cumulative LID footprint area.

Modeling Approach No.2 schematic is presented below. In this approach the LID facility is assigned to a new subcatchment and runoff from upstream subcatchments can be directed to this new subcatchment (i.e., "run-on"). In this way, LID controls can be modeled in series. Adjustments to the imperviousness and overland flow width values in the parent subcatchment will need to be made. For typical development or redevelopment sites that are evaluated in hydromodification management studies, LID capture areas often comprise a large portion of the parent subcatchments, and therefore this is the preferred approach.



Modeling Approach No. 2 (LID in New Subcatchment)

More details on the use and application of LID controls are provided in the SWMM Manual and program help file. Suggested parameter values for use with hydromodification management studies in Carlsbad are provided in Appendix G.1.5.

G.1.4.3 Pervious Area Rainfall Loss Parameters in Post-Project Condition (HSPF, SDHM, and SWMM)

The following guidance applies to HSPF, SDHM, and SWMM. When modeling pervious areas in the post-project condition, fill soils shall be modeled as hydrologic soil group Type D soils, or the project applicant may provide an actual expected infiltration rate for the fill soil based on testing (must be approved by the City Engineer for use in the model). Where landscaped areas on fill soils will be re-tilled and/or amended in the post-project condition, the landscaped areas may be modeled as Type C soils. Areas to be re-tilled and/or amended in the post-project condition must be shown on the project plans. For undisturbed pervious areas (i.e., native soils, no fill), use the actual hydrologic soil group, the same as in the pre-development condition.

G.1.5 MODELING STRUCTURAL BMPS (PONDS AND LID FEATURES)

There are many ways to model structural BMPs. There are standard modules for several pond or LID elements included in SDHM and SWMM. Users may also set up project-specific stage-storage-discharge relationships representing structural BMPs. Regardless of the modeling method, certain characteristics of the structural BMP, including infiltration of water from the bottom of the structural BMP into native soils, porosity of bioretention soils and/or gravel sublayers, and other program-specific parameters must be consistent with those presented below, unless the preparer can provide documentation to substantiate use of other parameters, subject to local jurisdiction approval. The geometry of structural BMPs is project-specific and shall match the project plans.

G.1.5.1 Infiltration into Native Soils Below Structural BMPs

Infiltration into native soils below structural BMPs may be modeled as a constant outflow rate equal to the project site-specific design infiltration rate (Worksheet K-9) multiplied by the area of the infiltrating surface (and converted to cubic feet per second). This infiltration rate is not the same as an infiltration parameter used in the calculation of rainfall losses, such as the HSPF INFILT parameter or the Green-Ampt conductivity parameter in the SWMM subcatchment module. It must be site-specific and must be determined based on the methods presented in Appendix D of this manual.

For preliminary analysis when site-specific geotechnical investigation has not been completed, project applicants proposing infiltration into native soils as part of the structural BMP design shall prepare a sensitivity analysis to determine a potential range for the structural BMP size based on a range of potential infiltration rates. As shown in Appendices D of this manual, many factors influence the ability to infiltrate storm water. Therefore even when soils types A and B are present, which are generally expected to infiltrate storm water, the possibility that a very low infiltration rate could be determined at design level must be considered. The range of potential infiltration rates for preliminary analysis is shown below in Table G.1-5.

Table G.1-5: Range of Potential Infiltration Rates to be Studied for Sensitivity Analysis when Native Infiltration is Proposed but Site-Specific Geotechnical Investigation has not been Completed

Hydrologic Soil Group at Location of Proposed Structural BMP	Low Infiltration Rate for Preliminary Study (inches/hour)	High Infiltration Rate for Preliminary Study (inches/hour)
A	0.02	2.4
B	0.02	0.52
C	0	0.08
D	0	0.02

The infiltration rates shown above are for preliminary investigation only. Final design of a structural BMP must be based on the project site-specific design infiltration rate (Worksheet K-9).

G.1.5.2 Structural BMPs That Do Not Include Sub-Layers (Ponds)

To model a pond, basin, or other depressed area that does not include processing runoff through sublayers of amended soil and/or gravel, create a stage storage discharge relationship for the pond, and supply the information to the model according to the program requirements. For HSPF users, the stage-storage-discharge relationship is provided in FTABLES. SDHM users may use the TRAPEZOIDAL POND element for a trapezoidal pond or IRREGULAR POND element to request the program to create the stage-storage-discharge relationship, use the SSD TABLE element to supply a user-created stage-storage-discharge relationship, or use other available modules such as TANK or VAULT. For SWMM users, the stage-storage relationship is supplied in the storage unit module, and the stage-discharge relationship may be represented by various other modules such as the orifice, weir, or outlet modules. Stage-storage and stage-discharge curves for structural BMPs must be fully documented in the project-specific HMP report and must be consistent with the structural BMP(s) shown on project plans.

For user-created stage-discharge relationships, refer to local drainage manual criteria for equations representing hydraulic behavior of outlet structures. Users relying on the software to develop the stage-discharge relationship may use the equations built into the program. This manual does not recommend that all program modules calculating stage-discharge relationships must be uniform because the flows to be controlled for hydromodification management are low flows, calculated differently from the single-storm event peak flows studied for flood control purposes, and hydromodification management performance standards do not represent any performance standard for flood control drainage design. Note that for design of emergency outlet structures, and any calculations related to single-storm event routing for flood control drainage design, stage-discharge calculations must be consistent with the local drainage design requirements. This may require separate calculations for stage-discharge relationship pursuant to local manuals. The HMP flow rates shall not be used for flood control calculations.

G.1.5.3 Structural BMPs That Include Sub-Layers (Bioretention and Other LID)

G.1.5.3.1 Characteristics of Bioretention Soil Media

The bioretention soil media used in bioretention, biofiltration with partial retention, and biofiltration structural BMPs is a sandy loam. The following parameters presented in Table G.1-6 are characteristics of a sandy loam for use in continuous simulation models.

Table G.1-6: Characteristics of Sandy Loam to Represent Bioretention Soil Media in Continuous Simulation for Hydromodification Management Studies in San Diego

Soil Texture	Porosity	Field Capacity	Wilting Point	Conductivity	Suction Head
Sandy Loam	0.4	0.2	0.1	5 inches/hour	1.5 inches

- Porosity is the volume of pore space (voids) relative to the total volume of soil (as a fraction).

- Field Capacity is the volume of pore water relative to total volume after the soil has been allowed to drain fully (as a fraction). Below this level, vertical drainage of water through the soil layer does not occur.

- Wilting point is the volume of pore water relative to total volume for a well dried soil where only bound water remains (as a fraction). The moisture content of the soil cannot fall below this limit.

- Conductivity is the hydraulic conductivity for the fully saturated soil (in/hr or mm/hr).

- Suction head is the average value of soil capillary suction along the wetting front (inches or mm).

Figures G.1-3 and G.1-4, from Stevens Water Monitoring Systems, Inc., illustrate unsaturated soil and soil saturation, field capacity, and wilting point.

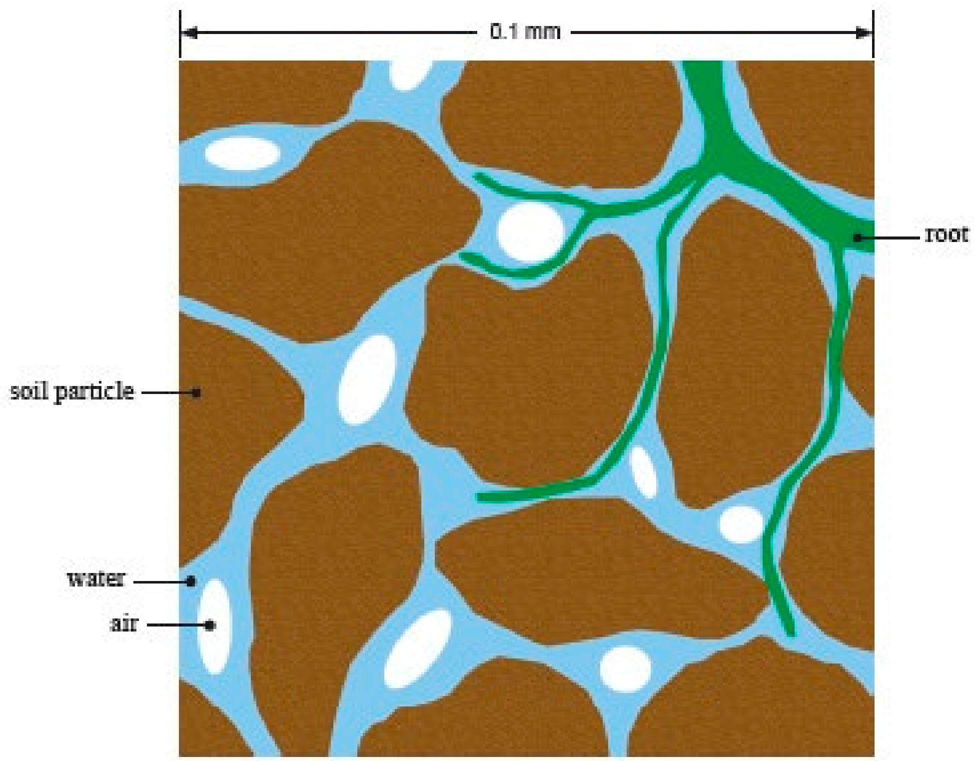


Figure G.1-3: Unsaturated Soil Composition

Unsaturated soil is composed of solid particles, organic material and pores. The pore space will contain air and water.

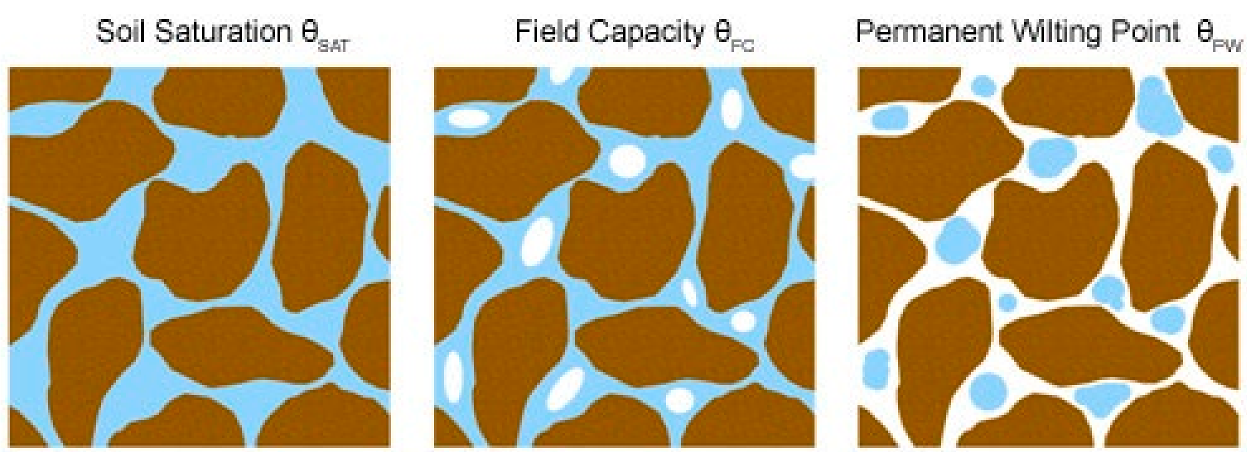


Figure G.1-4: Soil saturation, field capacity, and wilting point

G.1.5.3.2 Characteristics of Gravel

For the purpose of hydromodification management studies, it may be assumed that water moves freely through gravel, not limited by hydraulic properties of the gravel. For the purpose of calculating available volume, use porosity of 0.4, or void ratio of 0.67. Porosity is equal to void ratio divided by (1 + void ratio).

G.1.5.3.3 Additional Guidance for SDHM Users

The module titled "bioretention/rain garden element" may be used to represent bioretention or biofiltration BMPs. SDHM users using the available "bioretention/rain garden element" shall customize the soil media characteristics to use the parameters from Table G.1-6 above, and select "gravel" for gravel sublayers. All other input variables are project-specific. "Native infiltration" refers to infiltration from the bottom of the structural BMP into the native soil. This variable is project-specific, see Section G.1.5.1.

G.1.5.3.4 Additional Guidance for SWMM Users

The latest version of SWMM (version 5.1.012) includes the following eight types of LID controls:

- Bio-Retention Cell: surface storage facility with vegetation in an bioretention soil mixture placed above a gravel drainage bed.
- Rain Garden: same setup as bio-retention cell, but without an underlying gravel bed.
- Green Roof: bio-retention cell with shallow surface storage and soil layers, underlain by a drainage mat that conveys excess percolated rainfall to the regular roof drainage system.
- Infiltration Trench: drainage swale or narrow storage basin filled with gravel or other porous media designed to capture and infiltrate runoff to the native soil below.
- Permeable Pavement: continuous pavement systems with porous concrete, asphalt mix, or paver blocks above a sand or gravel drainage bed with gravel storage layer below.
- Rain Barrel: container (cistern) to collect roof runoff for later use (e.g., landscape irrigation) or release.
- Rooftop Disconnection: to simulate redirection of downspout discharge onto pervious landscaped areas and lawns instead of directly into storm drains.
- Vegetative Swale: grassed conveyance channel (drainage ditch or swale) with vegetation designed to slow down runoff to allow more time for infiltration into the native soil below.

The "bio-retention cell" LID control may be used to represent bioretention or biofiltration BMPs. For bio-retention cells, a number of LID process layers have been defined in SWMM and these are described below. Table G.1-7 provides parameters required for the standard "bio-retention cell" available in SWMM. The parameters are entered in the LID Control Editor.

Table G.1-7: Parameters for SWMM "Bio-Retention Cell" Module for Hydromodification Management Studies in San Diego

SWMM Parameter Name	Unit	Use in San Diego
Surface		
Berm Height also known as Storage Depth	inches	Project-specific
Vegetative Volume Fraction also known as Vegetative Cover Fraction	---	0
Surface Roughness	---	0 (this parameter is not applicable to bio-retention cell)
Surface Slope	---	0 (this parameter is not applicable to bio-retention cell)
Soil		
Thickness	inches	project-specific
Porosity	---	0.40
Field Capacity	---	0.2
Wilting Point	---	0.1
Conductivity	Inches/hour	5
Conductivity Slope	---	5
Suction Head	inches	1.5
Storage		
Thickness also known as Height	inches	Project-specific
Void Ratio	---	0.67
Seepage Rate also known as Conductivity	Inches/hour	Conductivity from the storage layer refers to infiltration from the bottom of the structural BMP into the native soil. This variable is project-specific, see Section G.5.1. Use 0 if the bio-retention cell includes an impermeable liner
Clogging Factor	---	0
Underdrain		
Flow Coefficient Also known as Drain Coefficient	---	Project-specific
Flow Exponent Also known as Drain Exponent	---	Project-specific, typically 0.5
Offset Height Also known as Drain Offset Height	Inches	Project-specific

Surface Layer

This process layer receives direct rainfall (and run-on from upstream subcatchments) and the resultant storm water is available for ponding, infiltration, evapotranspiration, or overflow to the outlet. The following parameters are used:

- Berm Height: This value is the maximum depth that water can pond above the ground surface before overflow occurs. In some cases, this volume may overlap with the hydraulic representation of existing surface storage or another proposed BMP facility. In any case, the user must avoid double-counting the physical storage volume.
- Vegetation Volume Fraction: This represents the surface storage volume that is occupied by the stems and leaves of vegetation within the bio-retention cell.

Soil Layer

This process layer is typically composed of an amended soil or compost mix. Water that infiltrates into this component is stored in the soil void space and is available for evapotranspiration via plant roots or can percolate into the storage layer below. The following parameters are used:

- Thickness: This parameter represents the depth of the amended soil layer.
- Porosity: Ratio of pore space volume to soil volume.
- Field Capacity: Pore water volume ratio after the soil has been drained.
- Wilting Point: Pore water volume ratio after the soil has been dried.
- Conductivity: This represents the saturated hydraulic conductivity.
- Conductivity Slope: Rate at which conductivity decreases with decreasing soil moisture content.
- Suction Head: This represents the capillary tension of water in the soil.

Porosity, conductivity and suction head values as a function of soil texture were included in Table G.1-5. The flow of water through partially saturated soil is less than under fully saturated conditions. The SWMM program accounts for this reduced hydraulic conductivity to predict the rate at which infiltrated water moves through a layer of unsaturated soil when modeling groundwater or LID controls. The conductivity slope is a dimensionless curve-fitting parameter that relates the partially saturated hydraulic conductivity to the soil moisture content.

Storage Layer

This process layer is typically composed of porous granular media such as crushed stone or gravel. Water that percolates into this component is stored in the void space and is available for infiltration into the native soil, or collected by an underdrain and discharged to the outlet. The following parameters are used:

- Thickness: This parameter represents the depth of the stone base.
- Void Ratio: Volume of void space relative to volume of solids. Note, by definition, Porosity = Void Ratio ÷ (1 + Void Ratio).
- Seepage Rate: Filtration rate from the granular media into the native soil below. A value of zero should be used if the facility has an impermeable bottom (e.g., concrete) or is underlain by an impermeable liner.
- Clogging Factor: This value is determined by the total volume of treated runoff to completely clog the bottom of the layer divided by the void volume of the layer.

Drain Layer

This process layer is used to characterize the discharge rate of an underdrain system to the outlet. The following parameters are used:

Flow Coefficient: This value (coupled with the flow exponent described below) characterizes the rate of discharge to the outlet as a function of the height of water stored in the bio-retention cell. The coefficient can be determined by the following equation:

$$C = c_g\left(\frac{605}{A_{LID}}\right)\left(\frac{\pi D^2}{8}\right)\sqrt{\frac{g}{6}}$$

where,

cg is the orifice discharge coefficient, typically 0.60-0.65 for thin walled plates and higher for thicker walls;
A_{LID} is the cumulative footprint area (ft^2) of all LID controls;
D is the underdrain orifice diameter (in); and
g is the gravitational constant (32.2 ft/s^2).

- Flow Exponent: A value of 0.5 should be used to represent flow through an orifice.

Offset Height: This represents the height of the underdrain above the bottom of the storage layer in the bio-retention cell.

G.1.6 FLOW FREQUENCY AND DURATION

The continuous simulation model will generate a flow record corresponding to the frequency of the rainfall data input as its output. This flow record must then be processed to determine pre-development and post-project flow rates and durations. Compliance with hydromodification management requirements of this manual is achieved when results for flow duration meet the performance standards. The performance standard is as follows (also presented in Chapter 6 of this manual):

1. For flow rates ranging from 10 percent, 30 percent or 50 percent of the pre-development 2-year runoff event ($0.1Q_2$, $0.3Q_2$, or $0.5Q_2$) to the pre-development 10-year runoff event (Q_{10}), the post-project discharge rates and durations must not exceed the pre-development rates and durations by more than 10 percent. The specific lower flow threshold will depend on the erosion susceptibility of the receiving stream for the project site (see Section 6.3.4).

To demonstrate that a flow control facility meets the hydromodification management performance standard, first pre-development Q_2 and Q_{10} must be identified, then a flow duration summary must be generated and compared for pre-development and post-project conditions between the appropriate fraction of Q_2 to Q_{10}. The range from a fraction of Q_2 to Q_{10} represents the range of geomorphically significant flows for hydromodification management in Carlsbad. The upper bound of the range of flows to control is pre-development Q_{10} for all projects. The lower bound of the range of flows to control, or "lower flow threshold" is a fraction of pre-development Q_2 that is based on the erosion susceptibility of the stream and depends on the specific natural system (stream) that a project will discharge to. Tools have been developed in the March 2011 Final HMP for assessing the erosion susceptibility of the stream (see Section 6.3.4). Simply multiply the pre-development Q_2 by the appropriate fraction (e.g., $0.1Q_2$) to determine the lower flow threshold.

The following guidelines shall be used for determining flow rates and durations.

G.1.6.1 Determining Flow Rates

In the context of hydromodification management in Carlsbad, Q_2 and Q_{10} refer to flow rates determined based on either continuous simulation hydrologic modeling or an approved regression equation. Either method may be applied, provided that the same methodology be applied to determination of both Q_2 and Q_{10} (i.e. cannot mix and match methods at a POC) and be consistent across all POCs for the project (i.e. cannot mix and match methods between multiple POCs).

G.1.6.1.1 Determining Flow Rates from Regression Equation

The following approved regression equation may be used to determine pre-development Q_2 and Q_{10}:

$$Q_2 = 3.60 \times A^{0.672} \times P^{0.753}$$

$$Q_{10} = 6.56 \times A^{0.783} \times P^{1.07}$$

where:

Q_2 = 2-year recurrence interval discharge in cubic feet per second

Q_{10} = 10-year recurrence interval discharge in cubic feet per second

A = Drainage area in square miles

P = Mean annual precipitation in inches (Refer to Table 6-1)

TABLE G.1-8. Mean Annual Precipitation

Gage	Latitude	Longitude	Mean Annual Precipitation (inches)
Oceanside	33.2105556	-117.353333	12.29
Encinitas	33.044567	-117.277213	10.73

G.1.6.1.2 Determining Flow Rates from Continuous Hourly Flow Output

Flow rates for hydromodification management studies in Carlsbad must be based on partial duration series analysis of the continuous hourly flow output. Partial duration series frequency calculations consider multiple storm events in a given year. To construct the partial duration series:

1. Parse the continuous hourly flow data into discrete runoff events. The following separation criteria may be used for separation of flow events: a new discrete event is designated when the flow falls below an artificially low flow value based on a fraction of the contributing watershed area (e.g., 0.002 to 0.005 cfs/acre) for a time period of 24 hours. Project applicants may consider other separation criteria provided the separation interval is not more than 24 hours and the criteria is clearly described in the submittal document.
2. Rank the peak flows from each discrete flow event, and compute the return interval or plotting position for each event.

Readers who are unfamiliar with how to compute the partial-duration series should consult reference books or online resources for additional information. For example, Hydrology for Engineers, by Linsley et all, 1982, discusses partial-duration series on pages 373-374 and computing recurrence intervals or plotting positions on page 359. Handbook of Applied Hydrology, by Chow, 1964, contains a detailed discussion of flow frequency analysis, including Annual Exceedance, Partial-Duration and Extreme Value series methods, in Chapter 8. The US Geological Survey (USGS) has several hydrologic study reports available online that use partial duration series statistics (see http://water.usgs.gov/ and http://water.usgs.gov/osw/bulletin17b/AGU_Langbein_1949.pdf).

Pre-development Q_2 and Q_{10} shall be determined from the partial duration analysis for the pre-development hourly flow record. Pre-development Q_{10} is the upper threshold of flow rates to be controlled in the post-project condition. The lower flow threshold is a fraction of the pre-development Q_2 determined based on the erosion susceptibility of the receiving stream. Simply multiply the pre-development Q_2 by the appropriate fraction (e.g., $0.1Q_2$) to determine the lower flow threshold.

G.1.6.2 Determining Flow Durations from Continuous Hourly Flow Output

Flow durations must also be summarized within the range of flows to control. Flow duration statistics provide a simple summary of how often a particular flow rate is exceeded. To prepare this summary:

1. Rank the entire hourly runoff time series output.
2. Extract the portion of the ranked hourly time series output from the lower flow threshold to the upper flow threshold – this is the portion of the record to be summarized.
3. Divide the applicable portion of the record into 100 equal flow bins (compute the difference between the upper flow threshold (cfs) and lower flow threshold (cfs) and divide this value by 99 to establish the flow bin size).
4. Count the number of hours of flow that fall into each flow bin.

Both pre-development and post-project flow duration summary must be based on the entire length of the flow record. Compare the post-project flow duration summary to the pre-development flow duration summary to determine if it meets performance criteria for post-project flow rates and durations (criteria presented under Section G.1.6).

G.2 Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Management BMPs

This section presents sizing factors for design of flow control structural BMPs based on the sizing factor method identified in Chapter 6.3.5.1. The sizing factors included here have been updated based on the requirements in the 2015 MS4 permit and are different than the sizing factors presented in previous manuals. These updated values replace the previous sizing factors which shall no longer be used for sizing of hydromodification flow control BMPs. A discussion of the rationale for the update is included below.

The sizing factors included in previous edition was re-printed from the "San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology," dated January 2012, prepared by Brown and Caldwell (herein "BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology"). These sizing factors were linked to the specific details and descriptions that were presented in the BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology, which included certain assumptions and limited options for modifications. The sizing factors were developed based on the 2007 MS4 Permit. Some of the original sizing factors developed based on the 2007 MS4 Permit and presented in the BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology were not compatible with new requirements of the 2015 MS4 Permit, and therefore were not included in the February 2016 manual. Since publishing the 2016 Model Manual, the Copermittees have developed updated hydromodification factors that more accurately represent the BMP configurations specified in this model manual and account for the revised flow-duration performance standard of the 2015 MS4 Permit (110% exceedance allowance for entire flow-duration curve).

The updated sizing factors were generated using continuous simulation models in USEPA SWMM in accordance with the procedures, methodologies, and values presented in Appendix G.1. All sizing factors are in relation to the effective impervious area draining to the BMP.

The sizing factor method is intended for simple studies that do not include diversion, do not include significant offsite area draining through the project from upstream, and do not include offsite area downstream of the project area. Use of the sizing factors is limited to the specific structural BMPs described in this Appendix. When using the sizing factor methodology, the area fraction reported in the sizing tables represents the plan view area at the surface of the BMP before any ponding occurs. The BMP footprint as defined by this methodology is depicted in Figure G.2-1.

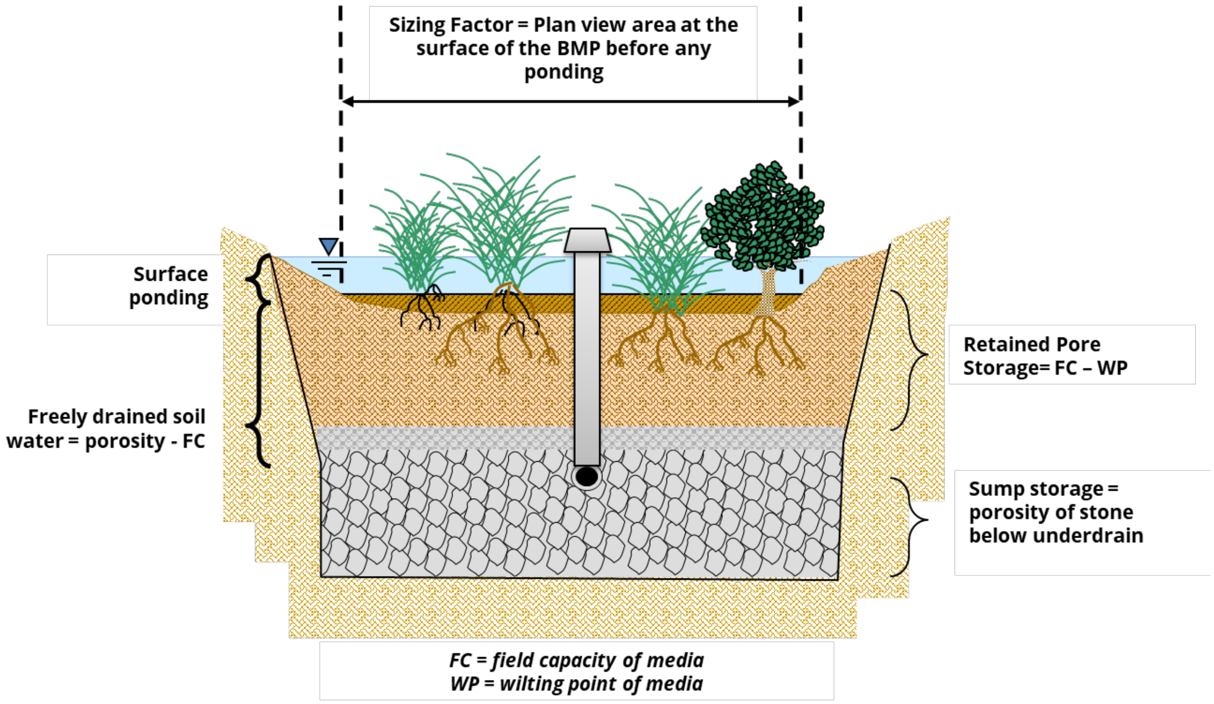


Figure G.2-1: Representation of BMP Footprint for use of Sizing Factors

Sizing factors are available for the following specific structural BMPs:

- **Full infiltration condition:**
  - **Infiltration**: Sizing factors available for A, B, C, and D soils represent surface and/or below-ground structures (infiltration vaults).
- **Partial infiltration condition:**
  - **Biofiltration with partial retention**: Sizing factors available for A, B, C, and D soils represent a bioretention area with bioretention soil media and gravel storage layer, with an underdrain, with gravel storage below the underdrain and a flow control orifice, with no impermeable liner.
- **No infiltration condition:**
  - **Biofiltration**: Sizing factors available for A, B, C, and D soils represent a biofiltration system with bioretention soil media and gravel storage layer, with an underdrain and flow control orifice, with gravel storage, with an impermeable liner (formerly known as flow-through planter and/or biofiltration with impermeable liner)
- **Other:**
  - **Cistern**: Sizing factors available for A, B, C, or D soils represent a vessel with a flow

control orifice outlet to meet the hydromodification management performance standard. For this BMP, the sizing factor result is a volume in cubic feet, not a surface footprint in square feet.

Sizing factors were created based on three rainfall basins: Lindbergh Field, Oceanside, and Lake Wohlford. Projects in Carlsbad will utilize Oceanside sizing factors.

The following information is needed to use the sizing factors:

- Determine the appropriate rainfall basin for the project site from Figure G.2-2, Rainfall Basin Map
- Hydrologic soil group at the project site (use available information pertaining to existing underlying soil type such as soil maps published by the Natural Resources Conservation Service)
- Pre-development and pre-project slope categories (flat = 0% – 5%, moderate = 5% – 10%, steep = >10%)
- Area tributary to the structural BMP
- Area weighted runoff factor (C) for the area draining to the BMP from Table G.2-1. Note: runoff coefficients and adjustments presented in Appendices B.1 are for pollutant control only and are not applicable for hydromodification management studies
- Fraction of Q_2 to control (see Chapter 6.3.4)[1]

When using the sizing factor method, Worksheet G.2-1 may be used to present the calculations of the required minimum areas and/or volumes of BMPs as applicable. Additionally, the "BMP Sizing Spreadsheet V3.0" available at projectcleanwater.org implements the sizing factor methodology.

[1] All updated sizing factors refer to the "High Susceptibility" threshold value of 0.1*Q2, where Q2 is determined using the Weibull Plotting position and results of the SWMM model runs for unit pervious catchments (refer to Table G.2-2).

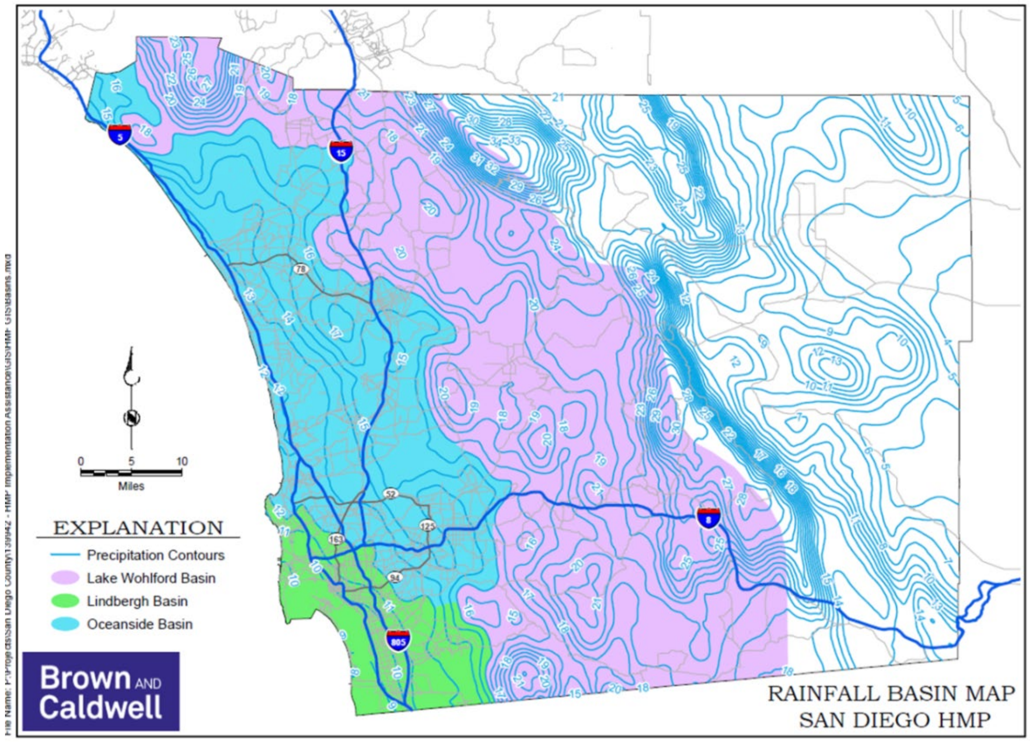


Figure G.2-2: Rainfall Basin Map

Table G.2-1: Runoff factors for surfaces draining to BMPs for Hydromodification Sizing Factors Method

Surface	Runoff Factor
Roofs	1.0
Concrete	1.0
Pervious Concrete	0.10
Porous Asphalt	0.10
Grouted Unit Pavers	1.0
Solid Unit Pavers on granular base, min. 3/16 inch joint space	0.20
Crushed Aggregate	0.10
Turf block	0.10
Amended, mulched soils	0.10
Landscape	0.10

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Worksheet G.2-1: Sizing Factor Worksheet

Site Information			
Project Name:		Hydrologic Unit	
Project Applicant:		Rain Gauge:	
Jurisdiction:		Total Project Area:	
Assessor's Parcel Number:		Low Flow Threshold:	$0.1Q_2$
BMP Name:		BMP Type:	

Areas Draining to BMP						Sizing Factors		Minimum BMP Size	
DMA Name	Area (sf)	Soil Type	Pre-Project Slope	Post-Project Surface Type	Runoff Factor (From Table G.2-1)	Surface Area	Volume	Surface Area (sf)	Volume (cf)
Total DMA Area							Minimum BMP Size*		
							Proposed BMP Size*		

*Minimum BMP Size = Total of rows above.

*Proposed BMP Size ≥ Minimum BMP size.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

G.2.1 Unit Runoff Ratios and Low Flow Control Orifice Design

G.2.1.1 Unit Runoff Ratios

Table G.2-2 presents unit runoff ratios for calculating pre-development Q_2, to be used when applicable to determine the lower flow threshold for low flow control orifice sizing for biofiltration with partial retention, biofiltration, or cistern BMPs. There is no low flow control orifice in the infiltration BMP. The unit runoff ratios are updated from the previously reported BMP Sizing Calculator methodology ratios to account for changes in modeling methodologies. Unit runoff ratios for "urban" and "impervious" cover categories were not transferred to this manual due to the requirement to control runoff to pre-development condition (see Chapter 6.3.3).

How to use the unit runoff ratios:

Obtain unit runoff ratio from Table G.2-2 based on the project's rainfall basin, hydrologic soil group, and pre-development slope (for redevelopment projects, pre-development slope may be considered if historic topographic information is available, otherwise use pre-project slope). Multiply the area tributary to the structural BMP (A, acres) by the unit runoff ratio (Q_2, cfs/acre) to determine the pre-development Q_2 to determine the lower flow threshold, to use for low flow control orifice sizing.

Table G.2-2: Unit Runoff Ratios for Sizing Factor Method

Rain Gauge	Soil	Pre-Project Slope	Q_2 (cfs/acre)	Q_{10} (cfs/acre)
Oceanside	A	Flat	0.256	0.679
Oceanside	A	Moderate	0.277	0.694
Oceanside	A	Steep	0.285	0.700
Oceanside	B	Flat	0.377	0.875
Oceanside	B	Moderate	0.391	0.879
Oceanside	B	Steep	0.395	0.881
Oceanside	C	Flat	0.488	0.981
Oceanside	C	Moderate	0.497	0.985
Oceanside	C	Steep	0.499	0.986
Oceanside	D	Flat	0.571	0.998
Oceanside	D	Moderate	0.575	0.999
Oceanside	D	Steep	0.576	0.999

G.2.1.2 Low Flow Control Orifice Design

When used as hydromodification flow control BMPs, biofiltration with partial retention, biofiltration, and cistern BMPs include a low flow control orifice to control the rate that flow is released from the underdrain or primary outlet. The sizing factors were developed using a standard process for sizing the low flow control orifice, therefore BMPs designed using the sizing factor method must size the low flow control orifice using the same basis. The low flow control orifice must be designed to release the lower flow threshold flow rate (fraction of pre-development Q_2) when the water surface elevation in the BMP is equal to the crest elevation of the next outflow structure. To size the low flow control orifice, determine the head on the orifice measured from the bottom of the orifice to the minimum elevation of the next outflow structure of the BMP. The next outflow structure is typically the BMP overflow structure, except in some multi-use BMPs (e.g., BMPs that are designed for flood control in addition to hydromodification management). In this application, the difference between the bottom of the orifice and the centroid of the orifice is small relative to the total head for the calculation and may be neglected in the calculation by measuring from the orifice invert. This calculation is automated in the "BMP Sizing Spreadsheet V3.0" or latest version, posted on www.projectcleanwater.org.

Steps to size the low flow control orifice:

- Determine pre-development Q_2 using the unit runoff ratios above.
- Multiply pre-development Q_2 by 0.1 to determine the low flow threshold flow rate. Note sizing factors are only available for streams with high susceptibility to erosion where the low flow threshold is $0.1Q_2$.
- Determine the head (H) on the orifice measured from the bottom of the orifice to the minimum elevation of the next outflow structure of the BMP.
- Use the orifice equation (below) and solve for the maximum orifice area to release the lower flow threshold flow rate.
- Consider how the orifice will be created. Determine the constructible dimension(s) (e.g., a standard drill bit diameter) that will produce an orifice with an area equal to or less than the maximum orifice area. The final orifice area determined based on constructible dimensions shall not exceed the maximum orifice area.

$$Q = C \times A \times (64.4\ x\ H)^{0.5}$$

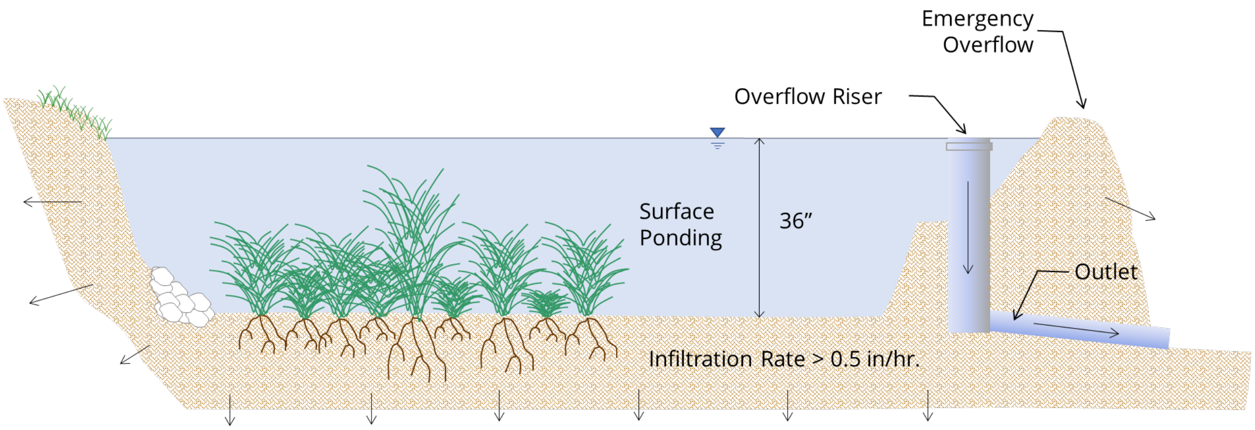
where:

Q	=	Flow rate in cubic feet per second
C	=	Orifice coefficient; in this application use C = 0.65
A	=	Area in square feet
H	=	Head in feet

G.2.2 Sizing Factors for "Infiltration" BMP

Table G.2-3 presents sizing factors for calculating the required surface area (A) for an infiltration BMP. There is no underdrain and therefore no low flow orifice in the infiltration BMP. Sizing factors were developed for hydrologic soil groups A B, C, and D. This BMP is generally not applicable in hydrologic soil groups C and D, but applicants have the option if there are no geotechnical or water balance issues and the underlying design infiltration rate for the BMP is greater than 0.5 inches per hour. The infiltration BMP is surface ponding feature that allows infiltration into the native or amended soils of the BMP surface.

- **Ponding layer:** a nominal 36-inch ponding layer shall be included below the overflow elevation.
- **Design infiltration rate:** the design infiltration rate shall be greater than 0.5 inches per hour.
- **Overflow structure:** San Diego Regional Standard Drawing Type I Catch Basin (D-29) or approved equal. For the purposes of hydromodification flow control, other types of overflow structures are allowed.



Infiltration BMP Example Illustration

How to use the sizing factors for flow control BMP Sizing:

Obtain sizing factors from Table G.2-3 based on the project's lower flow threshold fraction of Q_2, hydrologic soil group, pre-project slope, and rain gauge (rainfall basin). Multiply the area tributary to the structural BMP (A, square feet) by the area weighted runoff factor (C, unitless) (see Table G.2-1) by the sizing factors to determine the required surface area (A, square feet) for the infiltration BMP. The civil engineer shall provide the necessary surface area of the BMP on the plans.

Additional steps to use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP:

The BMP sized using the sizing factors in Table G.2-3 meets both pollutant control and flow control requirements.

Table G.2-3: Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Infiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method

Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Pre-Project Slope	Rain Gauge	A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	0.060
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	0.060
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	0.060
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	0.050
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	0.050
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	0.050
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	0.050
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	0.050
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	0.045
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	0.035
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	0.035
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	0.035

Q_2 = 2-year pre-project flow rate based upon partial duration analysis of long-term hourly rainfall records

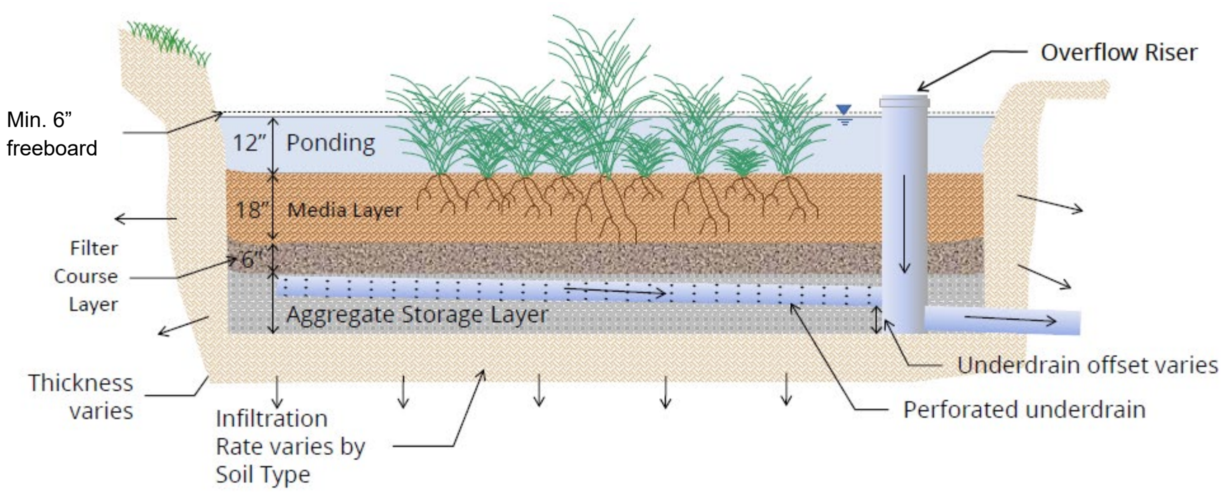
A = Surface area (at surface of the BMP before any ponding occurs) sizing factor for flow control

G.2.3 Sizing Factors for Biofiltration with Partial Retention

Table G.2-4 presents sizing factors for calculating the required surface area (A) for a biofiltration with partial retention BMP. The BMPs consist of four layers:

- **Ponding layer:** 12-inches active storage, minimum 6-inches of freeboard above overflow relief
- **Media Layer:** 18-inches of soil bioretention soil media
- **Filter Course:** 6-inches
- **Storage layer:** 18-inches of gravel at 40 percent porosity for A and B soils and 12-inches of gravel at 40 percent porosity for C and D soils. The underdrain offset for A and B soils shall be 18-inches, for C soils it shall be 6-inches and for D soils it shall be 3-inches.
- **Overflow structure:** San Diego Regional Standard Drawing Type I Catch Basin (D-29) or approved equal. For the purposes of hydromodification flow control other type of overflow structures are allowed.

This BMP does not include an impermeable layer at the bottom of the facility to prevent infiltration into underlying soils, regardless of hydrologic soil group. If a facility is to be lined, the designer must use the sizing factors for biofiltration (Refer to Appendix G.2.4).



Biofiltration with Partial Retention BMP Example Illustration

How to use the sizing factors for flow control BMP Sizing:

Obtain sizing factors from Table G.2-4 based on the project's lower flow threshold fraction of Q_2, hydrologic soil group, pre-project slope, and rain gauge (rainfall basin). Multiply the area tributary to the structural BMP (A, square feet) by the area weighted runoff factor (C, unitless) (see Table G.2-1) by the sizing factors to determine the required surface area (A, square feet). Select a low flow control orifice for the underdrain that will discharge the lower flow threshold flow at the overflow riser elevation. Standard head (H) for this calculation (based on the standard detail) is 3.0 feet for A or B soils, 3.5 feet for C soils, or 3.75 feet for D soils. The civil engineer shall provide the necessary surface area of the BMP and the underdrain and orifice detail on the plans.

Additional steps to use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP:

The BMP sized using the sizing factors in Table G.2-4 meets both pollutant control and flow control requirements.

Table G.2-4: Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Partial Retention BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method

Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Pre-Project Slope	Aggregate below low orifice invert (inches)	Rain Gauge	A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	18	Oceanside	0.080
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	18	Oceanside	0.075
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	18	Oceanside	0.075
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	18	Oceanside	0.070
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	18	Oceanside	0.070
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	18	Oceanside	0.070
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	6	Oceanside	0.070
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	6	Oceanside	0.070
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	6	Oceanside	0.070
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	3	Oceanside	0.070
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	3	Oceanside	0.070
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	3	Oceanside	0.070

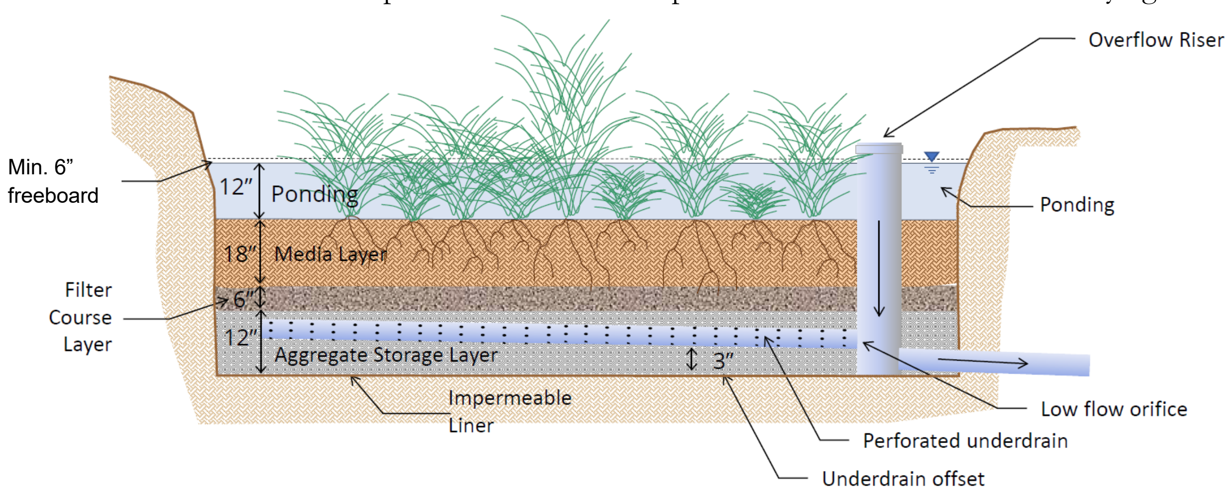
Q_2 = 2-year pre-project flow rate based upon partial duration analysis of long-term hourly rainfall records
A = Surface area (at surface of the BMP before any ponding occurs) sizing factor for flow control

G.2.4 Sizing Factors for Biofiltration

Table G.2-5 presents sizing factors for calculating the required surface area (A) for a biofiltration BMP (formerly known as flow-through planter and/or biofiltration BMP with impermeable liner). The BMPs consist of four layers:

- **Ponding layer:** 12-inches active storage, minimum 2-inches of freeboard above overflow relief for concrete planter/box structure and minimum 6-inches of freeboard above overflow relief for earth basin
- **Media layer:** 18-inches of bioretention soil media
- **Filter Course:** 6-inches
- **Storage layer:** 12-inches of gravel at 40 percent porosity. The underdrain offset shall be 3-inches.
- **Overflow structure:** San Diego Regional Standard Drawing Type I Catch Basin (D-29) or approved equal. For the purposes of hydromodification flow control other type of overflow structures are allowed.

This BMP includes an impermeable liner to prevent infiltration into underlying soils.



Biofiltration BMP Example Illustration

How to use the sizing factors for flow control BMP Sizing:

Obtain sizing factors from Table G.2-5 based on the project's lower flow threshold fraction of Q_2, hydrologic soil group, pre-project slope, and rain gauge (rainfall basin). Multiply the area tributary to the structural BMP (A, square feet) by the area weighted runoff factor (C, unitless) (see Table G.2-1) by the sizing factors to determine the required surface area (A, square feet). Select a low flow control orifice for the underdrain that will discharge the lower flow threshold flow at the overflow riser elevation. Standard head (H) for this calculation (based on the standard detail) is 3.75 feet for all soil groups. The civil engineer shall provide the necessary surface area of the BMP and the underdrain and orifice detail on the plans.

Additional steps to use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP:

The BMP sized using the sizing factors in Table G.2-5 meets both pollutant control and flow control requirements except for surface drawdown requirements. Applicant must perform surface drawdown calculations and if needed develop a vector management plan (Refer to Section 6.3.7) or revise the BMP design to meet the drawdown requirements. If changes are made to the BMP design applicants must perform site specific continuous simulation modeling (Refer to Appendix G).

Table G.2-5: Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method

Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Pre-Project Slope	Rain Gauge	A
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	0.150
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	0.140
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	0.135
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	0.085
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	0.085
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	0.085
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	0.075
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	0.075
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	0.075
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	0.070
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	0.070
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	0.070

Q2 = 2-year pre-project flow rate based upon partial duration analysis of long-term hourly rainfall records flow control

A = Surface area (at surface of the BMP before any ponding occurs)) sizing factor for flow control

G.2.5 Sizing Factors for "Cistern" BMP

Table G.2-6 presents sizing factors for calculating the required volume (V) for a cistern BMP. In this context, a "cistern" is a detention facility that stores runoff and releases it at a controlled rate. A cistern can be a component of a harvest and use system, however the sizing factor method will not account for any retention occurring in the system. The sizing factors were developed assuming runoff is released from the cistern. The sizing factors presented in this section are to meet the hydromodification management performance standard only. The cistern BMP is based on the following assumptions:

- **Cistern configuration:** The cistern is modeled as a 4-foot tall vessel. However, designers could use other configurations (different cistern heights), as long as the lower outlet orifice is sized to properly restrict outflows and the minimum required volume is provided.
- **Cistern upper outlet:** The upper outlet from the cistern would consist of a weir or other flow control structure with the overflow invert set at an elevation of 7/8 of the water height associated with the required volume of the cistern – V. For the assumed 4-foot water depth in the cistern associated with the sizing factor analysis, the overflow invert is assumed to be located at an elevation of 3.5 feet above the bottom of the cistern. The overflow weir would be sized to pass the peak design flow based on the tributary drainage area.

How to use the sizing factors:

Obtain sizing factors from Table G.2-6 based on the project's lower flow threshold fraction of Q_2, hydrologic soil group, pre-project slope, and rain gauge (rainfall basin). Multiply the area tributary to the structural BMP (A, square feet) by the area weighted runoff factor (C, unitless) (see Table G.2-1) by the sizing factors to determine the required volume (V, cubic feet). Select a low flow control orifice that will discharge the lower flow threshold flow at the overflow elevation (i.e. when there is 3.5 feet of head over the lower outlet orifice or adjusted head as appropriate if the cistern overflow elevation is not 3.5 feet tall). The civil engineer shall provide the necessary volume of the BMP and the lower outlet orifice detail on the plans.

Additional steps to use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP:

A cistern could be a component of a full retention, partial retention, or no retention BMP depending on how the outflow is disposed. However, use of the sizing factor method for design of the cistern in a combined pollutant control and flow control system is not recommended. The sizing factor method for designing a cistern does not account for any retention or storage occurring in BMPs combined with the cistern (i.e., cistern sized using sizing factors may be larger than necessary because sizing factor method does not recognize volume losses occurring in other elements of a combined system). Furthermore, when the cistern is designed using the sizing factor method, the cistern outflow must be set to the low flow threshold flow for the drainage area, which may be inconsistent with requirements for other elements of a combined system. To optimize a system in which a cistern provides temporary storage for runoff to be either used onsite (harvest and use), infiltrated, or biofiltered, project-specific continuous simulation modeling is recommended. Refer to Sections 5.6 and 6.3.6.

Table G.2-6: Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Cistern BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method

Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Pre-Project Slope	Rain Gauge	V
$0.1Q_2$	A	Flat	Oceanside	0.26
$0.1Q_2$	A	Moderate	Oceanside	0.25
$0.1Q_2$	A	Steep	Oceanside	0.25
$0.1Q_2$	B	Flat	Oceanside	0.16
$0.1Q_2$	B	Moderate	Oceanside	0.16
$0.1Q_2$	B	Steep	Oceanside	0.16
$0.1Q_2$	C	Flat	Oceanside	0.14
$0.1Q_2$	C	Moderate	Oceanside	0.14
$0.1Q_2$	C	Steep	Oceanside	0.14
$0.1Q_2$	D	Flat	Oceanside	0.12
$0.1Q_2$	D	Moderate	Oceanside	0.12
$0.1Q_2$	D	Steep	Oceanside	0.12

Q2 = 2-year pre-project flow rate based upon partial duration analysis of long-term hourly rainfall records
V = Cistern volume sizing factor

Appendix

H

Guidance for Investigating Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas

Appendix H Guidance for Investigating Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas

The following guidance provides methodologies for protecting CCSYAs:

H.1 Step 1: Identify CCSYAs

A CCSYA is an active or potential source of bed sediment to downstream channel reaches. When a Priority Development Project (PDP) is constructed, it has the potential to negatively impact characteristics of sediment supply and delivery which can lead to degradation of receiving waters. In order to prevent these impacts, PDP applicants must examine the tributary areas identified in their storm water management plans and identify sources of critical coarse sediment within the following areas:

- **Onsite CCSYAs**: CCSYAs identified within the project's property boundary as indicated in the SWQMP. Refer to Section 1.3 for defining a project.
- **Upstream CCSYAs**: CCSYAs identified within the drainage area draining through the project's property boundary as indicated in the SWQMP. Refer to Section 1.3 for defining a project.

Applicants must first identify potential critical coarse sediment yield areas (PCCSYAs) using one of the methods presented in Section H.1.1. Applicants may then elect to accept the mapping results and remove the "potential" designation, or may elect to further refine the results of the mapping through consideration of the refinement methods outlined in Section H.1.2. At the end of Step 1, applicants will have identified CCSYAs that must be avoided and bypassed by the project.

H.1.1 Identification Methods

Applicants must identify both onsite and upstream CCSYAs by referring to the Carlsbad Watershed Management Area Analysis PCCSYA maps provided in Appendix H.6.

H.1.2 Refinement Options

After identifying PCCSYAs using one of the methods above, the applicant may elect to accept the mapping results and remove the "potential" designation, or may elect to further refine the results of the mapping through consideration of one or more of the refinement methods outlined below.

H.1.2.1 Depositional Analysis

Areas identified as PCCSYAs may be removed from consideration if it is demonstrated that these sources are deposited into existing systems prior to reaching the first downstream unlined water of the state. Systems resulting in deposition may include existing natural sinks, existing structural BMPs, existing hardened MS4 systems, or other existing similar features that produce a peak velocity from the discrete 2-year, 24-hour runoff event of less than three feet per second in the system being analyzed. Applicants electing to perform depositional analysis to refine PCCSYA mapping must refer to the detailed guidance provided in Appendix H.7.1.

H.1.2.2 Threshold Channel Analysis

Areas identified as PCCSYAs may be removed from consideration if they discharge to a "threshold channel" that does not exhibit characteristics associated with significant bed load movement during design flows. Applicants electing to perform threshold channel analysis to refine PCCSYA mapping must refer to the detailed guidance provided in Appendix H.7.2.

H.1.2.3 Coarse Sediment Source Area Verification

Areas identified as PCCSYAs may be removed from consideration if an applicant demonstrates that these areas actually consist of finegrained sediment. Applicants electing to perform coarse sediment source area verification to refine PCCSYA mapping must refer to the detailed guidance provided in Appendix H.7.3.

H.1.2.4 Verification of Geomorphic Landscape Units (GLUs)

Areas identified as PCCSYAs may be refined through verification of GLUs. If this method is used, applicants must refer to detailed guidance provided in Appendix H.6.1.

H.2 Step 2: Avoidance of Onsite CCSYAs

A key element of preserving the stability of receiving waters is to avoid changes in bed sediment supply by avoiding development on CCSYAs. Avoidance is best achieved through proper site design. The following are some potential strategies that should be considered while determining the site layout to avoid CCSYAs:

- The civil engineer shall designate onsite CCSYAs that are to be avoided (undisturbed) for the purpose of preserving coarse sediment yield. When feasible, use and/or access restriction should be established for these areas.
- Minimize new impervious footprint. Refer to SD-3 in Chapter 4 for guidance on minimizing impervious footprint.

If onsite CCSYAs are not avoided per the metrics defined below, the applicant must demonstrate no net impact to the receiving water using guidance in Appendix H.4.

H.2.1 Avoidance Metrics

If the applicant has identified onsite CCSYAs using the Regional Watershed Management Area Analysis PCCSYA maps provided in Appendix H.6, encroachments of up to 5% into the onsite CCSYAs may be permitted (encroachments are measured at the POC scale and must be less than or equal to 5% for each POC). Refer to Appendix H.6.3 for supporting rationale for 5% encroachment.

H.3 Step 3: Bypass Onsite and Upstream CCSYAs

Another key element of preserving the stability of receiving waters is to maintain current bed sediment supply characteristics through effective bypass of onsite and upstream sediment sources. Upstream bed sediment sources may include overland flow from CCSYAs and/or concentrated channel flows. Applicants must ensure both onsite and upstream sources of bed sediment are effectively bypassed through their project. If onsite and/or upstream CCSYAs are not effectively bypassed per the criteria below, applicant must implement mitigation measures presented in Appendix H.4.

H.3.1 Bypass CCSYAs from Hillslopes

Both onsite and upstream hillslopes mapped as CCSYAs must be effectively bypassed through and/or around the proposed project site.

- Proposed hardened drainage systems (e.g. storm drains, drainage ditches) that convey the bed sediment from the hillslopes to the downstream waters of the state should maintain a peak velocity from the discrete 2-year, 24-hour runoff event greater than three feet per second.
    - When drainage ditches are proposed for bypass, this could be achieved by designing them to the minimum dimensions listed in the San Diego Regional Standard drawing D-75.
    - When an 18" concrete storm drain is proposed for bypass, this velocity may typically be achieved by maintaining a storm drain slope of ≥0.5%. In instances where 2-year, 24-hour peak flow rates associated with the storm drain are less than 1.1 cfs, applicants may refer to the table below for minimum slopes needed to maintain three feet per second. Applicants may interpolate the values from the table below, or may elect to perform more detailed cleansing velocity calculations presented in Appendix H.7.1.

2-year, 24-Hour Peak Flow (cfs)	Minimum Slope for 18" Concrete Storm Drain
<0.25	n/a, this PCCSYA is considered-de minimis.
0.25	2%
0.50	1%
1.10	0.5%

- Storm water runoff that contains the bed sediment from CCSYAs must not be routed through detention basins or other facilities with restricted outlets that will trap sediment. Bypass systems shall be designed as necessary so that the bed material is conveyed to the downstream receiving water. Structural BMPs (including most flow-thru BMPs) are likely to trap sediment.

- For scenarios where a BMP must be constructed to treat offsite drainage area and there are CCSYAs outside of the project footprint, it may be feasible to achieve mitigation by construction of an outlet structure that can convey the bed load to the downstream receiving water and clear water through a bypass structure to a BMP.
- Proposed crossings (culverts, driveways, etc.) should not impede the transport of upstream critical coarse sediment. Crossings should be designed to avoid headwater conditions that would result in the trapping/settling of sediment.

H.3.2 Bypass CCSYAs from Channels

Projects that effectively avoid and bypass CCSYAs mapped in Step 1 (i.e., Appendix H.1) of this guidance are not required to take specific action to ensure bypass of channel flows. This guidance does not set forth channel bypass criteria for this scenario because it recognizes that existing regulator mechanisms (such as 401 certifications, site design requirements, etc.) are generally sufficient to preserve the sediment transport functions of onsite channels.

However, projects that do not effectively avoid and bypass the CCSYAs mapped in Step 1 (i.e., Appendix H.1), will be required to specifically account for bypass of channel flows as part of the demonstration of no net impact outlined in Appendix H.4.

H.3.3 De Minimis Upstream CCSYA

Applicants have an option to exclude de minimis upstream CCSYAs. De minimis upstream CCSYAs consist of coarse hillslope areas that are not significant contributors of bed sediment yield due to their small size, and are considered by the owner and the City Engineer as not practicable to bypass to the downstream waters of the state. In limited scenarios where all of the criteria below are satisfied, de minimis upstream CCSYAs may be omitted from consideration.

- De minimis upstream CCSYAs are not disturbed through the proposed project activities.
- De minimis upstream CCSYA is not part of an upstream drainage contributing more than 0.31 total acres to the project site.
- Multiple de minimis upstream CCSYAs cannot be adjacent to each other and hydraulically connected.
- The SWQMP must document the reason why each de minimis upstream CCSYA could not be bypassed to the downstream waters of the state.

The 0.31-acre (13,500 square feet) de minimis threshold was established using 0.25 cfs as the cut off peak flow for the 2-year, 24-hour event, rational method equation and the following assumptions:

- C = 0.225 (average runoff coefficient (C) for soil type A and B);
- Average 6-hour, 2-year storm depth = 1.5 inches;
- Time of concentration = 6 minutes; and
- 2-year peak intensity = 3.51 in/hr. (based on procedures from the County Hydrology Manual).

The strategies for sediment bypass do not mitigate for the reduction of CCSYA that have been replaced by development onsite but can only mitigate scenarios where development hinders movement of bed sediment through the project footprint. When preservation of existing channels and/or implementation of sediment bypass measures is not feasible and/or not implemented, the applicant must demonstrate no net impact to the receiving water via the measures presented in Appendix H.4.

H.4 Step 4: Demonstrate No Net Impact

When impacts to CCSYAs cannot be avoided or effectively bypassed, the applicant must demonstrate that their project generates no net impact to the receiving water per the performance metrics identified herein.

- **Appendix H.4.1** provides background on the state of the current science for predicting hydromodification impacts due to reductions in sediment supply;
- **Appendix H.4.2** defines the management standard that will be the basis for evaluating whether "no net impact to the receiving water" is achieved;
- **Appendix H.4.3** identifies the type of mitigation measures (i.e., additional flow control, stream rehabilitation, and applicant proposed mitigation measures) that can be used to meet the management standard;
- **Appendix H.8** provides the methodology for calculation of Erosion Potential (Ep) and Sediment Supply Potential (Sp); and
- **Appendix H.9** provides fact sheets for implementation of the mitigation measures.

H.4.1 Background

Channel form, by definition, is composed of bed and bank material as well as channel geometry (in plan, cross-section, and profile); however, the dominant forces typically controlling channel form are discharge and sediment supply (notably bed material) since a stream's most basic function is to convey water and sediment (Knighton, 1998). The interaction between form and function is qualitatively described through Lane's relationship in Equation H.4-1:

Equation H.4.1: Lane's Relationship

$$Q_s \times d \propto Q_w \times S$$

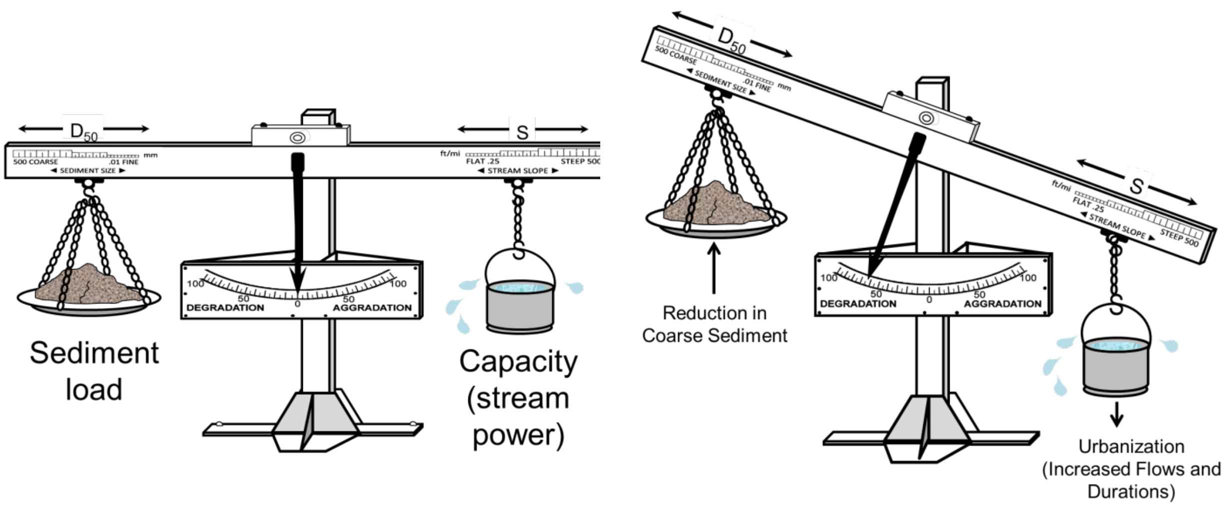
Where:

Q_s = Sediment discharge
D = Particle diameter or size of sediment
Q_w = Streamflow
S = Stream slope

Lane's relationship qualitatively states that the sediment load (size and volume of sediment), which is the first half of the relationship, is proportional to the stream power (volume of runoff and slope) which is represented by the second half of the relationship. The sediment discharge (Q_s) in the relationship is the coarser part of sediment load, referred to as the "bed sediment", since this is the part of the load which largely molds the bed formation (Lane, 1955). Lane's relationship (Equation H.4.1) cannot be used for quantitative calculations since the proportionality is not necessarily linear.

For a stream at equilibrium, Lane's relationship states that if one of the variables changes and the other variables do not change proportionately, then the stream channel is no longer in equilibrium. Sediment load and stream power can change considerably during and following new development, leading to changes in the equilibrium state of the receiving channel.

- Typically, sediment load increases during the construction period, due to the additional exposure of bare soil during the grading and construction process, and before landscaping vegetation has stabilized the soil. This is regulated through the construction-phase BMP requirements established by the Construction General Permit and/or the MS4 Permit.
- Following the construction period, sediment load typically decreases to below pre-development levels, as less sediment is available from areas that have been paved or stabilized by landscape vegetation. When this decrease is not regulated, the bed sediment supplied to the stream (first half of the relationship) is reduced and the sediment transport capacity (stream power) is increased due to increased flows and durations resulting from the addition of impervious areas (second half of the relationship). This may result in degradation of the stream system as illustrated in Figure H.4-1.



Stream in equilibrium

Post-construction condition with no flow control and/or sediment supply regulations

Schematics credit: SCCWRP

Figure H.4-1 Illustration of Lane's Relationship

Lane's relationship is useful for making qualitative predictions concerning channel impacts due to changes in runoff and/or sediment loads from the watershed. Although this qualitative assessment is useful for understanding how the watershed responds to development, quantitative predictions are valuable for determining the magnitude of response and they can inform the identification of locations where the greatest management attention should be invested.

Lane's relationship can be supplemented by the use of quantitative predictions which allow the evaluation of the stream under changing conditions. Quantitative predictions will include bed sediment supply calculations for the first half of the Lane relationship, and bed sediment transport capacity calculations for the second half of the Lane relationship. Imbalances between the bed sediment supply rate and transport capacity determines the rate of sediment deposition or erosion in the channel and the associated channel change (Wilcock et al., 2009).

The common practice is to use the Erosion Potential (Ep) metric to evaluate the changes in sediment transport capacity and the Sediment Supply Potential (Sp) metric to evaluate the changes in bed sediment supply for susceptible receiving channels of concern. In regards to Ep metric,

- SCCWRP Technical Report 667 (SCCWRP, 2012) states:

  "The underlying premise of the erosion potential approach advances the concept of flow duration control by addressing in-stream processes related to sediment transport. An erosion potential calculation combines flow parameters with stream geometry to assess long term (decadal) changes in the sediment transport capacity. The cumulative distribution of shear stress, specific stream power and sediment transport capacity across the entire range of relevant flows can be calculated and expressed using an erosion potential metric, Ep."

- SCCWRP Technical Report 753 (SCCWRP, 2013) states the following based on review of field measurements from 61 sites in Southern California:

  "Results indicate that channel enlargement is highly dependent on the ratio of post- to pre-urban sediment-transport capacity over cumulative duration simulations of 25 years (load ratio, a.k.a. erosion potential), which explained nearly 60% of the variance."

For the purposes of implementing mitigation measures within the MS4-permitted region of the County of San Diego: this manual defines Ep as the ratio of post-project/pre-development (natural) long-term transport capacity or work; and Sp as the ratio of post-project/pre-project (existing) long-term bed sediment supply. Guidance for calculating Ep and Sp are provided in Appendix H.8.

H.4.2 Management Standard

This guidance defines a sediment supply management standard through which no net impact to receiving water can be quantitatively indicated. This management standard is demonstrated through the Net Impact Index (NII), a dimensionless index that must be used by the applicant to evaluate if there is, or is not, a net impact to the receiving water. NII is defined in this manual as the ratio of Ep to Sp. Mitigation measures shall be designed to meet the NII management standard shown in Equation H.4.2 to achieve no net impact to the receiving water. The NII management standard is based on Lane's relationship (Ep is directly proportional to Sp) and an allowance of 10% (based on Section H.4.2.1). This represents the most appropriate current understanding of how to quantitatively account for sediment supply changes without replacing bed sediment sources (Palhegyi and Rathfelder, 2007 and Parra, 2015).

Equation H.4-2: Net Impact Index

$$NII = \frac{Ep}{Sp} \leq 1.1$$

Where:

NII = Net Impact Index
Ep = Erosion Potential
Sp = Sediment Supply Potential

If NII ≤ 1.1, then the project produces no net impact to the receiving water in terms of coarse sediment yield, and no further analysis is required. If NII > 1.1, then the project generates an impact on the receiving water and the project is required to implement mitigation measures defined in Appendix H.4.3 such that the NII is reduced to a compliant value (NII ≤ 1.1).

H.4.2.1 Allowance to the NII Management Standard

This manual establishes the NII defined in Appendix H.4.2 as the management standard for coarse sediment supply. The 10% allowance to the management standard is supported by the following research studies or projects:

- The authors of the USACE report for channel design (USACE, 2001) state that, "achieving an optimum Capacity-Supply Ratio, within 10 percent of unity, should ensure dynamic stability while allowing the river itself to recover some of the fluvial detail that cannot be engineered."
- The authors of SCCWRP Technical Report 605 (SCCWRP, 2010), "anticipate that changes of less than 10% in either driver [discharge or sediment flux] are unlikely to instigate, on their own, significant channel changes. This value is a conservative estimate of the year-to-year variability in either discharge or sediment flux that can be accommodated by a channel system in a state of dynamic equilibrium."
- Sediment transport and supply measurements and calculations are inherently inexact. Discrepancies of up to 10% should not be a source of concern (PCR et al., 2002).

H.4.3 Types of Mitigation Measures

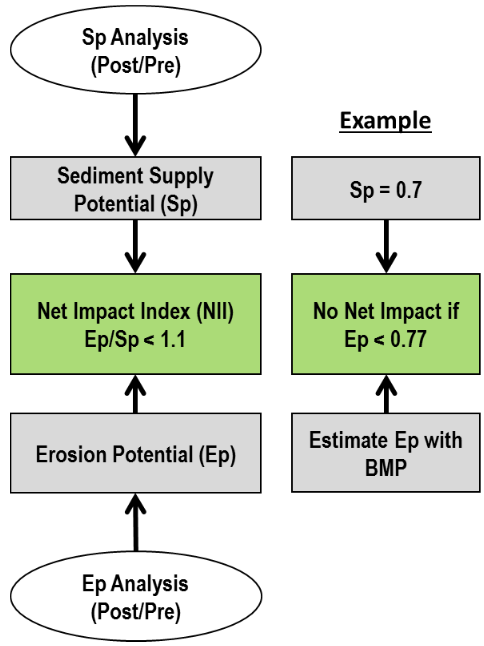
The following section discusses mitigation measures that may be used by the applicant to meet the NII management standard defined in Appendix H.4.2. These include:

- Additional Flow Control;
- Stream Rehabilitation; and
- Applicant Proposed Mitigation Measures

Appendix H.9 provides additional guidance for implementation of these mitigation measures.

H.4.3.1 Additional Flow Control

One option for managing bed sediment supply reductions is to provide additional detention and retention of site runoff to compensate for the reduction of bed sediment supply. This measure requires increasing flow attenuation by adding storage volume in structural BMPs. This management option accounts for changes in hydrology, channel geometry, and bed/bank material, but not sediment supply. For example, if there is a 30% reduction in bed-load due to proposed urbanization, then the sediment supply potential (Sp) equals 0.7. Assuming the appropriate range is +10%, hydromodification controls can be sized and situated such that the post-project effective in-stream work is lowered to less than 77% of the baseline pre-development condition.



Structural BMPs designed for hydromodification control utilize the following two basic principles:

- Detain runoff and release it in a controlled way that either mimics pre-development in-stream sediment transport capacity, mimics flow durations, or reduces flow durations to account for a reduction in bed sediment supply.
- Manage excess runoff volumes through one or more of the following pathways: (1) infiltration; (2) evapotranspiration; (3) storage and use; (4) discharge at a rate below the critical low flowrate; or (5) discharge downstream to a receiving water that is not susceptible to hydromodification impacts.

If desired, structural BMPs can be designed to support flood control and LID objectives in addition to hydromodification control. To the maximum extent possible, structural BMPs should be designed to receive flows from developed areas only. This facilitates design optimization as well as avoiding intercepting coarse sediments from open spaces that should ideally be passed through to the stream channel.

A fact sheet for additional flow control is provided in Appendix H.9.1.

H.4.3.2 Stream Rehabilitation

Hydromodification control can be achieved by stream rehabilitation projects including: drop structures, grade control structures, bed and bank reinforcement, increased channel sinuosity or meandering, increased channel width, and flow diversion. The objective of these in-stream controls, or stream restoration measures, is to reduce or maintain the overall Erosion Potential (Ep) of the receiving channel by modifying its hydraulic properties and/or bed/bank material resistance without fully replacing sediment supply or controlling increases in runoff. Stream rehabilitation is only an option where the receiving channel of concern is already impacted by erosive flows and shows evidence of excessive sediment, erosion, deposition, or is a hardened channel.

Stream rehabilitation projects are subject to the permitting requirements of the resource agencies. Stream rehabilitation projects may require the following permits:

- California Department of Fish and Wildlife – 1602 Streambed Alteration Agreement.
- US Fish and Wildlife Service – Authorization under the Endangered Species Act.
- US Army Corps of Engineers – Clean Water Act Section 404 Permit.
- Regional Water Quality Control Board – Clean Water Act Section 401 Water Quality Certification.
- Local Grading Permit

A fact sheet for stream rehabilitation is provided in Appendix H.9.2.

H.4.3.3 Applicant Proposed Mitigation Measures

The applicant may propose a mitigation measure not identified in this manual if it will achieve no net impact to the receiving water. Additional analysis may be requested by the [City Engineer] prior to approval of the mitigation measure to substantiate the finding of no net impact to the receiving water.

H.5 References

American Society of Civil Engineers and Water Environment Federation. 1992. Design and Construction of Urban Stormwater Management Systems. ASCE Manual No. 77, WEF Manual No. 20, Alexandria, VA.

ASCE, 1970. Design and construction of sanitary and storm sewers, ASCE Manual of Engineering Practice No. 37, WPCF Manual of Practice No. 9. Prepared by the Joint Committee of the American Society of Civil Engineers and the Water Pollution Control Federation

Chow, V.T. 1959. Open-Channel Hydraulics. McGraw-Hill Book Company.

Fischenich, C. 2001. “Stability Thresholds for Stream Restoration Materials.” EMRRP Technical Notes Collection (ERDC TN-EMRRP-SR-29), U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center, Vicksburg, MS.

Hawley, R.J., and Bledsoe, B.P. 2011. “How do flow peaks and durations change in suburbanizing semi-arid watersheds? A southern California Study,” Journal of Hydrology, Elsevier, Vol 405, pp 69-82.

Knighton D., 1998. Fluvial Forms and Processes: A New Perspective. Arnold Publishers.

Lane, E.W. 1955. The Importance of Fluvial Morphology in Hydraulic Engineering. American Society of Civil Engineers. Proceedings, Vol. 81, Paper No. 745.

Los Angeles Regional Water Quality Control Board (LARWQCB). 2012. Los Angeles County MS4 Permit (Order No. R4-2012-0175).

National Resource Conservation Service (NRCS), 2007. National Engineering Handbook Part 654 - Stream Restoration Design.

Palhegyi, G.E. and Rathfelder, K. 2007. “Applying the Erosion Potential Methodology to Natural Channel Design Procedures in Southern California”. Presented at CASQA, Sept 2007, Orange County, California.

Parra, L.A., 2015. Addressing Critical Coarse Sediment Impact by Defining Dimensionless Indexes of Coarse Sediment Production, Transport and Net Impact.

Parra, L.A., 2016. Link between Flow Duration Curve and Erosion Work – Expanded.

PCR Services Corporation, Philip Williams and Associates, and Balance Hydrologics, Inc. 2002. Baseline Geomorphic and Hydrologic Conditions Report, Ranch Mission Viejo: Portions of the San Juan and Western San Mateo Watersheds, prepared for Rancho Mission Viejo.

Renard, K.G., G.R. Foster, G.A. Weesies, D.K. McCool and D.C. Yoder, 1997. Predicting Soil Erosion by Water. A guide to conservation planning with Revised Universal Soil Loss Equation (RUSLE). U.S. Department of Agriculture, Agriculture Handbook No. 703.

San Diego, County of. 2011. Final Hydromodification Management Plan.

Santa Clara Valley Urban Runoff Pollution Prevention Program (SCVURPPP). 2005. Hydromodification Management Plan. April 21, 2005.

Shields, F.D. 1996. Hydraulic and Hydrologic Stability In: A Brooks and FD Shields (Eds.), River Channel Restoration, 23-74.

Shields, F.D., A. Brooks and J. Haltiner. 1999. Geomorphological Approaches to Incised Stream Channel Restoration in the United States and Europe. In: SE Darby and A Simon (Eds.) Incised River Channels.

Southern California Coastal Water Research Project (SCCWRP), 2008. Stream Channel Classification and Mapping Systems: Implications for Assessing Susceptibility to Hydromodification Effects in Southern California, Technical Report 562.

Southern California Coastal Water Research Project (SCCWRP), 2005. Effect of Increases in Peak Flows and Impervious on the Morphology of Southern California Streams, Technical Report 450.

Southern California Coastal Water Research Project (SCCWRP), 2010. Hydromodification Screening Tools: GIS-based catchment analyses of potential changes in runoff and sediment discharge. Technical Report 605.

Southern California Coastal Water Research Project (SCCWRP), 2010a. Hydromodification Screening Tools: Field Manual for Assessing Channel Susceptibility. Technical Report 606.

Southern California Coastal Water Research Project (SCCWRP), 2012. Hydromodification Assessment and Management in California. Technical Report 667.

Southern California Coastal Water Research Project (SCCWRP), 2013. Modeling and Managing Hydromodification Effects: summary of Available Tools and Decision-Making Approach. Technical Report 753.

USACE, 2001. Channel Restoration Design for Meandering Rivers. US Army Corps of Engineers, Final Report, ERDC/CHL CR-01-1. Prepared by Soar, P.J., and Thorne, C.R.

USDA, 1974. Present Sediment Yield Rates for Western United States. U. S. Department of Agriculture Soil Conservation Service.

Wilcock, P., J. Pitlick, and Y. Cui. 2009. Sediment Transport Primer Estimating Bed-Material Transport in Gravel-bed Rivers. USDA General Technical Report, RMRS-GTR-226.

H.5.1 Terms of Reference

The guidance described in Appendix H of this manual was developed by Geosyntec Consultants (Geosyntec) on behalf of the County of San Diego and the City of San Diego. Appendix H was specifically developed to provide PDP applicants guidance to meet the MS4 Permit Provision E.3.c.(2)(b) within the MS4-permitted region within the San Diego County. This guidance is not intended to be used for purposes, other than to meet this MS4 Permit requirement.

The guidance was developed with input from a Technical Advisory Committee (TAC) members through a series of meetings conducted in January 2016. The TAC input resulted in a streamlined guidance enhanced to provide applicants with simplified methods to determine impacts to coarse sediment delivery based on complex scientific principles. TAC participants included:

Bill Woolsey | Brian Haines | Charles Mohrlock | Chris Wolff | Dave Hammar | David Garcia | Emir Williams | Eric Mosolgo | Eric Stein | Erica Ryan | Howard Chang | Jon VanRhyn | Jonard Talamayan| Judd Goodman| Ken Susilo| Laura Henry| Luis Parra| Max Dugan | Rich Lucera | Sheri McPherson | Sumer Hasenin | Trevor Alsop | Venkat Gummadi | Wayne Chiu |

H.6 PCCSYAs: Regional WMAA Maps

PCCSYAs identified by the Regional WMAA were delineated using regional datasets for elevation, land cover, and geology. The methodology used to identify PCCSYAs from these datasets is based on Geomorphic Landscape Unit (GLU) methodology presented in the SCCWRP Technical Report 605. GLUs characterize the magnitude of sediment production from areas through three factors judged to exert the greatest influence on the variability on sediment-production rates: geology types, hillslope gradient, and land cover. The Regional WMAA document and the GIS layers for the map can be found on the Project Clean Water website at the following address:

http://www.projectcleanwater.org/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=248&Itemid=219

The regional-level mapping is based on the following sources:

Dataset	Source	Year	Description
Elevation	USGS	2013	1/3rd Arc Second (~10 meter cells) digital elevation model for San Diego County
Land Cover	SanGIS	2013	Ecology-Vegetation layer for San Diego County downloaded from SanGIS
Geology	Kennedy, M.P., and Tan, S.S.	2002	Geologic Map of the Oceanside 30'x60' Quadrangle, California, California Geological Survey, Regional Geologic Map No. 2, 1:100,000 scale.
	Kennedy, M.P., and Tan, S.S.	2008	Geologic Map of the San Diego 30'x60' Quadrangle, California, California Geological Survey, Regional Geologic Map No. 3, 1:100,000 scale.
	Todd, V.R.	2004	Preliminary Geologic Map of the El Cajon 30'x60' Quadrangle, Southern California, United States Geological Survey, Southern California Areal Mapping Project, Open File Report 2004-1361, 1:100,000 scale.
	Jennings et al.	2010	"Geologic Map of California," California Geological Survey, Map No. 2 – Geologic Map of California, 1:750,000 scale

The regional data set is a function of the inherent data resolution of the macro-level data sets and may not conform to all site conditions, or does not reflect changes to particular areas that have occurred since the underlying data was developed. This means slopes, geology, or land cover at the project site can be mischaracterized in the regional data set. If an applicant feels the Regional WMAA analysis inaccurately mapped their project area, they may elect to perform a site-specific GLU analysis based on data collected from project-level investigations to refine the mapping as outlined below.

The following PCCSYAs may be removed from the mapping without performing the full GLU analysis described in Appendix H.6.1 a) areas under 10% slope, b) paved areas.

H.6.1 Site-Specific GLU Analysis

In order to perform a site-specific GLU analysis the applicant must first delineate the project boundary and any areas draining through the project boundary. The applicant must then determine appropriate slopes, geology, and land cover categories for this area as identified below (the GLU analysis must be conducted for the entire project boundary and areas draining through it).

There are four slope categories in the GLU analysis. Category numbers shown (1 to 4) were assigned for the purpose of GIS processing.

- 0% to 10% (1)
- 10% to 20% (2)
- 20% to 40% (3)
- >40% (4)

There are seven geology categories in the GLU analysis:

- Coarse bedrock (CB)
- Coarse sedimentary impermeable (CSI)
- Coarse sedimentary permeable (CSP)
- Fine bedrock (FB)
- Fine sedimentary impermeable (FSI)
- Fine sedimentary permeable (FSP)
- Other (O)

There are six land cover categories in the GLU analysis:

- Agriculture/grass
- Forest
- Developed
- Scrub/shrub
- Other
- Unknown

Project site slopes shall be classified into the categories based on project-level topography. Project site geology may be determined from geologic maps (may be the same as regional-level information) or classified in the field by a qualified geologist. Table H-6.1 provides information to classify geologic map units into each geology category. Project site land cover shall be determined from aerial photography and/or field visit. For reference, Table H-6.2 provides information to classify land cover categories from the SanGIS Ecology-Vegetation data set into land cover categories. The civil engineer shall not rely on the SanGIS Ecology-Vegetation data set to identify actual land cover at the project site (for project-level investigation land cover must be confirmed by aerial photo or field visit). Intersect the geologic categories, land cover categories, and slope categories within the project boundary to create GLUs. The GLUs listed in Table H-6.3 are considered to be potential critical coarse sediment yield areas. Note the GLU nomenclature is presented in the following format: Geology – Land Cover – Slope Category (e.g., "CB-Agricultural/Grass-3" for a GLU consisting of coarse bedrock geology, agricultural/grass land cover, and 20% to 40% slope).

GLUs are created by intersecting the geologic categories, land cover categories, and slope categories. This is a similar procedure to intersecting land uses with soil types to determine runoff coefficients or runoff curve numbers for hydrologic studies, but there are three categories to consider for the GLU analysis (slope, geology, and land cover), and the GLUs are not to be composited into a single GLU. When GLUs have been created, determine whether any of the GLUs listed in Table H.6-3 are found within the project boundary. The GLUs listed in Table H.6-3 are considered to be PCCSYAs.

If none of the GLUs listed in Table H.6-3 are present within the project boundary and area draining through the project boundary, no measures for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas are necessary. If one or more GLUs listed in Table H.6-3 are present within the project boundary, they shall be considered critical coarse sediment yield areas. Complete Worksheet H.6-1 to document verification of GLUs.

Table H.6-1: Geologic Grouping for Different Map Units

Map Unit	Map Name	Anticipated Grain size of Weathered Material	Bedrock or Sedimentary	Impermeable / Permeable	Geology Grouping
gr-m	Jennings; CA	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
grMz	Jennings; CA	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Jcr	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Jhc	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Jsp	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Ka	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kbm	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kbp	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kcc	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kcg	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kcm	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kcp	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kd	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kdl	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kg	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgbf	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgd	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgdf	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB

Map Unit	Map Name	Anticipated Grain size of Weathered Material	Bedrock or Sedimentary	Impermeable / Permeable	Geology Grouping
Kgh	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgm	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgm1	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgm2	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgm3	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgm4	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgp	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgr	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgu	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Khg	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Ki	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kis	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kjd	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
KJem	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
KJld	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kjv	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Klb	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Klh	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Klp	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Km	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kmg	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kmgp	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kmm	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kpa	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kpv	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kqbd	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kr	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Krm	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Krr	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kt	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Ktr	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kvc	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kwm	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kwp	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kwsr	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
m	Jennings; CA	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Mzd	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Mzg	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Mzq	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Mzs	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
sch	Jennings; CA	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kp	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB

Map Unit	Map Name	Anticipated Grain size of Weathered Material	Bedrock or Sedimentary	Impermeable / Permeable	Geology Grouping
Ql	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
QTf	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Ec	Jennings; CA	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
K	Jennings; CA	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Kccg	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Kcs	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Kl	San Diego, Oceanside & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Ku	Jennings; CA	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvof	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop8a	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop9a	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tmsc	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tmss	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tp	San Diego & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tpm	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tsc	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tscu	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tsd	San Diego & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tsdcg	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tsdss	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tsm	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tso	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tst	San Diego, Oceanside & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tt	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tta	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tmv	San Diego, Oceanside & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tsi	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvoa	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvoa11	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvoa12	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvoa13	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvoc	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI

Map Unit	Map Name	Anticipated Grain size of Weathered Material	Bedrock or Sedimentary	Impermeable / Permeable	Geology Grouping
Qvop1	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop10	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop10a	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop11	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop11a	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop12	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop13	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop2	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop3	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop4	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop5	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop6	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop7	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop8	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop9	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tsa	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qof	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qof1	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qof2	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Q	Jennings; CA	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qa	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qd	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qf	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qmb	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qop	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qw	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qyf	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qt	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qoa1-2	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qoa2-6	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qoa5	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP

Map Unit	Map Name	Anticipated Grain size of Weathered Material	Bedrock or Sedimentary	Impermeable / Permeable	Geology Grouping
Qoa6	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qoa7	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qoc	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qop1	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qc	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qu	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qoa	San Diego, Oceanside & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qop2-4	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qop3	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qop4	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qop6	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qop7	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qya	San Diego, Oceanside & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qyc	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Mzu	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
gb	Jennings; CA	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
JTRm	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Kat	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Kc	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Kgb	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
KJvs	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Kmv	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Ksp	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Kvsp	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Kwmt	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Qv	Jennings; CA	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Tba	San Diego 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Tda	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Tv	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Tvsr	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Kgdfg	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Ta	San Diego 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
Tcs	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
Td	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
Td+Tf	San Diego 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI

Map Unit	Map Name	Anticipated Grain size of Weathered Material	Bedrock or Sedimentary	Impermeable / Permeable	Geology Grouping
Qls	San Diego, Oceanside & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
Tm	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
Tf	San Diego, Oceanside & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
Tfr	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
To	San Diego & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
Qpe	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Permeable	FSP
Mexico	San Diego 30' x 60'	NA	NA	Permeable	Other
Kuo	San Diego 30' x 60'	NA (Offshore)	NA	Permeable	Other
Teo	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	NA (Offshore)	Sedimentary	Permeable	Other
Tmo	Oceanside 30' x 60'	NA (Offshore)	Sedimentary	Permeable	Other
Qmo	San Diego 30' x 60'	NA (Offshore)	Sedimentary	Permeable	Other
QTso	San Diego 30' x 60'	NA (Offshore)	Sedimentary	Permeable	Other
af	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Variable, dependent on source material	Sedimentary		Other

Table H.6-2: Land Cover Grouping for SanGIS Ecology-Vegetation Data Set

Id	SanGIS Legend	SanGIS Grouping	Land Cover Grouping
1	42000 Valley and Foothill Grassland	Grasslands, Vernal Pools, Meadows, and Other Herb Communities	Agricultural/Grass
2	42100 Native Grassland		Agricultural/Grass
3	42110 Valley Needlegrass Grassland		Agricultural/Grass
4	42120 Valley Sacaton Grassland		Agricultural/Grass
5	42200 Non-Native Grassland	Grasslands, Vernal Pools, Meadows, and Other Herb Communities	Agricultural/Grass
6	42300 Wildflower Field		Agriculture/Grass
7	42400 Foothill/Mountain Perennial Grassland		Agriculture/Grass
8	42470 Transmontane Dropseed Grassland		Agriculture/Grass
9	45000 Meadow and Seep		Agriculture/Grass
10	45100 Montane Meadow		Agriculture/Grass
11	45110 Wet Montane Meadow		Agriculture/Grass
12	45120 Dry Montane Meadows		Agriculture/Grass
13	45300 Alkali Meadows and Seeps		Agriculture/Grass
14	45320 Alkali Seep		Agriculture/Grass
15	45400 Freshwater Seep		Agriculture/Grass
16	46000 Alkali Playa Community		Agriculture/Grass
17	46100 Badlands/Mudhill Forbs		Agriculture/Grass
18	Non-Native Grassland		Agriculture/Grass
19	18000 General Agriculture	Non-Native Vegetation, Developed Areas, or Unvegetated Habitat	Agriculture/Grass
20	18100 Orchards and Vineyards		Agriculture/Grass
21	18200 Intensive Agriculture		Agriculture/Grass
22	18200 Intensive Agriculture - Dairies, Nurseries, Chicken Ranches		Agriculture/Grass
23	18300 Extensive Agriculture - Field/Pasture, Row Crops		Agriculture/Grass
24	18310 Field/Pasture		Agriculture/Grass
25	18310 Pasture		Agriculture/Grass
26	18320 Row Crops		Agriculture/Grass
27	12000 Urban/Developed		Developed
28	12000 Urban/Develpoed		Developed
29	81100 Mixed Evergreen Forest	Forest	Forest
30	81300 Oak Forest		Forest
31	81310 Coast Live Oak Forest		Forest
32	81320 Canyon Live Oak Forest		Forest
33	81340 Black Oak Forest		Forest
34	83140 Torrey Pine Forest		Forest
35	83230 Southern Interior Cypress Forest		Forest
36	84000 Lower Montane Coniferous Forest		Forest
37	84100 Coast Range, Klamath and Peninsular Coniferous Forest		Forest
38	84140 Coulter Pine Forest	Forest	Forest
39	84150 Bigcone Spruce (Bigcone Douglas Fir)-Canyon Oak Forest		Forest
40	84230 Sierran Mixed Coniferous Forest		Forest

Id	SanGIS Legend	SanGIS Grouping	Land Cover Grouping
41	84500 Mixed Oak/Coniferous/Bigcone/Coulter		Forest
42	85100 Jeffrey Pine Forest		Forest
43	11100 Eucalyptus Woodland	Non-Native Vegetation, Developed Areas, or Unvegetated Habitat	Forest
44	60000 RIPARIAN AND BOTTOMLAND HABITAT	Riparian and Bottomland Habitat	Forest
45	61000 Riparian Forests		Forest
46	61300 Southern Riparian Forest		Forest
47	61310 Southern Coast Live Oak Riparian Forest		Forest
48	61320 Southern Arroyo Willow Riparian Forest		Forest
49	61330 Southern Cottonwood-willow Riparian Forest		Forest
50	61510 White Alder Riparian Forest		Forest
51	61810 Sonoran Cottonwood-willow Riparian Forest		Forest
52	61820 Mesquite Bosque		Forest
53	62000 Riparian Woodlands		Forest
54	62200 Desert Dry Wash Woodland		Forest
55	62300 Desert Fan Palm Oasis Woodland		Forest
56	62400 Southern Sycamore-alder Riparian Woodland		Forest
57	70000 WOODLAND	Woodland	Forest
58	71000 Cismontane Woodland		Forest
59	71100 Oak Woodland		Forest
60	71120 Black Oak Woodland		Forest
61	71160 Coast Live Oak Woodland		Forest
62	71161 Open Coast Live Oak Woodland		Forest
63	71162 Dense Coast Live Oak Woodland		Forest
64	71162 Dense Coast Love Oak Woodland		Forest
65	71180 Engelmann Oak Woodland	Woodland	Forest
66	71181 Open Engelmann Oak Woodland		Forest
67	71182 Dense Engelmann Oak Woodland		Forest
68	72300 Peninsular Pinon and Juniper Woodlands		Forest
69	72310 Peninsular Pinon Woodland		Forest
70	72320 Peninsular Juniper Woodland and Scrub		Forest
71	75100 Elephant Tree Woodland		Forest
72	77000 Mixed Oak Woodland		Forest
73	78000 Undifferentiated Open Woodland		Forest
74	79000 Undifferentiated Dense Woodland		Forest
75	Engelmann Oak Woodland		Forest
76	52120 Southern Coastal Salt Marsh	Bog and Marsh	Other

Id	SanGIS Legend	SanGIS Grouping	Land Cover Grouping
77	52300 Alkali Marsh		Other
78	52310 Cismontane Alkali Marsh		Other
79	52400 Freshwater Marsh		Other
80	52410 Coastal and Valley Freshwater Marsh		Other
81	52420 Transmontane Freshwater Marsh		Other
82	52440 Emergent Wetland		Other
83	44000 Vernal Pool	Grasslands, Vernal Pools, Meadows, and Other Herb Communities	Other
84	44320 San Diego Mesa Vernal Pool		Other
85	44322 San Diego Mesa Claypan Vernal Pool (southern mesas)		Other
86	13100 Open Water	Non-Native Vegetation, Developed Areas, or Unvegetated Habitat	Other
87	13110 Marine		Other
88	13111 Subtidal		Other
89	13112 Intertidal		Other
90	13121 Deep Bay		Other
91	13122 Intermediate Bay		Other
92	13123 Shallow Bay		Other
93	13130 Estuarine		Other
94	13131 Subtidal		Other
95	13133 Brackishwater		Other
96	13140 Freshwater	Non-Native Vegetation, Developed Areas, or Unvegetated Habitat	Other
97	13200 Non-Vegetated Channel, Floodway, Lakeshore Fringe		Other
98	13300 Saltpan/Mudflats		Other
99	13400 Beach		Other
100	21230 Southern Foredunes	Dune Community	Scrub/Shrub
101	22100 Active Desert Dunes		Scrub/Shrub
102	22300 Stabilized and Partially-Stabilized Desert Sand Field		Scrub/Shrub
103	24000 Stabilized Alkaline Dunes		Scrub/Shrub
104	29000 ACACIA SCRUB		Scrub/Shrub
105	63000 Riparian Scrubs	Riparian and Bottomland Habitat	Scrub/Shrub
106	63300 Southern Riparian Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
107	63310 Mule Fat Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
108	63310 Mulefat Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
109	63320 Southern Willow Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
110	63321 Arundo donnax Dominant/Southern Willow Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
111	63330 Southern Riparian Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
112	63400 Great Valley Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
113	63410 Great Valley Willow Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
114	63800 Colorado Riparian Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
115	63810 Tamarisk Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
116	63820 Arrowweed Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
117	31200 Southern Coastal Bluff Scrub	Scrub and Chaparral	Scrub/Shrub
118	32000 Coastal Scrub		Scrub/Shrub

Id	SanGIS Legend	SanGIS Grouping	Land Cover Grouping
119	32400 Maritime Succulent Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
120	32500 Diegan Coastal Sage Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
121	32510 Coastal form		Scrub/Shrub
122	32520 Inland form (> 1,000 ft. elevation)		Scrub/Shrub
123	32700 Riversidian Sage Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
124	32710 Riversidian Upland Sage Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
125	32720 Alluvial Fan Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
126	33000 Sonoran Desert Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
127	33100 Sonoran Creosote Bush Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
128	33200 Sonoran Desert Mixed Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
129	33210 Sonoran Mixed Woody Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
130	33220 Sonoran Mixed Woody and Succulent Scrub	Scrub and Chaparral	Scrub/Shrub
131	33230 Sonoran Wash Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
132	33300 Colorado Desert Wash Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
133	33600 Encelia Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
134	34000 Mojavean Desert Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
135	34300 Blackbush Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
136	35000 Great Basin Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
137	35200 Sagebrush Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
138	35210 Big Sagebrush Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
139	35210 Sagebrush Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
140	36110 Desert Saltbush Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
141	36120 Desert Sink Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
142	37000 Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
143	37120 Southern Mixed Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
144	37120 Southern Mixed Chapparal		Scrub/Shrub
145	37121 Granitic Southern Mixed Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
146	37121 Southern Mixed Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
147	37122 Mafic Southern Mixed Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
148	37130 Northern Mixed Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
149	37131 Granitic Northern Mixed Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
150	37132 Mafic Northern Mixed Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
151	37200 Chamise Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
152	37210 Granitic Chamise Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
153	37220 Mafic Chamise Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
154	37300 Red Shank Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
155	37400 Semi-Desert Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
156	37500 Montane Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
157	37510 Mixed Montane Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
158	37520 Montane Manzanita Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
159	37530 Montane Ceanothus Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
160	37540 Montane Scrub Oak Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
161	37800 Upper Sonoran Ceanothus Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
162	37830 Ceanothus crassifolius Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
163	37900 Scrub Oak Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub

Id	SanGIS Legend	SanGIS Grouping	Land Cover Grouping
164	37A00 Interior Live Oak Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
165	37C30 Southern Maritime Chaparral	Scrub and Chaparral	Scrub/Shrub
166	37G00 Coastal Sage-Chaparral Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
167	37K00 Flat-topped Buckwheat		Scrub/Shrub
168	39000 Upper Sonoran Subshrub Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
169	Diegan Coastal Sage Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
170	Granitic Northern Mixed Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
171	Southern Mixed Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
172	11000 Non-Native Vegetation	Non-Native Vegetation, Developed Areas, or Unvegetated Habitat	Unknown
173	11000 Non-Native VegetionVegetation		Unknown
174	11200 Disturbed Wetland		Unknown
175	11300 Disturbed Habitat		Unknown
176	13000 Unvegetated Habitat		Unknown
177	Disturbed Habitat		Unknown

Table H.6-3: Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas

GLU	Geology	Land Cover	Slope (%)
CB-Agricultural/Grass-3	Coarse Bedrock	Agricultural/Grass	20% - 40%
CB-Agricultural/Grass-4	Coarse Bedrock	Agricultural/Grass	>40%
CB-Forest-2	Coarse Bedrock	Forest	10 – 20%
CB-Forest-3	Coarse Bedrock	Forest	20% - 40%
CB-Forest-4	Coarse Bedrock	Forest	>40%
CB-Scrub/Shrub-4	Coarse Bedrock	Scrub/Shrub	>40%
CB-Unknown-4	Coarse Bedrock	Unknown	>40%
CSI-Agricultural/Grass-2	Coarse Sedimentary Impermeable	Agricultural/Grass	10 – 20%
CSI-Agricultural/Grass-3	Coarse Sedimentary Impermeable	Agricultural/Grass	20% - 40%
CSI-Agricultural/Grass-4	Coarse Sedimentary Impermeable	Agricultural/Grass	>40%
CSP-Agricultural/Grass-4	Coarse Sedimentary Permeable	Agricultural/Grass	>40%
CSP-Forest-3	Coarse Sedimentary Permeable	Forest	20% - 40%
CSP-Forest-4	Coarse Sedimentary Permeable	Forest	>40%
CSP-Scrub/Shrub-4	Coarse Sedimentary Permeable	Scrub/Shrub	>40%

Worksheet H.6-1: Verification of GLUs

Verification of GLUs		Worksheet H.6-1
Detailed project-level review of GLUs may be performed to verify the presence or absence of potential critical coarse sediment yield areas within the project site and/or upstream areas. Use this form to document the evaluation of slope, geology, and land cover combined to determine the site-specific GLUs. Complete all sections of this form.		
Project Name:		
Project Tracking Number / Permit Application Number:		
1	What are the pre-project slopes?	☐ 0% to 10% (1) ☐ 10% to 20% (2) ☐ 20% to 40% (3) ☐ >40% (4)
2	What is the underlying geology? Refer to Appendix H.6 to classify geologic categories into a geology grouping. Note: site-specific geology may be determined in the field by a qualified geologist.	☐ Coarse bedrock (CB) ☐ Coarse sedimentary impermeable (CSI) ☐ Coarse sedimentary permeable (CSP) ☐ Fine bedrock (FB) ☐ Fine sedimentary impermeable (FSI) ☐ Fine sedimentary permeable (FSP) ☐ Other (O)
3	What is the pre-project land cover? Refer to Appendix H.6 for land cover category definitions. Note: Land cover shall be determined from aerial photography and/or field visit.	☐ Agriculture/grass ☐ Forest ☐ Developed ☐ Scrub/shrub ☐ Other ☐ Unknown
4	List the GLU(s) within the project site and/or upstream areas. Note the GLU nomenclature format is as follows: Geology – Land Cover – Slope Category (e.g. "CB-Agricultural/Grass-3" for a GLU consisting of coarse bedrock geology, agricultural/grass land cover, and 20% to 40% slope).	

Worksheet H.6-1; Page 2 of 2			
5	Photo(s) Insert photos representative of the slopes, land cover, and geology.		
6	Are any of the GLUs found within the project boundary and/or upstream areas (listed in row 4) also listed in Table H.6-1?	☐ Yes	Go to 7
		☐ No	Go to 8
7	End – Provide management measures for preservation of coarse sediment supply as described in this guidance document, or the project applicant may elect to determine whether downstream systems would be sensitive to reduction of coarse sediment yield from the project site and/or perform site-specific method for mapping critical coarse sediment yield areas.		
8	End – Site-specific GLUs do not warrant preservation of coarse sediment supply, no measures for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas onsite are necessary. Optional: use the note section below to provide justification for these findings.		
9	Notes		

H.6.2 Assumptions for Regional WMAA PCCSYA Maps

This section summarizes the assumptions used while developing Regional WMAA PCCSYA maps that are not listed in Appendix H.6.1.1:

- Critical coarse sediment would be generated from GLUs that are
    - composed of geologic units likely to generate coarse sediment (i.e. produces greater than 50% sand (0.074 mm; no. 200 sieve) by weight when weathered); and
    - have a potential for high relative sediment production (GLUs that produce soil loss greater than 8.4 tons/acre/year are assigned a high relative rating, this corresponds to 42% of the total coarse soil loss from the MS4-permitted region within the County of San Diego)
- Relative sediment production was assigned using RUSLE analysis of GLUs. It was assumed that this relative rating represents sediment production from sheet erosion, rill erosion, gullies and lower order channels, since these features are mostly on the hillslopes that are represented by the GLUs.
    - While performing the RUSLE analysis to assign the relative ranking, C factor from the regional maps from USEPA was adjusted to 0 for developed land covers to account for management actions implemented on developed sites (e.g. impervious surfaces).
- WMAA mapping does not account for sediment production from in-stream sediment supply (since these are mostly protected through other regulations) and sediment production from mass failures like landslides which are difficult to estimate on a regional scale without performing extensive field investigations.
- Regional WMAA map assumes that all receiving waters require coarse sediment and the map also does not account for potential existing impediments that may hinder delivery of coarse sediment to receiving waters.

For additional details refer to the Regional WMAA document on the Project Clean Water website at the following address:

http://www.projectcleanwater.org/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=248&Itemid=219

H.6.3 Encroachment Allowance for Regional PCCSYA WMAA Map

When an applicant uses the regional PCCSYA map from WMAA to define onsite CCSYAs an encroachment allowance of up to 5% within each POC drainage boundary is allowed.

The following provides the supporting rational for 5% encroachment:

Step 1. Sp has to be greater than 0.5, based on current understanding of risks to receiving waters arising from changes in sediment production (SCCWRP Technical Report 605, 2010).

Step 2. Estimated Sp (Equation H.8.11) = $0.7*SY_{RUSLE}+0.3*SY_{NHD} = 0.7*0.42 + 0.3*1 = 0.59$

a. Based on RUSLE analysis conducted during Regional WMAA the GLUs mapped as PCCSYAs contribute 42% of the bed sediment yield (i.e. $SY_{RUSLE} = 0.42$)

b. Disturbance to NHDPlus channels are protected through 401 water quality certifications issued by the RWQCB, so it is assumed that SYNHD =1

Step 3. Dividing the Sp estimate from Step 2 by the required Sp in Step 1 provides the factor of safety that is currently implicit in the regional WMAA PCCSYA map = 0.59/0.5 = 1.18 or 18% factor of safety

Step 4. The remaining factor of safety after accounting for the proposed encroachment of 5% = 18% - 5% = 13%

H.7 Downstream System Sensitivity to Coarse Sediment

If an applicant has identified onsite and/or upstream PCCSYAs and elects to perform additional optional analyses to refine the PCCSYA designation, the guidance presented below should be followed. Protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas is a necessary element of hydromodification management because coarse sediment supply is as much an issue for causing erosive conditions to receiving streams as are accelerated flows. However, not all downstream systems warrant preservation of coarse sediment supply nor all source areas need to be protected. The following guidance shall be used to refine PCCSYA designations:

- Depositional Analysis (Appendix H.7.1)
- Threshold Channel Analysis (Appendix H.7.2)
- Coarse Sediment Source Area Verification (Appendix H.7.3)

H.7.1 Depositional Analysis

Areas identified as PCCSYAs may be removed from consideration if it is demonstrated that these sources are deposited into existing systems prior to reaching the first downstream unlined water of the state. Systems resulting in deposition may include existing natural sinks, existing structural BMPs, existing hardened MS4 systems, or other existing similar features. Applicants electing to perform depositional analysis to refine PCCSYA mapping must meet the following criteria to qualify for exemption from CCSYA designation:

- The existing hardened MS4 system that is being analyzed should be upstream of the first downstream unlined waters of the state; **and**

- The peak velocity from the discrete 2-year, 24-hour runoff event for the existing hardened MS4 system that is being analyzed is less than three feet per second.

The three feet per second criteria is consistent with the recommended minimum velocity for storm and sanitary sewers in ASCE Manual of Engineering Practice No. 37 (ASCE, 1970).

In limited scenarios, applicant may have the option to establish site specific minimum self-cleansing velocity using Equation H.7-1 or other appropriate equations instead of using the default three feet per second criteria. This site specific analysis must be documented in the SWQMP and the [City Engineer] has the discretion to request additional analysis prior to approving a site specific minimum self-cleansing velocity. If an applicant chooses to establish a site specific minimum self-cleansing velocity for refinement, then the applicant must design any new bypass hardened conveyance systems proposed by the project to meet the site specific criteria.

Equation H.7-1: Minimum Self Cleansing Velocity

$$V = \frac{1.486}{n} R^{1/6} \left[B\left(s_g - 1\right) D_g\right]^{1/2}$$

Where:

V = minimum self-cleansing velocity (ft/sec)
R = hydraulic radius (ft)
n = Manning's roughness coefficient (unitless)
B = constant equal to 0.04 for clean granular particles (unitless)
sg = specific gravity of sediment particle (unitless): Use 2.65
Dg = sediment particle diameter (inches): Use 0.20 in

H.7.2 Threshold Channel Analysis

A threshold channel is a stream channel in which channel boundary material has no significant movement during the design flow. If there is no movement of bed load in the stream channel, then it is not anticipated that reductions in sediment supply will be detrimental to stream stability because the channel bed consists of the parent material and not coarse sediment supplied from upstream. In such a situation, changes in sediment supply are not considered a geomorphic condition of concern.

SCCWRP Technical Report 562 (2008) states the following in regards to sand vs. gravel bed behavior/threshold vs. live-bed contrasts:

> "Sand and gravel systems are quite varied in their transport of sediment and their sensitivity to sediment supply. On the former, sand-bed channels typically have live beds, which transport sediment continuously even at relatively low flows. Conversely, gravel/cobble-bed channels generally transport the bulk of their bed sediment load more episodically, requiring higher flow events for bed mobility (i.e., threshold behavior)."
>
> "Sand-bed streams without vertical control are much more sensitive to perturbations in flow and sediment regimes than coarse-grain (gravel/cobble) threshold channels. This has clear implications in their respective management regarding hydromodification (i.e., sand systems being relatively more susceptible than coarser systems). This also has direct implications for the issue of sediment trapping by storm water practices in watersheds draining to sand-bed streams, as well as general loss of sediment supply following the conversion from undeveloped sparsely-vegetated to developed well-vegetated via irrigation."

The following provides guidance for evaluating whether a stream channel is a threshold channel or not. This determination is important because while accounting for changes in bed sediment supply is appropriate for quantifying geomorphic impacts in non-threshold stream channels, it is not considered appropriate for threshold channels. The domain of analysis for this evaluation shall be the same as that used to evaluate susceptibility, per SCCWRP Technical Report 606, Field Manual for Assessing Channel Susceptibility (2010). This domain is defined by the following upstream and downstream boundaries:

- From the point of compliance proceed downstream until reaching one of the following:
    - At least one reach downstream of the first grade-control point (preferably second downstream grade control location);
    - Tidal backwater/lentic (still water) waterbody;
    - Equal order tributary (Strahler 1952);
    - A 2-fold increase in drainage area.

  OR demonstrate sufficient flow attenuation through existing hydrologic modeling.

- From the point of compliance proceed upstream for 20 channel top widths OR to the first grade control in good condition, whichever comes first.

Applicant must complete Worksheet H.7-1 to document selection of the domain of analysis. If the entire domain of analysis is classified as a threshold channel, then the PDP can be exempt from the MS4 Permit requirement for sediment supply. The following definitions from the Natural Resources Conservation Service's (NRCS) National Engineering Handbook Part 654 - Stream Restoration Design (2007) are helpful in understanding what a threshold channel is.

- **Alluvial Channel**: Streams and channels that have bed and banks formed of material transported by the stream. There is an exchange of material between the inflowing sediment load and the bed and banks of an alluvial channel (NRCS, 2007).
- **Threshold Channel**: A channel in which channel boundary material has no significant movement during the design flow (NRCS, 2007).

The key factor for determining whether a channel is a threshold channel is the composition of its bed material. Larger bed sediment consisting primarily of cobbles and boulders are typically immobile, unless the channel is a large river with sufficient discharge to regularly transport such grain sizes as bed load. As a rule-of-thumb, channels with bed material that can withstand a 10-year peak discharge without incipient motion are considered threshold channels and not live-bed alluvial channels. Threshold channel beds typically consist of cobbles, boulders, bedrock, or very dense vegetation (e.g., a thicket). Threshold channels also includes channels that have existing grade control structures that protect the stream channels from hydromodification impacts.

For a project to be exempt from coarse sediment supply requirements, the applicant must submit the following for approval to the [City Engineer]:

- Photographic documentation and grain size analysis used to determine the d_{50} of the bed material; <u>and</u>
- Calculations that show that the receiving water of concern meets the specific stream power criteria defined below <u>or</u> a finding from a geomorphologist that the stream channel has existing grade control structures that protect the stream channel from hydromodification impacts.

<u>**Specific Stream Power**</u>

Specific (i.e., unit) stream power is the rate at which the energy of flowing water is expended on the bed and banks of a channel (refer to Equation H.7-1). SCCWRP studies have found that locating channels on a plot of Specific Stream Power at Q_{10} (as calculated by the Hawley et al. method optimized for Southern California watersheds – Figure H.7-1) versus median channel grain size is a good predictor of channel stability. The Q_{10} equation from SCCWRP TR 606 is presented as Equation H.7-2.

Equation H.7-2: Calculation of Specific Stream Power

$$Specific\ Stream\ Power = \frac{Total\ Stream\ Power}{Channel\ Width} = \frac{\gamma QS}{w}$$

<u>Where:</u>

γ: Specific Weight of Water (9810 N/m^3)
Q: Flow Rate (dominant discharge in many cases, m^3/sec)
S: Slope of Channel
w: Channel Width (meters)

Equation H.7-3: Calculation of Q_{10} using the Hawley et al. method

$$Q_{10cfs} = 18.2 * A^{0.87} * P^{0.77}$$

<u>Where:</u>

Q_{10cfs}: 10 year Flow Rate in cubic feet per second
A: Drainage Area in sq. miles
P: Mean Annual Precipitation in inches

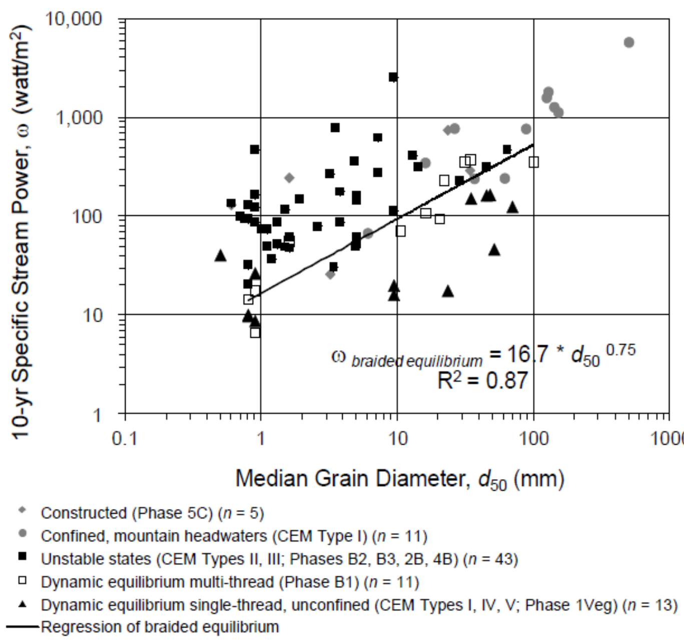


Figure H.7-1: Threshold of stream instability based on specific stream power and channel sediment diameter

Since the SCCWRP TR 606 Q_{10} (Equation H.7-3) does not explicitly consider watershed imperviousness, adjustment factors (AF) shown in Figure H.7-2 were developed using the following Equation H.7-4 for Q_{10} from SCCWRP TR 654 to account for imperviousness while estimating Q_{10}.

Equation H.7-4: Calculation of Q_{10} using equation from SCCWRP TR 654

$$Q_{10} = e^{3.61} * A^{0.865} * DD^{0.804} * P_{224}^{0.778} * IMP^{0.096}$$

Where:

Q_{10}: 10 year Flow Rate
A: Drainage Area in sq. miles
DD: Drainage Density
P_{224}: 2-Year 24-Hour Precipitation in inches
IMP: Watershed Imperviousness

Adjustment factors were developed as part of this methodology by changing the watershed imperviousness in Equation H.7-4 and keeping the remaining terms constant. Adjustment factor for imperviousness of 3.6% was set to 1; since it is the mean imperviousness of the dataset used to develop the stability curve in Figure H.7-1. Updated Q_{10} equation with adjustment factor is presented as Equation H.7-5 below:

Equation H.7-5: Calculation of Q_{10} with Adjustment Factor for Watershed Imperviousness

$$Q_{10cfs} = AF * 18.2 * A^{0.87} * P^{0.77}$$

Where:

Q_{10cfs}: 10 year Flow Rate in cubic feet per second
AF: Adjustment Factor
A: Drainage Area in sq. miles
P: Mean Annual Precipitation in inches

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

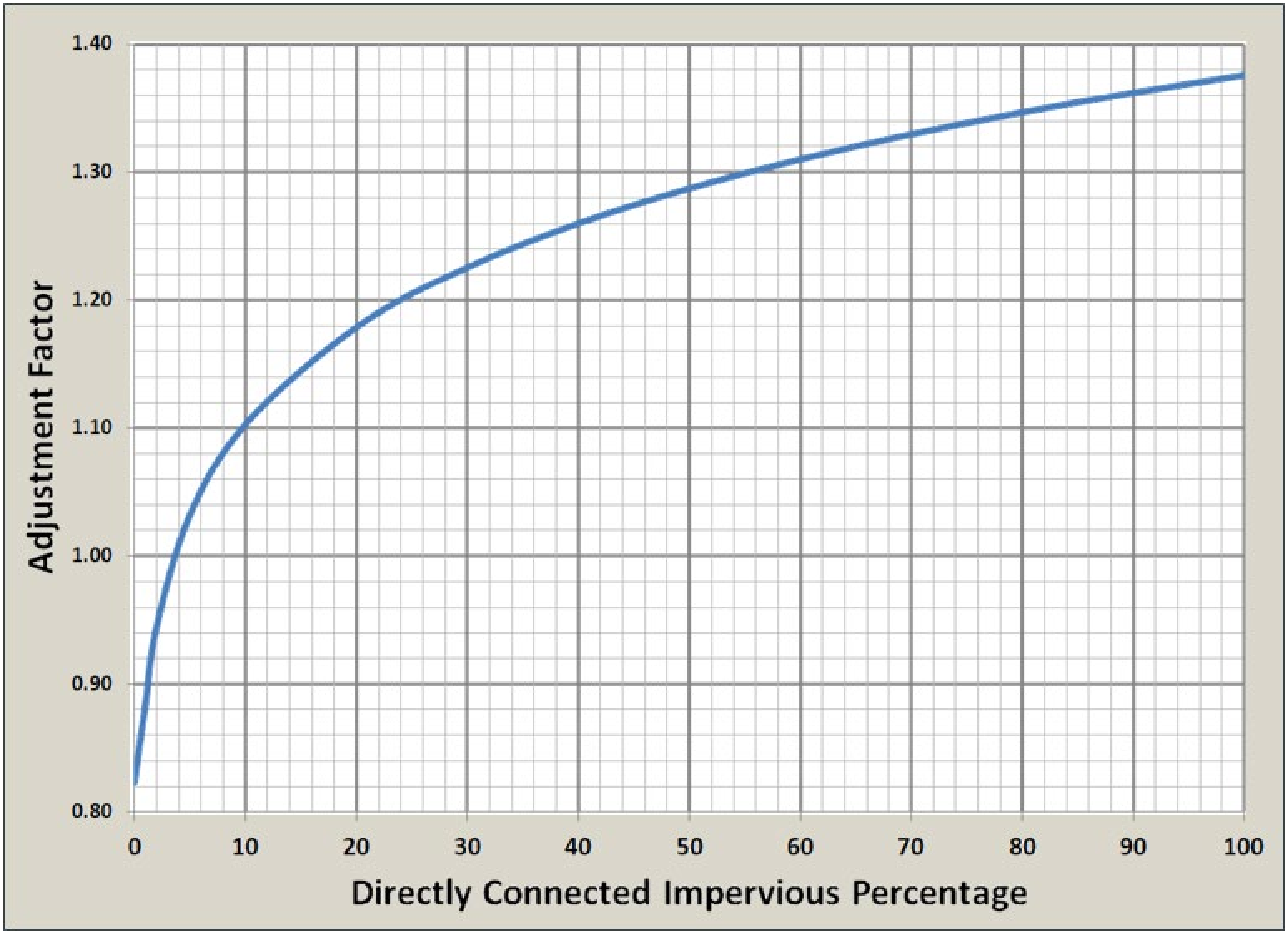


Figure H.7-2: Adjustment factor to account for imperviousness while estimating Q_{10}

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Steps for evaluating the specific stream power criteria are presented below:

- **Step 1**: Calculate the specific stream power for the receiving water. Use Equation H.7-1, H.7-4 and Figure H.7-2. Directly connected imperviousness shall be estimated using guidance provided in the Water Quality Equivalency guidance document.
- **Step 2**: Determine the d_{50} of representative cross section within the domain of analysis.
- **Step 3**: Use results from Step 1 and Step 2; and Figure H.7-1 to determine if the receiving water meets the specific stream power criteria. Receiving water shall be considered meeting the specific stream power criteria when the point plotted based on results from Step 1 and Step 2 is below the solid line in Figure H.7-1.

H.7.3 Coarse Sediment Source Area Verification

When it has been determined that PCCSYAs are present, and it has been determined that downstream systems require protection, additional analysis may be performed that may refine the extents of actual CCSYAs to be protected onsite. The following analysis shall be performed to determine if the mapped PCCSYAs are a significant source of bed sediment supply to the receiving water, based on the coarse sediment proportion of the soil onsite

- Obtain a grain size distribution per ASTM D422 for the project's PCCSYA that is being evaluated.
- Identify whether the source material is a coarse grained or fine grained soil. Coarse grained is defined as over 50% by weight coarse than no. 200 sieve (i.e., $d_{50} > 0.074$ mm).
- By performing this analysis, the applicant can exclude PCCSYAs that are determined to be fine grained (i.e., $d_{50} < 0.074$ mm). Fine grained soils are not considered significant sources of bed sediment supply.
- Applicant shall include the following information in the SWQMP when this refinement option is performed:
    - Map with locations on where the grain size distribution analysis was performed;
    - Photographic documentation; and
    - Grain size distribution.
- Additional grain size distribution analysis may be requested at specific locations by the County prior to approval of this refinement.

Areas that are not expected to be a significant source of bed sediment supply (i.e. fine grained soils) to the receiving stream do not require protection and are not considered CCSYAs.

If it is determined that the PCCSYAs are producing sediment that is critical to receiving streams, or if the optional additional analysis presented above has not been performed, the project must provide management measures for protection of critical coarse sediment yield (refer to Appendix H.2, H.3 and H.4).

Worksheet H.7-1: Domain of Analysis

Domain of Analysis		Worksheet H.7-1
Use this form to document the domain of analysis		
Project Name:		
Project Tracking Number / Permit Application Number:		
Part 1: Identify Domain of Analysis		
Project Location (at proposed storm water discharge point)		
1	Address:	
2	Latitude (decimal degrees):	
3	Longitude (decimal degrees):	
4	Watershed:	
Basis for determining downstream limit:		
Channel length from discharge point to downstream limit:		
Basis for determining upstream limit:		
Channel length from discharge point to upstream limit:		

Worksheet H.7-1; Page 2 of 2
Photo(s) Map or aerial photo of site. Include channel alignment and tributaries, project discharge point, upstream and downstream limits of analysis, ID number and boundaries of geomorphic channel units, and any other features used to determine limits (e.g. exempt water body, grade control)

H.8 Calculation Methodology for Ep and Sp

One method for quantifying hydromodification impacts to stream channels, which takes into account changes in the four factors in Lane's relationship (i.e., hydrology, channel geometry, bed and bank material, and sediment supply), is to compare long-term changes in sediment transport capacity, or in-stream work, to bed sediment supply. For the purposes of demonstrating no net impact within the MS4-permitted region of the County of San Diego, Erosion Potential (Ep) is defined as the ratio of post-project/pre-development (natural) long-term transport capacity or work. To calculate Ep, the hydrology, channel geometry, and bed/bank material factors mentioned above need to be characterized for both land use scenarios. Sediment Supply Potential (Sp) is defined as the ratio of post-project/pre-project (existing) long-term bed sediment supply. While evaluating changes in discharge and sediment supply is done primarily as a desktop analysis, geomorphic field assessment is often necessary to characterize channel geometry and bed/bank material, and to ground truth assumptions for the desktop analyses. This appendix provides methodologies for the following:

- Calculation of Ep, and
- Calculation of Sp.

H.8.1 Calculation of Ep

Erosion Potential (Ep) is defined as the ratio of post-project/pre-development (natural) long-term transport capacity or work. To calculate Ep, the hydrology, channel geometry, and bed/bank material factors mentioned above need to be characterized for both land use scenarios. Traditionally, Ep is calculated based on a watershed-scale analysis (using future built out conditions) of the area tributary to a given receiving channel of concern at the point of compliance. However, watershed-scale continuous hydrologic modeling might not be feasible for small projects, with this understanding specific simplification steps for project-scale modeling are provided in this appendix. The applicant shall perform Ep calculations using one of the following methods, as applicable:

- **<u>Simplified Ep Method</u>**: Applicable when the default low flow threshold of $0.1Q_2$ is used and no changes to the receiving water are proposed. Refer to Appendix H.8.1.1.
- **<u>Standard Ep Method</u>**: Applicable for all scenarios. Refer to Appendix H.8.1.2.

H.8.1.1 Simplified Ep Method

The simplified method is based on the relationships developed by Parra (2016) between the flow duration curve in the pre-development and post-project conditions and the standard simplified work equation. These relationships were developed using standard hydraulic equations and approximations that are applicable for channels of any lateral slope and the following geometrical cross sections: (a) wide rectangular sections; (b) relatively wide parabolic sections, and (c) triangular sections. The simplified Ep method is only applicable when the default low flow threshold of $0.1Q_2$ has been selected by the applicant for flow duration control and no changes to the receiving water geometry are proposed. Applicants shall follow Steps 1 through 3 to calculate Ep using the simplified methodology:

1. Perform continuous hydrologic simulation for the pre-development and post-project condition following guidelines in Appendix G. Generate flow bins and flow duration tables for the range of flows from $0.1Q_2$ to Q_{10}.

2. Calculate the total work in the pre-development and the post-project condition using Equation H.8.1

Equation E.8-1: Total Work (Simplified)

$$W_t = \sum_{j=1}^{n} \Delta t_j . \left(Q^{3m/2} - (0.1Q_2)^{3m/2}\right)^{1.5} \quad Q^m$$

Where:

W_t = Total Work [dimensionless]

Δt_j = Duration per flow bin

Q = Flow Rates estimated in STEP 1 [cfs] for a typical bin "j". Usually, in Flow Duration Curve (FDC) analyses, the number of bins is 100, so j = 1 to n (with n= 100). However, the number of bins can be as small as 20 (n = 20).

Q_2 = Pre-development 2-year peak flow [cfs]

m = exponent based on the function of the receiving channels geometry.

- For narrow creek where the top width is 7 times or less the corresponding depth, m = 1/4.
- For intermediate creeks, where the top width is more than 7 times but less than 25 times the depth, m = 4/13.
- For wide creeks, where the top width is more than 25 times the depth, m = 2/5.

3. Ep is calculated by dividing the total work of the post-project condition by that of the pre-development (natural) condition (Equation H.8-2). Ep is expressed as:

Equation H.8-2: Ep (Simplified)

$$E_p = W_{t,post} / W_{t,pre}$$

Where:

E_p = Erosion Potential [unitless]

$W_{t,post}$ = Total Work associated with the post-project condition [unitless]

$W_{t,pre}$ = Total Work associated with the pre-development condition [unitless]

H.8.1.2 Standard Ep Method

While using the standard method, Ep calculation must be performed using the receiving water information from the point of compliance. Suggested steps for performing an Ep analysis are shown in the Figure H.8-1 below. This section describes each analysis step shown in Figure H.8-1, including the inputs and outputs of each step.

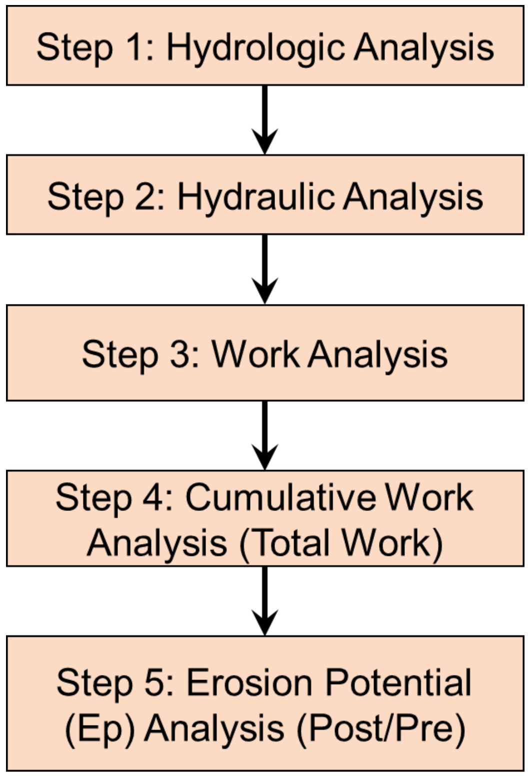


Figure H.8-1: Erosion Potential Flow Chart

STEP 1: CONTINOUS HYDROLOGIC ANALYSIS

Hydrologic models are applied to simulate the hydrologic response of the watershed under pre-development and post-project conditions for a continuous period of record. Modeling software appropriate for this type of simulation includes USEPA's Storm Water Management Model (SWMM), Hydrological Simulation Program – Fortran (HSPF) developed by the USGS and USEPA, USACE's Hydrologic Modeling System (HEC-HMS), and the San Diego Hydrology Model (SDHM) developed by Clear Creek Solutions, Inc. SDHM uses an HSPF computational engine, long-term precipitation data, and is a visually-oriented interactive tool for automated modeling and facility sizing.

Input parameters for these continuous simulations are hourly precipitation data for a long-term (>30 years) record, sub-catchment delineation, impervious cover, soil type, vegetative cover, terrain steepness, lag time or flow path length, and monthly evapotranspiration rate. The primary output is a simulated discharge record associated with the receiving channel of concern. Flow routing through drainage conveyances is necessary for continuous hydrologic analysis at the watershed scale. Appendix G provides guidance for developing continuous simulation models.

Traditionally, a hydrograph (Figure H.8-2) is the primary means for graphically comparing discharge records; however, a hydrograph is not ideal because long-term flow records span several decades.

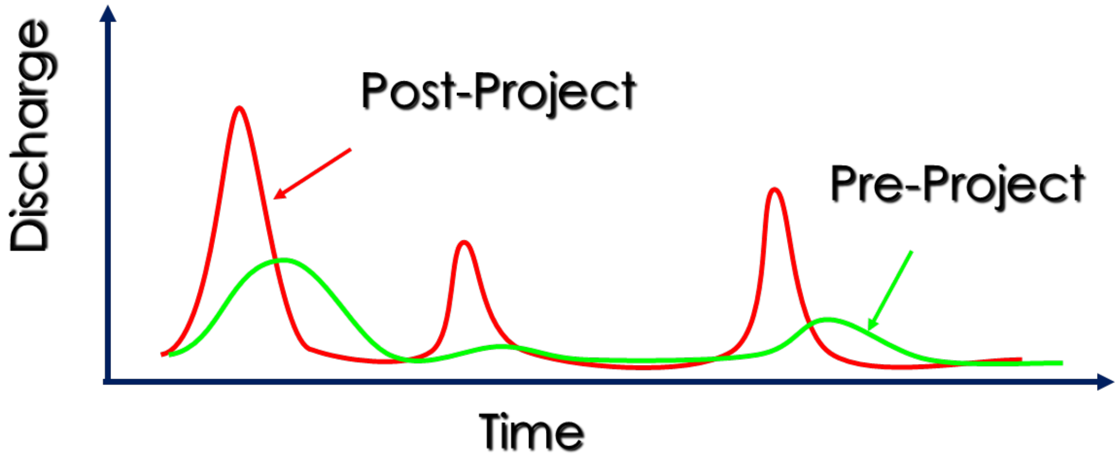


Figure H.8-2: Example Hydrograph Comparison

Instead, a more effective means for comparing long-term continuous discharge records is to create a flow histogram, which differentiates the simulated flowrates into distinct "flow bins" so that the duration of flow for each bin can be tabulated. One method for establishing the distribution of flow bins is to increment the flow bins according to increments of flow stage using a hydraulic analysis, such as the normal depth equation. In this way, the hydraulic analysis step (Step 2) can be considered an input to the continuous hydrologic analysis step. While there is no established rule of thumb for how many flow bins are necessary, it is suggested that no less than 20 be used for an Ep analysis. An example of a flow histogram is provided on Figure H.8-3.

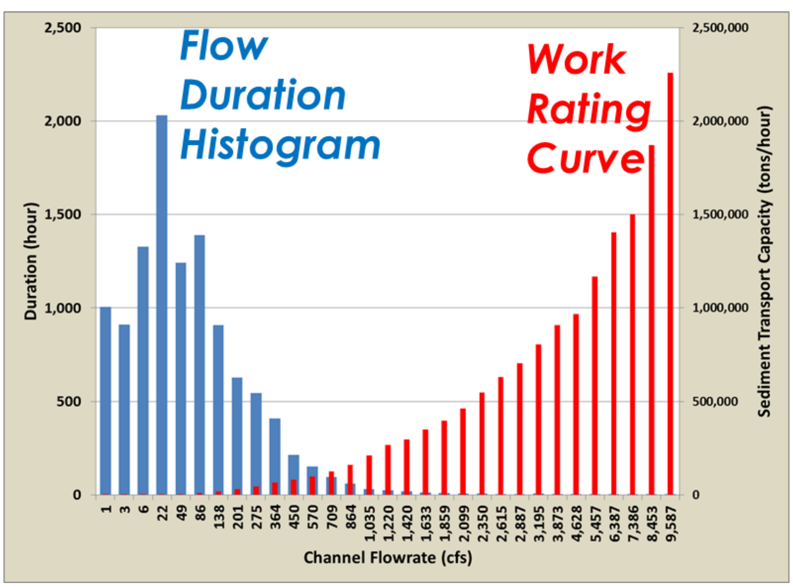


Figure H.8-3: Example Flow Duration Histogram

Flow duration curves are another commonly used method for graphically interpreting long-term flow records. A flow duration curve is simply a plot of flowrate (y-axis) versus the cumulative duration, or percentage of time, that a flowrate is equaled or exceeded in the simulation record (x-axis). Figure H.8-4 provides an example flow duration curve comparison.

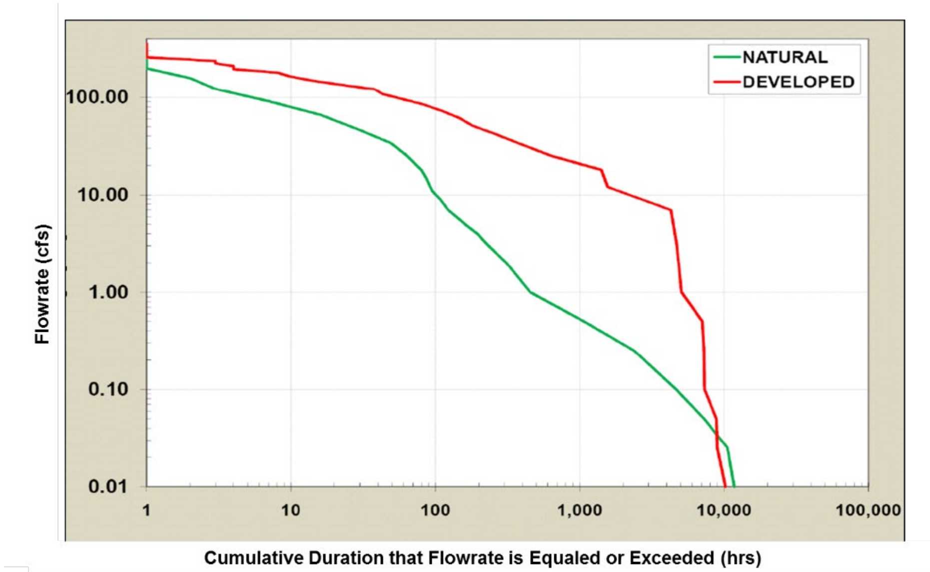


Figure H.8-4: Example Flow Duration Curve

Scaling Factor for Project-Scale Modeling

Project-scale flow rates derived from continuous hydrologic simulation can be scaled using the ratio of the pre-development 2-year peak discharge for the watershed and project catchment (i.e., Q_2 watershed / Q_2 project catchment) so that hydraulic and effective work calculations can be performed at the point of compliance with a larger tributary watershed. This scaling translates the runoff from the project catchment to its contribution to erosivity in the down gradient receiving channel, without the need for a complex watershed-scale continuous hydrologic model.

Applicant can estimate the scaling factor using Equation H.8.3. The scaling factor equation was developed using the 2-year peak flow rate empirical equation from Hawley and Bledsoe (2011) and removing the terms (average annual precipitation and imperviousness (pre-development condition as required by the MS4 Permit) that are constant.

Equation H.8-3: Scaling Factor

$$Scaling\ Factor = \left(\frac{A_{watershed}}{A_{project}}\right)^{0.667}$$

Where:

$A_{watershed}$ = total watershed drainage area at the point of compliance(mi^2)

$A_{project}$= total project drainage area (mi^2)

STEP 2: HYDRAULIC ANALYSIS

Hydraulic parameters, such as stage, effective shear stress, and flow velocity, are computed for each designated flow bin using channel geometry and roughness data. Hydraulic calculations can be as simple as using the normal flow equation and obtaining results for the central channel or as complicated as using hydraulic models which account for backwater effects, such as HEC-RAS.

Using the formula for unit tractive force (Chow 1959), effective shear stress is expressed using equation H.8.4

Equation H.8-4: Effective Shear Stress

$$\tau = \gamma RS$$

Where:

τ = Effective Shear Stress [lb/ft^2]

γ = Unit Weight of Water [62.4 lb/ft^3]

R= Hydraulic Radius [ft]

S = Energy Gradient Assumed Equal to Longitudinal Slope [ft/ft].

Normal depth can be estimated using Manning's equation (Equation H.8.5). Several sources provide lists of roughness coefficients for use in hydraulic analysis (Chow, 1959).

Equation H.8-5: Manning's Equation

$$Q = \frac{1.49AR^{0.67}S^{0.5}}{n} \quad or \quad V = \frac{1.49R^{0.67}S^{0.5}}{n}$$

Where:

Q = Peak Flowrate [cfs]

V = Average Flow Velocity [ft/s]

A = Cross-Section Flow Area [ft^2]

R = Hydraulic Radius [ft] = A/P

P = Wetted Perimeter [ft]

S = Energy Gradient Assumed Equal to Longitudinal Slope [ft/ft]

n = Manning Roughness [unit less]

Channel geometry inputs should be characterized by surveying cross-sections and longitudinal profiles of the active channel at strategic locations. Methods of collecting topographic survey data can range from traditional survey techniques (auto level, cloth tape, and survey rod), to conducting a detailed ground-based LiDAR survey.

STEP 3: WORK ANALYSIS

Hydraulic results for each flow bin along with the critical bed/bank material strength parameters are input into a work or sediment transport function in order to produce a work or transport rating curve. An example of such a rating curve is provided on Figure H.8-3. The work equations can range from simplistic indices, material-specific sediment transport equations, or more complex functions based on site-calibrated sediment transport rating curves.

- **Simplistic indices:** An acceptable equation for effective work, as stated in the Los Angeles Regional MS4 Permit (LARWQCB, 2012) is expressed using equation H.8.6:

Equation H.8-6: Effective Work

$$W = (\tau - \tau_c)^{1.5} V$$

Where:

W = Work [dimensionless];

τ = Effective Shear Stress [lb/ft^2];

τ_c = Critical Shear Stress [lb/ft^2];

V = Mid-Channel Flow Velocity [ft/s]

- **Material-specific sediment transport equations**: Material specific sediment transport equations are allowed to estimate the sediment transport capacity in the post-project and pre-development condition.
- **Site-calibrated sediment transport curves**: Applicants may have an option to use site-calibrated sediment transport curves. In the future these may be available based on monitoring efforts being performed to support the County of San Diego's Hydromodification Management Plan.

The critical shear stress to be used in equation H.8.6 must be estimated using one of the following:

- Shear stress corresponding to the critical flow rate or low flow threshold (Qc). Qc is the flowrate that results in incipient motion of bed or bank material, whichever is least resistant. Qc is expressed as a fraction of the pre-development 2-year peak flow. The allowable low flow threshold Qc can be estimated as 10%, 30%, or 50% of the pre-development 2-year peak flow ($0.1Q_2$, $0.3Q_2$, or $0.5Q_2$) depending on the receiving stream susceptibility to erosion, per SCCWRP Technical Report 606, Field Manual for Assessing Channel Susceptibility (SCCWRP, 2010). If a channel susceptibility assessment is not performed, then the conservative default is a Qc equal to $0.1Q_2$.
- Bed and bank material can also be characterized through a geomorphic field assessment. For each stream location analyzed, a measure of critical shear stress can be obtained for the weakest bed or bank material prevalent in the channel. For non-cohesive material, a Wolman pebble count or sieve analysis can be used to obtain a grain size distribution, which can be converted to a critical shear stress using empirical relationships or published reference tables. For cohesive material, an in-situ jet test or reference tables are used. For banks reinforced with vegetation, reference tables are generally used. Appropriate references for critical shear stress values are provided in ASCE No.77 (1992) and Fischenich (2001). To account for the effects

of vegetation density and channel irregularities, the applied shear stress can be partitioned into channel form and bed/bank roughness components. SCCWRP Technical Report 667 also has guidance for estimating critical shear stress.

STEP 4: CUMULATIVE WORK ANALYSIS

Cumulative work is a measure of the long-term total work or sediment transport capacity performed at a creek location. It incorporates the distribution of both discharge magnitude and duration for the flow rates simulated. The cumulative work analysis must be performed up to the maximum geomorphically significant flow of Q_{10}. To calculate cumulative work, first multiply the work (from STEP 3) and duration associated with each flow bin (from STEP 1). Then, the total work is obtained by summing the cumulative for all flow binds (Q_c to Q_{10}). This analysis can be expressed as:

Equation H.8-7: Cumulative Work

$$W_t = \sum_{i=1}^{n} W_i \, \Delta t_i$$

Where:

W_t = Total Work [dimensionless]

W_i = Work per flow bin [dimensionless]

Δt = Duration per flow bin [hours]

n = number of flow bins

The distribution of cumulative work, also referred to as a work curve (or work histogram), is helpful in understanding which flow rates are performing the most work on the channel of interest. An example work curve is provided in Figure H.8-5.

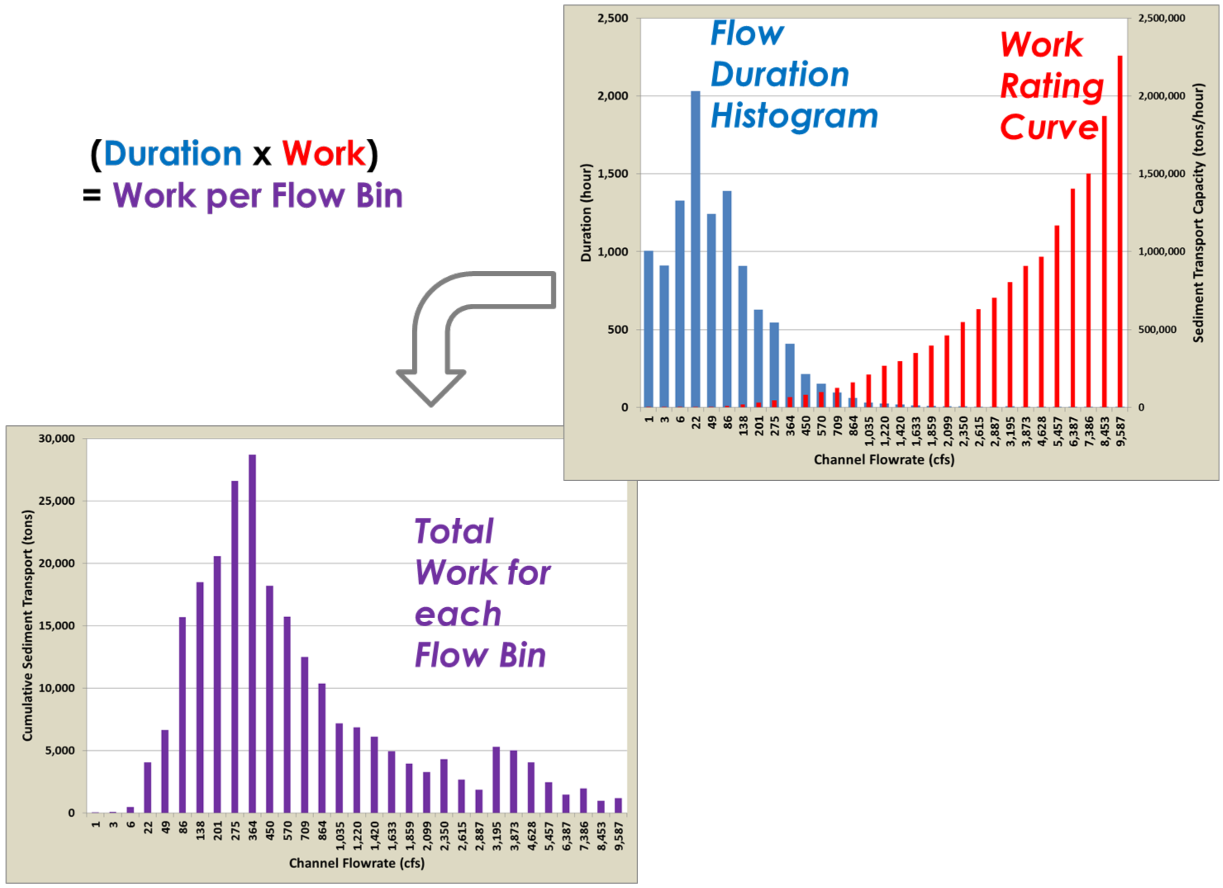


Figure H.8-5 Example Work Curve

STEP 5: EROSION POTENTIAL ANALYSIS

Ep is calculated by simply dividing the total work of the post-project condition by that of the pre-development (natural) condition. Ep is expressed as:

H.8-8: Erosion Potential

$$E_p = W_{t,post} / W_{t,pre}$$

Where:

E_p = Erosion Potential [unitless]

$W_{t,post}$ = Total Work associated with the post-project condition [unitless]

$W_{t,pre}$ = Total Work associated with the pre-development condition [unitless]

As applicable, the applicant must use Worksheet H.8-1 and H.8-2 to document the Ep calculations for each point of compliance.

Erosion Potential (Ep) Analysis		Worksheet H.8-1	
Background Information			
1	Low Flow Threshold: results of SCCWRP channel susceptibility analysis (Select 0.1*Q_2 if analysis has not been performed).	☐ 0.1*Q2 ☐ 0.3*Q2 ☐ 0.5*Q2	
2	Selected Ep Method	☐ Simplified Ep Method ☐ Standard Ep Method	
2	Hydrologic Analysis: Select hydrologic analysis method.	☐ Project-Scale ☐ Project-Scale and Watershed-Scale Continuous Simulation	
4	Number of Points of Compliance (Copy and complete worksheet for each Point of Compliance)		unitless
Step 1: Hydrologic Analysis (not applicable for Simplified Ep Method)			
5	Project-Scale Q_2 (from continuous simulation)		cfs
6	Project Area draining to the point of compliance		sq. miles
7	Watershed Area draining to the point of compliance		sq. miles
8	Scaling Factor for Flows $(\text{Line 7/Line 6})^{0.667}$		unitless
9	Low flow threshold (factor from Line 1 x Line 6)		cfs
10	Watershed-Scale Q_{10} at Point of Compliance (from continuous simulation or Project Q_{10} * Line 8)		cfs
	Hydrologic analysis results (Attach results of continuous simulation including: full pre-development runoff time series at POC, full post-development runoff time series at POC, and flow duration histogram and/or cumulative flow duration curve for each POC).		☐ Yes ☐ No
Step 2: Hydraulic Analysis (not applicable for Simplified Ep Method)			
11	Provide details about the cross-section (width, depth, slope, roughness, etc.)		

Erosion Potential (Ep) Analysis		Worksheet H.8-1	
Step 3: Work Analysis (not applicable for Simplified Ep Method)			
12	Select work index, equation, or transport curve method for use in work analysis.	☐ Equation H.8.6 ☐ Sediment Transport Equation ☐ Sediment Transport Curve ☐ Other: _______________	
13	Describe/Justify selection in Line 12 above:		
14	Calculate work done for each flow bin under the pre-development and post-project condition using Worksheet H.8-2. Or similar documentation for sediment transport modeling or transport curve analysis.	☐ Yes ☐ No	
Step 4: Cumulative Work Analysis			
14	Cumulative pre-development work (Equation H.8-1 for Simplified Ep Method) (from Worksheet H.8-2 for Standard Ep Method)		
15	Cumulative post-project work (Equation H.8-1 for Simplified Ep Method) (from Worksheet H.8-2 for Standard Ep Method)		
Step 5: Erosion Potential Analysis			
16	Erosion Potential (Line 15 / Line 14)		unitless

Work Calculations (Supplement to Worksheet H.8-1)									Worksheet H.8-2	
1	Channel Slope								(ft/ft)	
2	Channel Roughness (n)								(unitless)	
3	Low Flow Threshold (Line 9 from Worksheet H.8-1)								cfs	
4	Critical Shear Stress								(lb/ft²)	
A	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	**G**	**H**	**I**	**J**	**K**
Bin	**Flow (cfs)**			**Duration (hours)**		**Hydraulic Radius (ft)**	**Average Velocity (ft/s)**	**Shear Stress (lb/ft²)**	**Work (unitless)**	
	Lower Limit	**Upper Limit**	**Average**	**Pre-development**	**Post-Project**				**Pre-development**	**Post-Project**
1										
2										
3										
4										
5										
6										
7										
8										
9										
10										
11										
12										
13										
14										
15										
16										
17										
18										
19										
20										
n										
Sum (Bins 1 to n) =										

<u>Worksheet H.8-2 Key</u>

A Number of flow bins, add additional rows as needed

B Lower limit for the corresponding flow bin

C Upper limit for the corresponding flow bin

D Average flow for the corresponding flow bin; [(**B** + **C**)/2]

E Duration in hours for the corresponding flow bin in pre development condition

F Duration in hours for the corresponding flow bin in post project condition

G Hydraulic radius (in feet) associated with the average flow for the corresponding flow bin (from Manning's equation and/or hydraulic analysis)

H Average flow velocity (in fps) associated with the average flow for the corresponding flow bin (from Manning's equation and/or hydraulic analysis)

I Shear stress (lb/ft^2) associated with the average flow for the corresponding flow bin = γ * Hydraulic Radius*Slope = 62.4 * **G** * Line 1

J Pre-development work for associated flow bin

J = 0; If (**I** – Line 4) ≤ 0

J = **E** * (**I** – Line 4)$^{1.5}$ * **H**; If (**I** – Line 4) > 0

K Post-project work for associated flow bin

K = 0; If (**I** – Line 4) ≤ 0

K = **F** * (**I** – Line 4)$^{1.5}$ * **H**; If (**I** – Line 4) > 0

Note: If the receiving water dimensions are different in pre-development and post-project condition then Worksheet H.8-2 is not valid for work calculations.

H.8.2 Calculation of Sp

While there are many categories of erosion processes (e.g., landslides, debris flows, gullies, tree throw, animal burrows, sheetwash erosion, wind erosion, dry ravel, bank erosion), in this evaluation processes will be simplified to sediment production from hillslopes and channels. Under ideal circumstances, the total bed sediment supply rate (tons/year) would be calculated for both the post-project buildout condition and pre-project condition using a watershed-scale Geomorphic Landscape Unit (GLU) and Geomorphic Channel Unit (GCU) approach which:

(1) identifies different sources of sediment supply based on categories of terrain slope, geology, land cover, and stream order;
(2) estimates the base erosion rate of those sources (GLUs and GCUs);
(3) approximates the sediment delivery ratio (SDR) to the receiving channel;
(4) evaluates the coarse bed-load fraction of the sources; and
(5) integrates these considerations into a bed-load yield rate for both the existing condition and proposed buildout condition.

However, calculation of sediment yield rates for each GLU (tons/mi^2-yr) and GCU (tons/mi-yr) using the available science is inherently inexact and requires extensive field calibration. Additionally, performing the geospatial calculations necessary for such a comprehensive GLU and GCU analysis may not be straightforward for some project applicants. Since the objective is to determine the fraction of reduction in bed sediment supply in the post-project condition compared to the pre-project condition, but not to determine the bed sediment yield in physical units (tons/year/acre, for example) the following simplifications are allowed. These simplifications take into consideration the regional sediment yield map shown in Figure H.8-6.

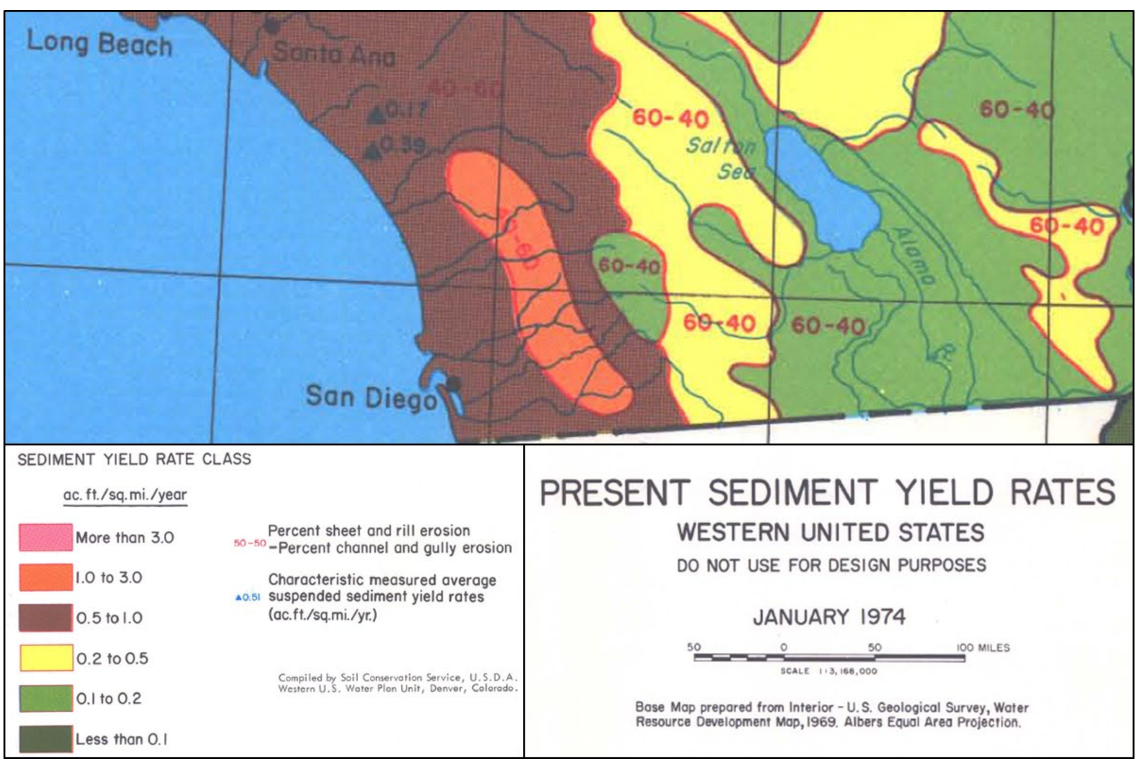


Figure H.8-6 Regional Sediment Yield Map

According to a regional sediment yield map of the Western US (USDA, 1974), hillslope processes (sheet and rill erosion) account for approximately 40% of the sediment yield in the San Diego County region, while channel processes (in-stream and gully erosion) account for approximately 60% of the sediment yield. Figure H.8-7 shows the different erosion processes. Provision E.3.a.(3)(a) of the MS4 Permit requires, "maintenance or restoration of natural storage reservoirs and drainage corridors (including topographic depressions, areas of permeable soils, natural swales, and ephemeral and intermittent streams)", effectively making maintenance or restoration of channels and gullies within a project site a site design requirement.

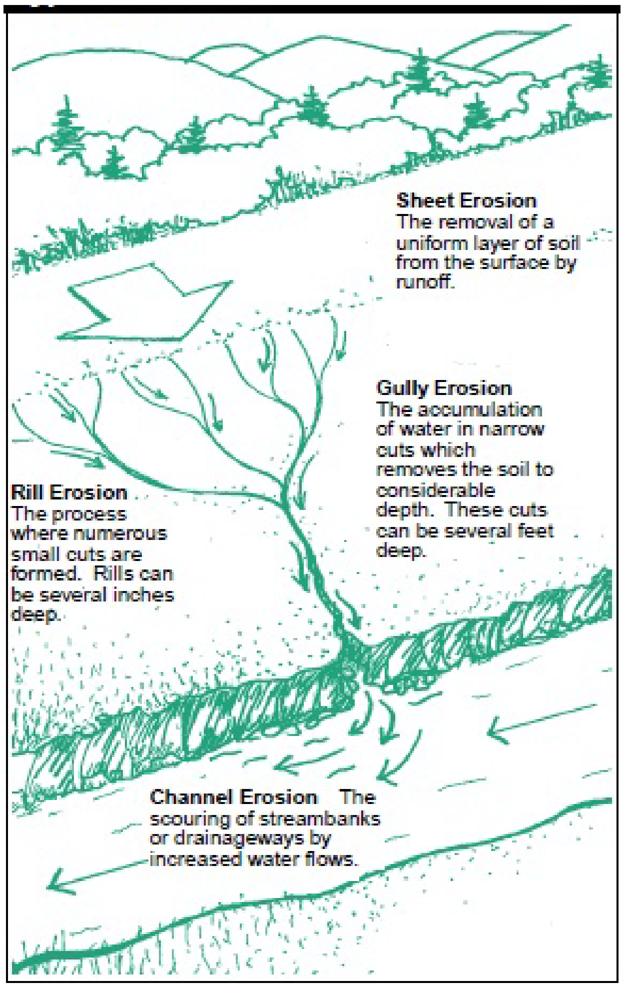


Figure H.8-7 Different Erosion Processes that Contribute Sediment

Source: http://www.fairfaxcounty.gov/nvswcd/youyourland/soil.htm

Sediment yield from hillslope processes (sheet and rill erosion) can be estimated using the Revised Universal Soil Loss Equation (RUSLE) and a sediment delivery ratio. For channel processes, the best available regional datasets are the USGS National Hydrography Dataset (NHD) and the NHDPlus dataset from USEPA and USGS (http://www.horizon-systems.com/nhdplus/). Both these datasets may not include the lowest order channels or gullies in the stream network, which can contribute a considerable amount of sediment produced from channel processes. Since the lower order channels and gullies originate and are mostly on the hillslopes, it is assumed for the Sp analysis that the sediment yield from lower order channels and gullies is proportional to the sediment yield from hill slopes. Based on feedback received during the TAC meetings (Appendix H.5.1) the following distribution is proposed for the calculation of Sp:

- 70% of bed sediment yield ratio from RUSLE analysis (assumed to account for sediment yield from hillslope processes (sheet and rill erosion) and channels and gullies not part of the NHDPlus dataset); and
- 30% of bed sediment yield ratio from channels in the NHDPlus dataset.

Note:

- If an applicant elects to map the waters of the state, the Sp distribution shall be revised to
  - 40% of bed sediment yield ratio from RUSLE analysis;
  - 30% of bed sediment yield ratio from waters of the state that are not part of NHDPlus dataset; and
  - 30% of bed sediment yield ratio from channels in the NHDPlus dataset.

SCALE OF ANALYSIS

The project applicant shall perform the Sp analysis at point (or points) where runoff leaves the project site. The steps for performing an Sp analysis are shown in Figure H.8-8 and described below.

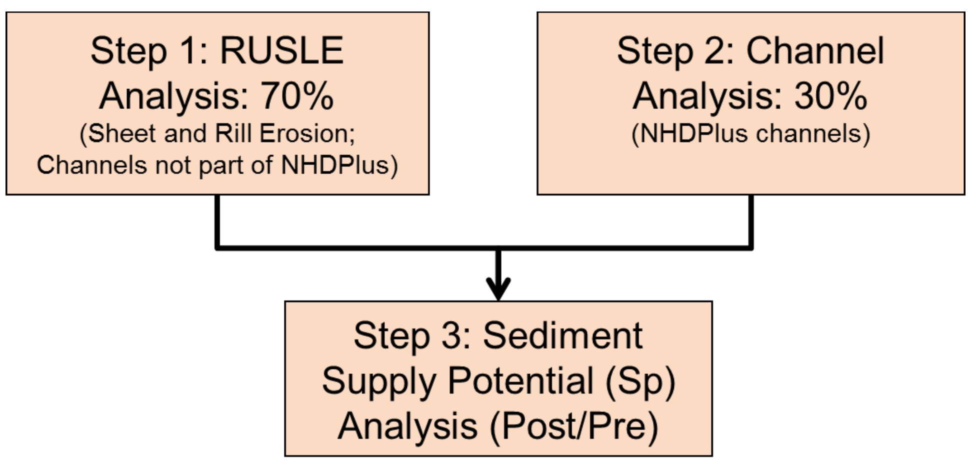


Figure H.8-8 Sediment Supply Potential Flow Chart

STEP 1: RUSLE ANALYSIS

RUSLE analysis is assumed to account for sediment yield from hillslope processes (sheet and rill erosion) and channels and gullies not part of the NHDPlus dataset. The change in bed sediment yield in the post-project condition compared to the pre-project condition using the RUSLE analysis must be estimated using equation H.8-9. This equation is a modified form of the standard RUSLE equation. Only hillslopes that are anticipated to generate coarse sediment must be used in this analysis. Since Sp is a dimensionless index the terms that are relatively constant in the pre and post project condition, such as rainfall factor, have been removed.

H.8-9: Sediment Yield (Hillslope)

$$SY_{RUSLE} = \frac{Post - Project \sum\{A \times K \times LS \times C \times P\}}{Pre - Project \sum\{A \times K \times LS \times C\}}$$

Where:

A = Hillslope Area (acres)

K = Soil erodibility factor, this value can be obtained from regional K factor map from SWRCB or web soil survey or site-specific grain size analysis

LS = Slope length and steepness factor, this value can be obtained from the regional LS factor map from SWRCB or site-specific determination using look up tables based on slope and horizontal slope length from USDA Agriculture Handbook Number 703 (Renard et al., 1997) or other relevant sources

C= Cover management factor, use regional C factor map from USEPA or site-specific information; this is the reciprocal of the amount of surface cover on soil, whether it be vegetation, temporary mulch or other material. It is roughly the percentage of exposed soil, i.e., 95 percent cover yields a "C" value of 0.05. Use C=0 for areas where management actions are implemented (e.g. impervious areas) or where the project proposes any significant grading activities.

The applicant may be allowed to receive credit for bed sediment yield from engineered slopes on the project perimeter directly discharging to conveyance systems if **All** of the following criteria are met:

- The engineer slopes are made up of coarse bed material. This is confirmed by performing grain size distribution per ASTM D422 for the engineered slope and verifying that the d_{50} is greater than no. 200 sieve (0.074 mm).
- Cover factor in the post project condition is not be greater than the cover factor used in the pre project condition for the same area.
- A maximum practice factor of 0.25 is applied to proposed fill slopes. A maximum practice factor of 0.50 is applied to proposed cut slopes.
- A statement from the geotechnical engineer is included in the SWQMP certifying that the engineered slope will be stable even after accounting for bed sediment generation and the anticipated soil loss during the planned lifetime of the engineered slope is acceptable.

Additional analysis and/or documentation may be requested by the City Engineer prior to approval of the credit for bed sediment yield from engineered slopes.

STEP 2: CHANNEL ANALYSIS

If an NHDPlus mapped channel exists within the project property boundary, applicants must consider the sediment production from this existing channel system. The change is bed sediment yield in the post-project condition compared to the pre-project condition from channels in the NHDPlus dataset must be estimated using Equation H.8-10 (SYNHD). This equation is based on screening-level GIS calculations of stream length that will be contributing sediment in the post-project condition in the watershed tributary to the point of compliance.

Equation H.8-10: Sediment Yield (NHD)

$$SY_{NHD} = \frac{L_{post}}{L_{pre}}$$

Where:

L_{post} = Length of NHDplus streams in the watershed contributing to bed sediment supply in the post-project condition [miles]

L_{pre} = Length of NHDplus streams in the watershed contributing to bed sediment supply in the pre-project existing condition [miles]

STEP 3: SEDIMENT SUPPLY POTENTIAL ANALYSIS

Sediment Supply Potential (Sp) is defined as the ratio of post-project/pre-project (existing) long-term bed sediment supply. Sp must be calculated using equation H.8-11 presented below:

Equation H.8-11: Sediment Supply Potential

$$S_p = 0.7 \times SY_{RUSLE} + 0.3 \times SY_{NHD}$$

Where:

S_p = Sediment Supply Potential [unitless]

SY_{RUSLE} = Change in bed sediment yield from hillslopes and lower order channels and gullies not part of NHDPlus dataset [unitless]

SY_{NHD} = Change in bed sediment yield from channels in NHDPlus dataset [unitless]

When estimating Sp the following additional conditions apply:

- Projects that do not have onsite NHDPlus channels shall omit consideration of SYNHD and weighting factors depicted in Equation H.8-11. This simply results in Sp = SYRUSLE.

- It must be assumed that the sediment yield from an area that drains to a structural BMP is zero. Consideration of sediment yield from an area draining to the structural BMP may be allowed if sediment bypass measures are implemented upstream of the structural BMP. However, additional analysis may be requested by the City Engineer to substantiate the sediment yield estimates proposed by the applicant from implementing sediment bypass measures.

- For scenarios where an upstream coarse sediment yield area drains through the project footprint and the project footprint cuts off conveyance of bed sediment generated upstream of the project footprint to the point of compliance, (e.g., via debris basins) the contribution from the upstream area shall be assumed to be zero.

As applicable, the applicant must use Worksheet H.8-3 to document the Sp calculations for each point of compliance.

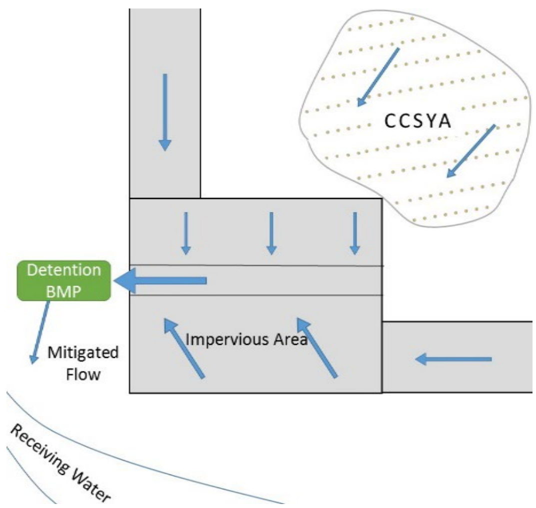
Sediment Supply Potential (Sp) Analysis											**Worksheet H.8-3**	
1	Scale of Analysis						☐ Project Scale ☐ Watershed Scale (build-out condition)					
Step 1: RUSLE Analysis												
2	GLU	Pre-Project					Post-Project					
		A	K	LS	C	A*K*LS*C	A	K	LS	C	P	A*K*LS*C*P
	1											
	2											
	3											
	4											
	5											
	6											
	7											
	8											
	Add additional rows as needed											
3	Sum Pre-Project						Sum Post-Project					
4	SY_{RUSLE}: (Sum Post-Project/ Sum Pre-Project) (From Line 3)											unitless
Step 2: Channel Analysis: NHDPlus Channels												
5	L_{pre} (from GIS analysis of pre-project existing condition)											miles
6	L_{post} (from GIS analysis of post-project condition)											miles
7	SY_{NHD}: (Line 6 / Line 5)											unitless
Step 3: Sediment Supply Potential Analysis												
8	RUSLE Analysis Bed Sediment Yield Ratio Calculated (Line 4)											unitless
9	Channel Bed Sediment Yield Ratio from NHDPlus dataset (Line 7)											unitless
10	Sediment Supply Potential Calculated using Equation H.8.11. (0.7 x Line 8 + 0.3 x Line 9)											unitless

H.9 Mitigation Measures Fact Sheets

The following fact sheets were developed to assist the project applicants with designing mitigation measures:

- Additional flow control
- Stream Rehabilitation

H.9.1 Additional flow control



Description

Additional flow control refers to the modification of post-development flow rates and durations beyond the levels required by standard HMP criteria (i.e. control of flow rates and durations from Q_c to Q10). Additional flow control can mitigate the effect of decreased sediment delivery by equivalently limiting sediment transport capacity. BMPs providing additional flow control are detention/retention type BMPs and will typically be larger than those that meet HMP criteria only. The performance standard for additional flow control can be demonstrated through the NII management standard.

Management Standard and Sizing Approach

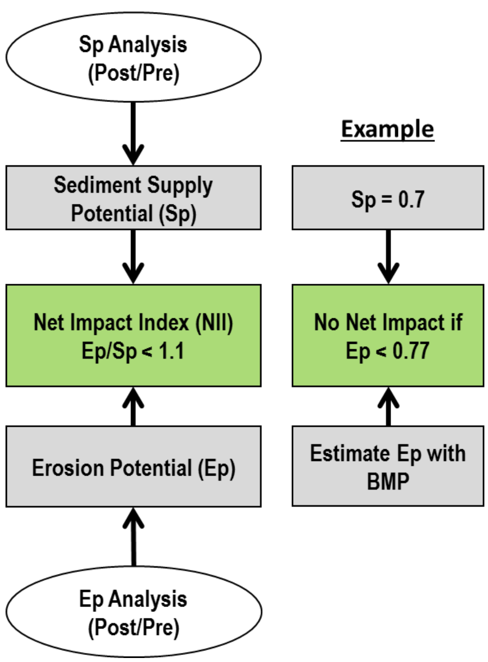
The management standard additional flow control BMPs need to meet to demonstrate that there is no net impact to the receiving waters is presented in the equation below:

$$NII = \frac{Ep}{Sp} \leq 1.1$$

Where:

Ep: is the ratio of post-project/pre-development sediment transport capacity

Sp: ratio of post-project/pre-project (existing) long-term bed sediment supply



Note: Redevelopment projects typically do not have critical coarse sediment yield areas onsite because management actions have been implemented onsite (e.g. impervious areas, etc.). Refer to Appendix H.8 for methodologies to calculate Ep and Sp.

Project applicants must demonstrate that the NII management standard will be met under the post-project scenario through the following steps:

1. Calculate the Sp at the point of compliance using guidance in Appendix H.8.2.
2. Determine the Target Ep: $Ep_{Target} \leq 1.1 * Sp$

3. Calculate the pre-development sediment transport capacity or work (Ep denominator). Refer to Section 6.3.3 for definition of pre-development and refer to Appendix H.8.1 for guidance on calculating the sediment transport capacity or work.
4. Iteratively size additional flow control BMPs and calculate the post-project sediment transport capacity (Ep numerator) until the target Ep is reached.
5. Summarize the calculations performed to size the BMPs in the SWQMP.

In addition to the general approach outlined above, additional flow control BMPs must meet the design criteria presented in the Model BMP Design Manual (refer to Appendix E Fact Sheets). Deviations from these criteria may be approved at the discretion of the [City Engineer] if it is determined appropriate

Design Adaption for Project Goals

NII management standard is met by additional flow control. Larger BMPs may be able to provide adequate additional flow control to meet the required performance standard. In this scenario no additional sediment BMPs are required.

For example, project that has an Sp = 0 (i.e. 100% of the bed sediment in the drainage area to the point of compliance is impacted by the project) can be mitigated by designing a BMP such that there is no discharge within the geomorphically significant flow range (i.e. Q_c to Q_{10}).

NII management standard is not fully met by additional flow control. Additional flow control alone may not be able to entirely meet the NII management standard due to site, or other, constraints. In scenarios where the target Ep cannot be met by additional flow control, additional BMPs that increase the supply of bed sediment or reduce the susceptibility of the receiving channel will be required.

Note: Additional flow control BMPs can be independent BMPs that provide flow control only or they can be integrated with storm water pollutant control BMPs.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach

The following steps detail an approach that can be used to appropriately size BMPs that provide additional flow control:

Step 1: **Calculate the Sediment Supply Potential (Sp) based on pre- and post-project condition at the point of compliance.**

- Refer to Appendix H.8.2 for methodology to calculate Sp. Applicant must document this analysis using Worksheet H.8-3.

Step 2: **Determine the Target Ep based on the results of Step 1.**

- $Ep_{Target} \leq 1.1 * Sp$

Step 3: **Perform continuous simulation modeling for pre-development condition.**

- Perform continuous simulation (refer to Appendix G) for the pre-development condition.
- Determine the flow durations for the pre-project scenario as described in Appendix G.1.6.2.

Step 4: Perform pre-development work analysis.

- Calculate the cumulative work performed by the range of geomorphically significant flows for the pre-development scenario, (refer to Step 3 and Step 4 in Appendix H.8.1 for calculation of work).

Step 5: **Implement flow control BMPs and perform continuous simulation modeling for post-project scenario.**

- Appropriately size pollutant control and hydromodification management BMPs according to the procedures presented in this manual.
- Perform continuous simulation (refer to Appendix G) for the post-project condition.
- Determine the flow durations for the post-project scenario as described in Appendix G.1.6.2.
- Typically, BMPs sized to satisfy the flow duration control will provide for some level of Sp reduction and will ensure that the minimum design standards and sizing requirements are met.

Step 6: **Perform post-project work analysis.**

- Follow the steps presented in Step 4 to determine the post-project total work.

Step 7: **Calculate Ep and determine if Target Ep has been met.**

- Divide the post-project total work by the pre-development total work and determine if the target Ep has been met.
- If the target Ep is met by the standard BMPs, document results and compliance with hydrologic and sediment supply performance standards.
- If the target Ep is not met, proceed to Step 8.

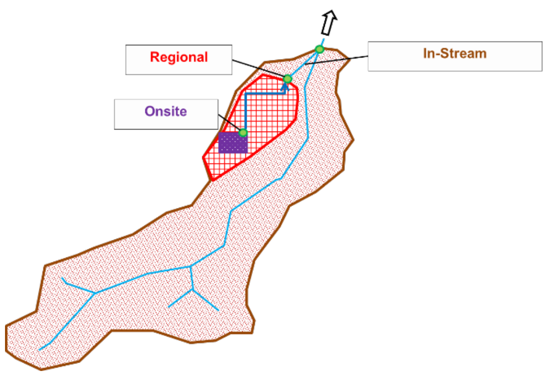
Step 8: Provide additional flow control storage and calculate Ep.

- Following the procedures presented in the previous steps, iteratively calculate Ep for increasingly large BMPs until the target Ep is met.
- Document results and compliance with hydrologic and NII management standard.

As applicable, the applicant must use Worksheet H.8-1, Worksheet H.8-3 and Worksheet H.9-1 to document sizing of the additional flow control mitigation measure.

	Additional Flow Control Mitigation Measure	Worksheet H.9-1	
1	Sediment Supply Potential (Line 10 of Worksheet H.8-3)		unitless
2	Attached completed Worksheet H.8-3 and associated documentation	☐ Yes ☐ No	
3	Target Ep ≤ 1.1 * Line 1		unitless
4	Erosion Potential (Line 16 of Worksheet H.8-1)		unitless
5	Attached completed Worksheet H.8-1 and associated documentation	☐ Yes ☐ No	
6	Is Line 4 ≤ Line 3? If Yes, NII management standard is met. If No, increase the size of the BMP and recalculate Line 4.	☐ Yes ☐ No	

H.9.2 Stream Rehabilitation



Description

Hydromodification control can be achieved by stream rehabilitation projects including: drop structures, grade control structures, bed and bank reinforcement, increased channel sinuosity or meandering, increased channel width, and flow diversion. The objective of these in-stream controls, or stream restoration measures, is to reduce or maintain the overall Ep of the receiving channel. Stream rehabilitation option is only available when the receiving channel of concern is already impacted by erosive flows and shows evidence of excessive sediment, erosion, deposition, or is a hardened channel.

Management Standard and Sizing Approach

The management standard stream rehabilitation projects need to meet to demonstrate that there is no net impact to the receiving waters is presented in the equation below:

$$NII = \frac{Ep}{Sp} \leq 1.1$$

Where:

Ep: is the ratio of post-project/pre-development sediment transport capacity

Sp: ratio of post-project/pre-project (existing) long-term bed sediment supply

Note: Stream rehabilitation project reduce Ep by modifying the stream's hydraulic properties and/or bed/bank material resistance without fully replacing sediment supply or controlling increases in runoff. Refer to Appendix H.8 for methodologies to calculate Ep and Sp.

Design Adaption for Project Goals

The following describes different types of stream rehabilitation projects that could be implemented to meet the NII management standard by reducing or maintaining the overall Ep:

Drop Structures: Drop structures are designed to reduce the average channel slope, thereby reducing the shear stresses generated by stream flows. These controls can be incorporated as natural looking rock structures with a step-pool design which allows drop energy to be dissipated into the pools while providing a reduced longitudinal slope between structures.

Grade Control Structures: Grade control structures are designed to maintain the existing channel slope while allowing for minor amounts of local scour. These control measures are often buried and entail a narrow trench across the width of the stream backfilled with concrete or similar material, as well as the creation of a "plunge pool" feature by placing boulders and vegetation on the downstream side of the sill. A grade control structure provides a reduced footprint and impact as compared to drop structures, which are designed to alter the channel slope.

Bed and Bank Reinforcement: Channel reinforcement serves to increase bed and bank resistance to instream erosion. A number of vegetated approaches are widely used. Such approaches include large woody debris, live crib walls, vegetated mechanically stabilized earth, live siltation, live brushlayering, willow posts and poles, live staking, live fascine, rootwad revetment, live brush mattresses, and vegetated reinforcement mats. These technologies provide erosion control that stabilizes bed and bank surfaces and allows for re-establishment of native plants, which serves to further increase channel stability.

Channel Sinuosity: Increasing channel sinuosity (meandering) can serve to reduce the channel slope, thereby reducing the shear stresses generated by stream flows. However, forcing a channel to be too sinuous is likely to lead to subsequent channel avulsion (cutting a new stream path) to a straighter course. Channel sinuosity needs to be supported by a geomorphic basis of design that shows the proposed form and gradient are appropriate for the valley slope, sediment, and water regime. This support may take the form of reference reaches in similar watersheds that have supported the proposed morphology over a significant period of time, or comparison between the proposed form and typical literature values.

Channel Widening: Increasing the width-to-depth ratio of a stream's cross section is meant to spread flows out over a wider cross section with lower depths, thereby reducing shear stress for a given flow rate. This approach can be a useful management strategy in incised creeks to restore them to equilibrium conditions once vertical incision has ceased. As with sinuosity, it is important to develop a robust geomorphic basis of design that shows the increase in width-to-depth ratio to be sustainable.

Flow Diversion: Flow diversions can be designed to divert the excess flows caused by development to an hydromodification management exempt water body so that the shear stresses do no increase in the susceptible receiving water. When diversions are proposed to a water body exempt through watershed management area analysis, the applicant is required to provide a supporting analysis that the excess flows diverted to the exempt water body do not invalidate the exemption.

Design Considerations

Each stream rehabilitation project is to some degree unique because of differences in geomorphic process, morphology and previous watershed history. For this reason, this fact sheet does not provide a prescriptive 'cookery book' approach for rehabilitating streams, but instead provides guidelines and recommendations. Shields (1996) provides a helpful overview of the analytical steps involved in stream restoration and Shields et al. (1999) provides examples of approaches used to rehabilitate incised channels. Applicant will need to provide geomorphic and engineering information to support their proposed project approach. It is recommended that multiple lines of technical evidence be used by applicants to develop creek restoration plans based on the preponderance of evidence for design criteria such as channel width, depth, slope and planform. It is also important to understand that all creek rehabilitation projects must comply with relevant Federal, State and local regulations and permits. These will likely include obtaining permits from the RWQCB, USACE and California DF&W, and may involve additional permits or consultation with USDF&W and FEMA, as well as permits from the local jurisdiction. The proposed design shall also meet local drainage design guidelines for channel design.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Appendix

I

CARLSBAD BMP DESIGN MANUAL

Significant Site Design BMP (SSD-BMP) Sizing Methods & Calculations

Jan. 2024

Appendix I Significant Site Design BMP (SSD-BMP) Sizing Methods and Calculations

I.1 Significant Site Design BMPs (SSD-BMPs)

Significant site design BMPs (SSD-BMPs) are site design BMPs designed to fully retain the Design Capture Volume (DCV) for the Drainage Management Area (DMA) (Section 5.2.3). Tree Wells (Fact Sheet SD-A), Dispersing Runoff from Impervious Areas (Fact Sheet SD-B), Permeable Pavement (Fact Sheet SD- D), or any other SSD-BMP acceptable to the City may be used. This Appendix provides sizing methods for impervious area dispersion ("dispersion areas") and tree wells used as SSD-BMPs. An automated worksheet is available to prepare the calculations described in this Appendix. Dispersion areas and tree wells may be sized for pollutant control only or for pollutant control plus hydromodification control.

Permeable pavement may be used as an SSD-BMP for pollutant control without hydromodification. Sizing methods for permeable pavement as an SSD-BMP for pollutant control only are provided in Section 5.2.3 and are not included in this Appendix or the automated worksheet. Hydromodification management performance standards can be satisfied using permeable pavement only if the permeable pavement is constructed to structural BMP specifications in accordance with the requirements of Appendix B and Fact Sheet INF-3.

I.2 Determine DCV

The first step in performing design calculations for SSD-BMPs is to calculate the DCV. The DCV represents the volume of storm water runoff that must be retained and/or biofiltered in order to satisfy pollutant control requirements. This step is very similar to the first step in performing storm water pollutant control calculations described in Appendix B for the design of structural BMPs, except that the tree well volume reduction described in Appendix B Section B.1.4, when applicable, will be addressed in Step 3 of the SSD-BMP calculations instead of Step 1.

The DCVs for SSD-BMPs can be calculated through use of the SSD-BMP Automated Worksheet I-1: Step 1. Calculation of Design Capture Volume depicted on the following page or can be calculated manually by following procedures presented in Appendix B, Sections B.1.1 through B.1.3 as well as the rain barrel reduction procedure presented in Appendix B, Section B.1.4 when applicable.

$$DCV = \frac{D}{12} \times A \times C - R$$

<u>Where:</u>

DCV: Design Capture Volume (ft^3).

D: Rainfall Depth (inches), refer to Appendix B Section B.1.1. A: Tributary Area (ft^2), refer to Appendix B Section B.1.2.

C: Runoff Factor (unitless), refer to Appendix B Section B.1.3.

R: Site Design Volume Reductions from Rain Barrels (ft^3). Refer to Appendix B Section B.1.4 regarding rain barrels (note that when tree wells are used as SSD-BMPs, the volume reduction from the use of tree wells will be addressed in Step 3).

If the project includes dispersion areas, proceed to Step 2: Dispersion Areas. If no dispersion areas are proposed, skip Step 2 and proceed to Step 3: Tree Wells.

SSD-BMP Automated Worksheet I-1: Step 1 Calculation of Design Volume Capture

Category	#	Description	*i*	Units
Standard Drainage Basin Inputs	1	Drainage Basin ID or Name		unitless
	2	85th Percentile 24-hr Storm Depth		inches
	3	Is Hydromodification Control Applicable?		yes/no
	4	Impervious Surfaces Not Directed to Dispersion Area (C=0.90)		sq-ft
	5	Semi-Pervious Surfaces Not Serving as Dispersion Area (C=0.30)		sq-ft
	6	Engineered Pervious Surfaces Not Serving as Dispersion Area (C=0.10)		sq-ft
	7	Natural Type A Soil Not Serving as Dispersion Area (C=0.10)		sq-ft
	8	Natural Type B Soil Not Serving as Dispersion Area (C=0.14)		sq-ft
	9	Natural Type C Soil Not Serving as Dispersion Area (C=0.23)		sq-ft
	10	Natural Type D Soil Not Serving as Dispersion Area (C=0.30)		sq-ft
SSD-BMPs Proposed	11	Does Tributary Incorporate Dispersion and/or Rain Barrels?		yes/no
	12	Does Tributary Incorporate Tree Wells?		yes/no
Dispersion Area & Rain Barrel Inputs (Optional)	13	Impervious Surfaces **Directed to Dispersion Area** per SD-B (Ci=0.90)		sq-ft
	14	Semi-Pervious Surfaces **Serving as Dispersion Area** per SD-B (Ci=0.30)		sq-ft
	15	Engineered Pervious Surfaces **Serving as Dispersion Area** per SD-B (Ci=0.10)		sq-ft
	16	Natural Type A Soil **Serving as Dispersion Area** per SD-B (Ci=0.10)		sq-ft
	17	Natural Type B Soil **Serving as Dispersion Area** per SD-B (Ci=0.14)		sq-ft
	18	Natural Type C Soil **Serving as Dispersion Area** per SD-B (Ci=0.23)		sq-ft
	19	Natural Type D Soil **Serving as Dispersion Area** per SD-B (Ci=0.30)		sq-ft
	20	Number of Rain Barrels Proposed per SD-E		#
	21	Average Rain Barrel Size		gal
Initial Runoff Factor Calculation	22	Total Tributary Area	0	sq-ft
	23	Initial Runoff Factor for Standard Drainage Areas	0.00	unitless
	24	Initial Runoff Factor for Dispersed & Dispersion Areas	0.00	unitless
	25	Initial Weighted Runoff Factor	0.00	unitless
	26	Initial Design Capture Volume	0	cubic-feet
Dispersion Area Adjustment & Rain Barrel Adjustment	27	Total Impervious Area Dispersed to Pervious Surface	0	sq-ft
	28	Total Pervious Dispersion Area	0	sq-ft
	29	Ratio of Dispersed Impervious Area to Pervious Dispersion Area for DCV Reduction	n/a	ratio
	30	Adjustment Factor for Dispersed & Dispersion Areas	1.00	ratio
	31	Runoff Factor After Dispersion Techniques	n/a	unitless
	32	Design Capture Volume After Dispersion Techniques	0	cubic-feet
	33	Total Rain Barrel Volume Reduction	0	cubic-feet
Results	34	Final Adjusted Runoff Factor	0.00	unitless
	35	Final Effective Tributary Area	0	sq-ft
	36	Initial Design Capture Volume Retained by Dispersion Area and Rain Barrel(s)	0	cubic-feet
	37	Remaining Design Capture Volume Tributary to Tree Well(s)	0	cubic-feet

SSD-BMP Worksheet I-1 Line Item Notes
1. User input from stormwater plans.
2. User input from BMPDM Figure B.1-1.
3. User input from stormwater plans.
4. User input from stormwater plans.
5. User input from stormwater plans.
6. User input from stormwater plans.
7. User input from stormwater plans.
8. User input from stormwater plans.
9. User input from stormwater plans.
10. User input from stormwater plans.
11. User input. Default is "No". Select Yes if any of the referenced elements are proposed.
12. User input. Default is "No". Select Yes if any of the referenced elements are proposed.
13. User input from stormwater plans. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-B.
14. User input from stormwater plans. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-B.
15. User input from stormwater plans. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-B.
16. User input from stormwater plans. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-B.
17. User input from stormwater plans. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-B.
18. User input from stormwater plans. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-B.
19. User input from stormwater plans. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-B.
20. User input. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-E. Cannot provide more than a 25% reduction to initial DCV.
21. User input. Must satisfy criteria from Fact Sheet SD-E. Acceptable range 0-100 gallons for generic volume reductions.
22. Sum of Lines 4 through 19.
23. [0.9(Line 4) + 0.3(Line 5 + Line 10) + 0.1(Line 6 + Line 7) + 0.14(Line 8) + 0.23(Line 9)] /(Sum of Lines 4 through Line 10).
24. [0.9(Line 13) + 0.3(Line 14 + Line 19) + 0.1(Line 15 + Line 16) + 0.14(Line 17) + 0.23(Line 18)] /(Sum of Lines 13 through Line 19).
25. [(Line 23 x (Sum of Lines 4 through 10) + Line 24 x (Sum of Lines 13 through 19)) / Line 22].
26. (Line 2/12) x Line 22 x Line 25.
27. Line 13.
28. Sum of Lines 14 through 19.
29. [Line 27 / Line 28]. If greater than 4.0 dispersion benefits are not quantified.
30. Lookup values from Table B.1-1 weighted with respect to distribution of dispersion areas specified in Lines 14-19.
31. [Line 23 x (Sum of Lines 4 through Line 10) + Line 24 x Line 30 x (Sum of Lines 13 through Line 19)] / Line 22.
32. (Line 2/12) x Line 22 x Line 31.
33. [Line 20 x Line 21/7.48]. Limited to 100 gallons per rain barrel and limited to maximum of 25% of Line 26.
34. Line 31 x [1 - (Line 33/Line 32)]. Value must be between zero and one.
35. Line 22 x Line 34.
36. [(Line 26 - Line 32) + Line 33].
37. [Line 26 - Line 36]. Minimum result of 0.

I.3 Step 2: Dispersion Areas

Dispersion areas are dedicated pervious areas, typically vegetated, with in-situ soil infiltration capacity for partial or full infiltration (Figure I.3-1). Impervious area dispersion refers to the practice of effectively disconnecting impervious areas from directly draining to the storm drain system by routing runoff from the impervious area onto an adjacent pervious dispersion area. The pervious dispersion area surface may consist of natural in-situ soils, amended soils, or permeable pavement. This appendix discusses natural in-situ soils and amended soils. For permeable pavement dispersion areas, refer to Section 5.2.3.

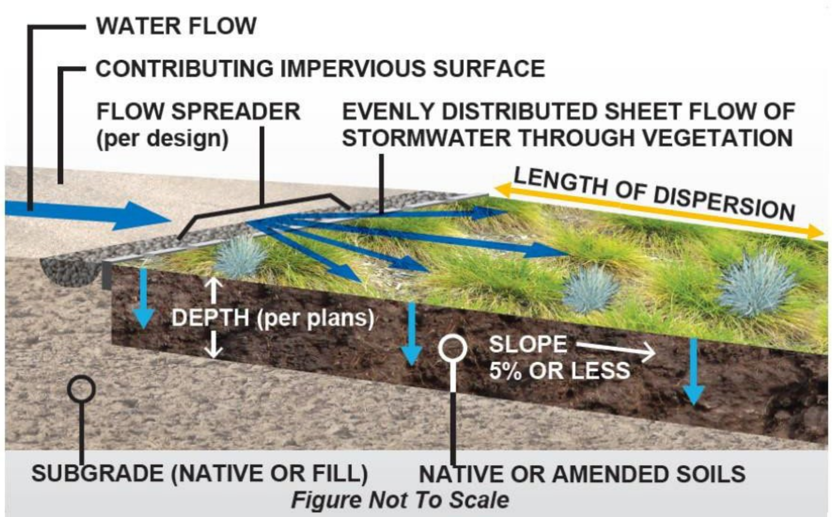


Figure I.3-1 Dispersion Area Schematic

When a dispersion area is proposed to be used as a SSD-BMP, the calculated DCV (Line 37 of the SSD-BMP Automated Worksheet I-1 depicted on the previous pages, "Remaining Design Capture Volume Tributary to Tree Well(s)") must be zero. This is achieved when the ratio of dispersed impervious surface area to total engineered pervious surface and/or natural hydrologic soil group A or B soil dispersion area meets the requirements outlined in Fact Sheet SD-B (2:1 or 1:1 depending on the dispersion area surface and whether hydromodification control applies) and there are no other surfaces within the DMA that contribute to the project DCV, such as surfaces not directed to the dispersion area, semi-pervious surface used as dispersion area, or natural (non-amended) hydrologic soil group C or D soils used as dispersion area.

Semi-pervious surfaces and/or natural (non-amended) hydrologic soil group C or D soils that receive runoff from impervious surfaces may be used as a regular site design BMP to reduce DCV but may not be used as a SSD-BMP because they do not reduce DCV to zero. When soils are amended in accordance with Fact Sheet SD-F, this is considered "engineered pervious surface" regardless of the subgrade. Any natural hydrologic soil group or fill soil may be amended in accordance with Fact Sheet SD-F and then be considered engineered pervious surface.

If the dispersion area is used for pollutant control plus hydromodification control, the dispersion area must include amended soil. As a minimum, the top 11 inches of the pervious area must use amended soils in accordance with Fact Sheet SD-F.

Table I.3-1 summarizes certain design criteria for the use of dispersion areas as SSD-BMPs and illustrates the difference between the criteria for pollutant control only and for pollutant control plus hydromodification control. Refer to Fact Sheet SD-B for additional requirements applicable to all types of dispersion areas.

Table I.3-1 Criteria for use as of Dispersion Areas as SSD-BMPs for Pollutant Control Only vs. Pollutant Control Plus Hydromodification Control

SSD-BMP	Criteria for Pollutant Control Only	Criteria for Pollutant Control Plus Hydromodification Control
Dispersion Area (SD-B)	• Ratio of impervious area to engineered pervious surface and/or natural hydrologic soil group A soil area is 2:1 or less; OR ratio of impervious area to natural hydrologic soil group B soil area is 1:1 or less • Sheet flow travel length across dispersion area is 10 feet or more* • Slope is less than 5%	• Ratio of impervious area to engineered pervious surface area is 1:1 or less • Sheet flow travel length across dispersion area is 10 feet or more* • Slope is less than 5% • The top 11 inches of soil is amended in accordance with Fact Sheet SD-F
*Exemption to this minimum travel length criterion may be allowed when the contributing flow path length of the impervious area /pervious area travel length ≤ 2		

The dispersion area sheet flow travel length, slope, and amended soil when applicable must be shown on the project plans. When the SSD-BMP Automated Worksheet is used, these characteristics may be documented in SSD-BMP Automated Worksheet I-2: Step 2. Dispersion Area Validation depicted on the following page in addition to the plans.

Dispersion areas meeting the SSD-BMP criteria do not need an additional downstream BMP. Dispersion areas not meeting the SSD-BMP criteria can be used as regular site design BMPs to reduce the DCV draining to a tree well just as they can be used to reduce the DCV draining to a structural BMP pursuant to Appendix B. If the project includes tree wells, proceed to Step 3: Tree Wells.

SSD-BMP Automated Worksheet I-2: Step 2 Dispersion Area Validation

Category	#	Description	i	Units
Standard Dispersion Area Inputs	1	Drainage Basin ID or Name	-	unitless
	2	Final Design Capture Volume (DCV)	-	cubic-feet
	3	Is Hydromodification Control Applicable?	-	yes/no
	4	Total Impervious Area Dispersed to Pervious Surface	-	sq-ft
	5	Total Engineered Pervious Surface and/or Natural Soil Dispersion Area (Does Not Include Semi-Pervious Surfaces Serving as Dispersion Area)	-	sq-ft
	6	Ratio of Dispersed Impervious Area to Total Engineered Pervious Surface and/or Natural Soil Dispersion Area	-	unitless
	7	Dispersion Area Length (Length of Sheet Flow Across Dispersion Area)		feet
	8	Dispersion Area Slope		%
	9	Thickness of Amended Soil		inches
	10	How is Flow Dispersed Across Width of Dispersion Area (definitions below*)?		unitless
Results	11	Is DCV Requirement Fully Satisfied by Dispersion Area?	-	yes/no
	12	Is Hydromodification Control Requirement Satisfied by Dispersion Area?	-	yes/no
	13	Are Dispersion Area Length, Slope, and Thickness of Amended Soil (when applicable) Adequate?	-	yes/no

Notes:

***How is Flow Dispersed Across Width of Pervious Dispersion Area?**

Sheet Flow:	Flow arrives as sheet flow across the width of the adjacent impervious area
Spreader(s):	Flow is discharged from flow spreader(s) across the width of the pervious area
Roof Drains:	Discharge from roof drains distributed across the width of the pervious area
Curb Cuts:	Discharge from curb cuts distributed across the width of the pervious area
Other:	Other (Describe in PDP SWQMP)

SSD-BMP Worksheet I-2 Line Item Notes
1. Populated per result of Worksheet I-1 (Step 1. DCV) Line 1.
2. Populated per result of Worksheet I-1 (Step 1. DCV) Line 37.
3. Populated per result of Worksheet I-1 (Step 1. DCV) Line 3.
4. Populated per result of Worksheet I-1 (Step 1. DCV) Line 13.
5. Populated per result of Worksheet I-1 (Step 1. DCV) Sum of Lines 15 through 19.
6. Line 4 / Line 5.
7. User input from stormwater plans.
8. User input from stormwater plans.
9. User input from stormwater plans.
10. User input from stormwater plans.
11. "Yes" when DCV = 0.
12. When hydromodification control is applicable, "Yes" when remaining DCV=0, ratio<=1, and thickness >=11.0 inches.
13. "Yes" when length, slope, and thickness (for hydromodification control) meet requirements of SD-B.

I.4 Step 3: Tree Wells

A tree well as a storm water management feature consists of a tree with a minimum amount of soil media to allow for storage, infiltration, and evapotranspiration of runoff (Figure I.4-1).

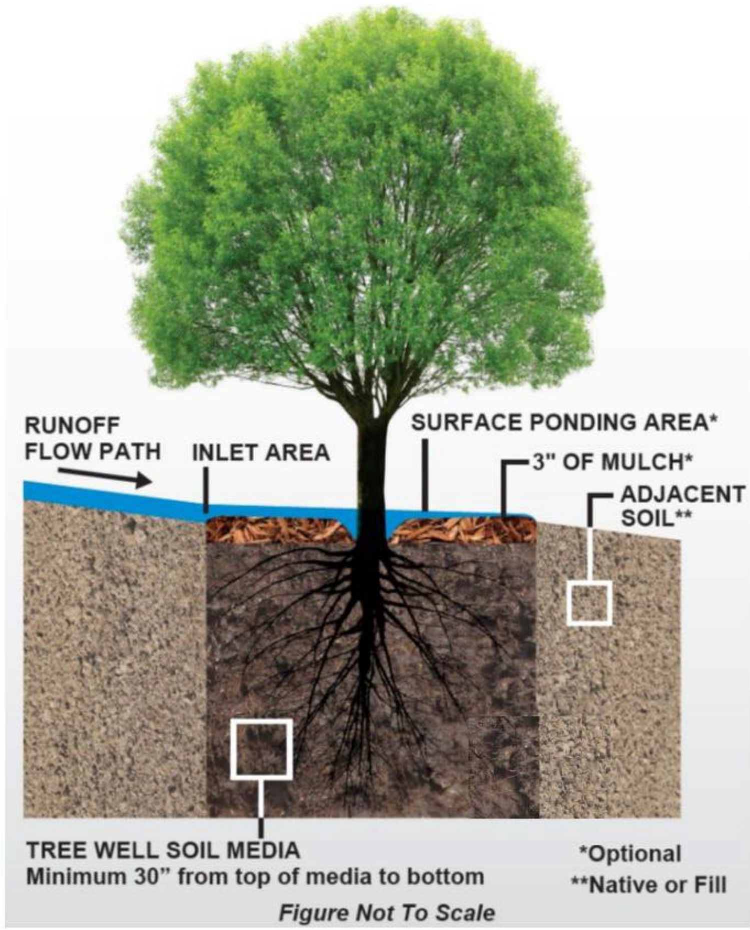


Figure I.4-1 Tree Well Schematic

Tree wells as SSD-BMPs must provide tree credit volume equal to or greater than the DCV for pollutant control only; or for pollutant control plus hydromodification control provide tree credit volume equal to or greater than the required retention volume (RRV), where RRV accounts for a multiplier applied to the DCV value. Tree credit volume for a single tree is based on the mature canopy diameter of the tree. More than one tree may be used in a single DMA in order to provide the total required volume. The tree well must also include tree well soil based on the mature tree canopy diameter in accordance with Fact Sheet SD-A.

Table I.4-1 summarizes certain design criteria for the use of tree wells as SSD-BMPs and illustrates the difference between the criteria for pollutant control only and for pollutant control plus hydromodification control. Refer to Fact Sheet SD-A for additional requirements applicable to all types of tree wells.

Table I.4-1 Criteria for use of Tree Wells as SSD-BMPs for Pollutant Control only vs. Pollutant Control Plus Hydromodification Control

SSD-BMP	Criteria for Pollutant Control Only	Criteria for Pollutant Control Plus Hydromodification Control
Tree Well (SD-A)	• The total tree credit volume is greater than DCV • Provide tree well soil based on the mature tree canopy diameter in accordance with Fact Sheet SD-A	• The total tree credit volume is greater than RRV, where RRV accounts for a multiplier applied to the DCV value • Provide tree well soil based on the mature tree canopy diameter in accordance with Fact Sheet SD-A

Tree well design can be prepared through the use of SSD-BMP Automated Worksheet I-3: Step 3. Tree Well Sizing depicted on the following pages or can be calculated manually by following procedures below in Sections I.4.1 through I.4.4.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Pollutant Control

When trees are proposed as a storm water pollutant control BMP, the project proponent must submit detailed calculations for the DCV treated by trees. Document the proposed tree locations on the BMP Plan & DMA Map, and provide sizing calculations in the SWQMP Attachment following the steps in Appendix B.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Flow Control

When tree wells are proposed as a flow control BMP, the project proponent must submit detailed calculations for the Required Retention Volume (RRV) treated by trees. Document the proposed tree locations on the BMP Plan & DMA Map, and provide sizing calculations in the SWQMP Attachment.

Alternative Proposals: You can also propose RRV values or use methods and assumptions different than those described here. Proposals must be based on SWMM modeling or other methods acceptable to the City.

Tree wells will normally be placed at the **discharge point** of the DMA, either individually or in groups. If some of them will retain runoff from different areas in the DMA, RRV and DCV calculations must be specific to each subarea.

If an **underdrain** is proposed for the Tree Well, the sizing factors shown in the DCV Multiplier Table cannot be used, and instead continuous simulation modeling should be performed. This would allow to obtain credit for soil volume underneath the underdrain.

SSD-BMP Automated Worksheet I-3: Step 3 Tree Well Sizing

Category	#	Description	i	Units
Standard Tree Well Inputs	1	Drainage Basin ID or Name	-	unitless
	2	Design Capture Volume Tributary to BMP	-	cubic-feet
	3	Is Hydromodification Control Applicable?	-	yes/no
	4	Predominant NRCS Soil Type Within Tree Well(s) Location		unitless
	5	Select a Tree Species for the Tree Well(s) Consistent with SD-A Tree Palette Table Note: Numbers shown in list are Tree Species Mature Canopy Diameters		unitless
	6	Tree Well(s) Soil Depth (Installation Depth) Must be 30, 36, 42, or 48 Inches; Select from Standard Depths**		inches
	7	Number of Identical* Tree Wells Proposed for this DMA		trees
	8	Proposed Width of Tree Well(s) Soil Installation for One (1) Tree		feet
	9	Proposed Length of Tree Well(s) Soil Installation for One (1) Tree		feet
Tree Data	10	Botanical Name of Tree Species	-	unitless
	11	Tree Species Mature Height per SD-A	-	feet
	12	Tree Species Mature Canopy Diameter per SD-A	-	feet
	13	Minimum Soil Volume Required In Tree Well (2 Cubic Feet Per Square Foot of Mature Tree Canopy Projection Area)	-	cubic-feet
	14	Credit Volume Per Tree	-	cubic-feet
Tree Well Sizing Calculations	15	DCV Multiplier To Meet Flow Control Requirements	-	unitless
	16	Required Retention Volume (RRV) To Meet Flow Control Requirements	-	cubic-feet
	17	Number of Trees Required	-	trees
	18	Total Area of Tree Well Soil Required for Each Tree	-	sq-ft
	19	Approximate Required Width of Tree Well Soil Area for Each Tree	-	feet
	20	Approximate Required Length of Tree Well Soil Area for Each Tree	-	feet
	21	Number of Trees Proposed for this DMA	-	trees
	22	Total Area of Tree Well Soil Proposed for Each Tree	-	sq-ft
	23	Minimum Spacing Between Multiple Trees To Meet Soil Area Requirements (when applicable)***	-	feet
Results	24	Are Tree Well Soil Installation Requirements Met?	-	yes/no
	25	Is Remaining DCV Requirement Fully Satisfied by Tree Well(s)?	-	yes/no
	26	Is Hydromodification Control Requirement Satisfied by Tree Well(s)?	-	yes/no

Notes:

*If using more than one mature canopy diameter within the same DMA, only the smallest mature canopy diameter should be entered. Alternatively, if more than one mature canopy diameter is proposed and/or the dimensions of multiple tree well installations will vary, separate DMAs may be delineated.

**If the actual proposed installation depth is not available in the table of standard depths, select the next lower depth.

***Tree Canopy or Agency Requirements May Also Influence the Minimum Spacing of Trees.

SSD-BMP Worksheet I-3 Line Item Notes
1. Populated per result of Worksheet I-1 (Step 1. DCV) Line 1.
2. Populated per result of Worksheet I-1 (Step 1. DCV) Line 37.
3. Populated per result of Worksheet I-1 (Step 1. DCV) Line 3.
4. User input from stormwater plans. Only required when hydromodification control is applicable.
5. User input from stormwater plans. Select from Tree Palette Table in SD-A Tree Wells Fact Sheet. Tree species other than those listed are allowable, but must be approved by the County. Provide documentation in PDP SWQMP for alternative species.
6. User input from stormwater plans. In accordance with SD-A Tree Wells Fact Sheet, depth must be 30 inches or greater. Select from standard depths typical of tree box sizes. If the actual proposed installation depth is not available in the table of standard depths, select the next lower depth.
7. User input from stormwater plans.
8. User input from stormwater plans.
9. User input from stormwater plans.
10. Populated based on selected tree species from Tree Palette Table in SD-A Tree Wells Fact Sheet. Provide documentation in PDP SWQMP for alternative species.
11. Populated from Tree Palette Table in SD-A Tree Wells Fact Sheet. Provide documentation in PDP SWQMP for alternative species.
12. Populated from Tree Palette Table in SD-A Tree Wells Fact Sheet. Provide documentation in PDP SWQMP for alternative species.
13. 2 cubic feet per square foot of mature tree canopy projection area: 2 x Pi x ((Line 12)/2)^2.
14. Populated from Tree Palette Table in SD-A Tree Wells Fact Sheet based on Mature Canopy Diameter.
15. When hydromodification control is applicable, populated from DCV Multiplier Table in SD-A Tree Wells Fact Sheet based on hydrologic soil type and tree well soil installation depth.
16. When hydromodification control is applicable, DCV Multiplier x DCV: Line 15 x Line 2.
17. When hydromodification control is applicable, Line 16 / Line 14 (RRV / Credit Volume per Tree); otherwise Line 2 / Line 14 (DCV / Credit Volume per Tree).
18. Minimum required volume (2 cubic feet per square foot of mature tree canopy projection area) / proposed installation depth: Line 13 / ((Line 6)/12).
19. The square root of the required area (assumes a square installation): (Line 13 / ((Line 6)/12))^0.5. This is a guideline for the user to estimate the installation size; however, the actual length, width and configuration may vary. Lines 7 and 8 control the final result.
20. The square root of the required area (assumes a square installation): (Line 13 / ((Line 6)/12))^0.5. This is a guideline for the user to estimate the installation size; however, the actual length, width and configuration may vary. Lines 7 and 8 control the final result.
21. Reflects user input from Line 7.
22. Line 8 x Line 9.
23. When number of trees proposed > 1, Maximum of Mature Canopy Diameter or Proposed Dimension of Soil Installation (Line 12 or Lines 8 and 9).
24. "Yes" when Lines 3 through 9 are completed and soil installation requirements are satisfied.
25. "Yes" when Lines 3 through 9 are completed and credit volume requirement is satisfied.
26. When hydromodification control is applicable, "Yes" when Lines 3 through 9 are completed and required retention volume is satisfied.

I.4.1 Step 3.1: Determine DCV or RRV as applicable

To design a tree well as an SSD-BMP, first determine whether the tree well is to be sized for pollutant control only or pollutant control plus hydromodification control. Tree wells sized for pollutant control only must provide tree credit volume for the total DCV from the DMA (previously determined in Step 1) tributary to the tree well. Tree wells sized for pollutant control plus hydromodification control must provide tree credit volume for the RRV tributary to the tree well, where RRV is the total DCV from the DMA increased by a DCV multiplier. Table I.4-1 presents the DCV multipliers.

For flow control requirements, determine how much volume you need. The Required Retention Volume (RRV) is the volume of rainfall that must be retained by the tree wells in the DMA to meet flow control requirements. It is calculated by multiplying the DCV by a DCV multiplier.

a. Determine the DCV. See Appendix B.

b. Determine the DCV Multiplier. The DCV Multiplier is based on two factors: (1) The tree well soil depth and, (2) The Hydrologic Soil Group. Once you know both values, determine the DCV Multiplier using this table:

Table I.4-2 DCV Multiplier Table

Minimum Tree Well Soil Depth (inches)	Hydrologic Soil Group				
	A	B	C	D (Default)	
30”	1.60	2.20	2.50	2.90	DCV Multiplier
36”	1.80	2.47	2.83	3.17	
42”	2.00	2.73	3.17	3.43	
48”	2.20	3.00	3.50	3.70	

The DCV multiplier to determine RRV is based on the underlying hydrologic soil group at the location of the tree well and the minimum tree well soil depth. Determining the tree well soil depth requires coordination with the selection of the tree species (Step 3.2). Therefore, determination of the DCV multiplier and RRV may be an iterative process with Step 3.2, selection of tree species and tree well soil depth. The minimum tree well soil depth is 30 inches. If the actual proposed tree well soil depth is not shown in the table of DCV multipliers, select the next lower depth from the table for the purpose of determining the DCV multiplier. For example, if the proposed tree well soil depth is 60 inches, select 48 inches from the table for the purpose of determining the DCV multiplier.

Calculate the Required Retention Volume (DCV x DCV Multiplier). Calculate the RRV by multiplying the DCV by the DCV Multiplier. This is the volume of runoff that must be offset by the Tree Well Credit Volume. Repeat this process for each DMA.

$$RRV\ (ft^3) = DCV\ (ft^3)\ x\ DCV\ Multiplier$$

I.4.2 Step 3.2: Select a tree species and tree well soil depth

Tree Well Soil Depth is the vertical distance from the top to the bottom of the soil layer in the tree well. **Hydrologic Soil Group** describes the native soil surrounding the tree well. Soil type affects how well water can infiltrate into the area surrounding the tree well. Group A soils provide the most infiltration and Group D the least. If your soil type is unknown, you can assume Group D. But this will result in larger DCV Multipliers, and in turn increase the size or number of tree wells needed.

Select a tree species that will provide sufficient tree credit volume to meet the DCV or RRV as applicable. Table I.4-3 below is a tree palette table with the tree credit volume per tree, which is based on the mature canopy diameter of the tree. Selection of the tree species should be coordinated with the project landscape architect. Multiple trees may be used in a single DMA to collectively provide sufficient tree credit volume, provided that drainage from the DMA is distributed equally to the trees. If the DMA drainage is not distributed equally to the proposed trees, split the DMA into smaller DMAs and size the proposed tree wells individually based on the DCV or RRV tributary to each tree.

Coordinate with the project landscape architect to determine the tree well soil depth. Ensure that the proposed tree well soil depth is appropriate to the size and type of tree(s) proposed.

The volume credited for each tree well is based on the mature canopy diameter of the tree species selected. Any species listed below can be used in a tree well so long as it meets all other applicable restrictions and requirements for the project area. Tree species selected are subject to the requirements of the City's Landscape Manual. Native and drought tolerant species are required where feasible.

Table I.4-3 Tree Palette Table

	Botanical Name	Common Name	Mature Height (ft)	Mature Canopy Diameter (ft)	Credit Volume per Tree (ft3)
1	*Ceanothus 'Ray Hartman"*	California Mountain Lillac	30	**10**	**40**
2	*Pittosporum Phillyraeoides*	Willow Pittosporum	25	**15**	**100**
3	*Salix Lasiolepsis*	Arroyo Willow	25		
4	*Arbutus Unedo*	Strawberry Tree	30	**20**	**180**
5	*Prunus Ilicifolia*	Hollyleaf Cherry	30		
6	*Prunus Lynoii*	Catalina Cherry	40		
7	*Cercis Occidentalis*	Western Redbud	25	**25**	**290**
8	*Heteromeles Arbutifolia*	Toyon, Christmas Berry	25		
9	*Alnus Rhombifolia*	White Elder	75	**30**	**420**
10	*Arbutus 'Marina'*	Hybrid Strawberry Tree	35		
11	*Chilopsis Linearis*	Desert Willow	30		
12	*Lyonothamnus Floribundus*	Catalina Ironwood	50		
13	*Magnolia Grandiflora*	Southern Magnolia	40		
14	*Pinus Torreyana*	Torrey Pines	80		
15	*Platanus Racemosa*	California sycamore	60		
16	*Quercus Agrifolia*	Coast Live Oak	70		
17	*Quercus Engelmannii*	Engelmann Oak	50		
18	*Quercus Suber*	Cork Oak	40		
19	*Sambucus Mexicana*	Blue Elderberry	30		

Below are sources for Tree Palette Mature Height and Mature Canopy Diameter:

A. Water Efficient Landscape Design Manual, County of San Diego, 2016
B. Sustainable Landscapes Guidelines, San Diego County Water Authority, 2015
C. Low Impact Development Handbook, County of San Diego, 2014
D. Low Impact Development Design Manual, City of San Diego, 2011
E. Street Tree Selection Guide, City of San Diego, 2013
F. Environmentally Friendly Garden Plant List, City of San Diego, 2004
G. BMP Design Manual, County of San Diego, 2016
H. California Native Plant Society. 2017

Alternative Species. Tree species other than those listed are allowable, but must be approved by the City. If you know the mature canopy diameter of the species you want to propose, use the values in the table to determine its credit volume. Note that even if you select a species with a canopy diameter greater than **30 feet**, the maximum credit any tree can generate is **420 ft^3**.

Determine if you have enough volume. Compare your total Tree Well Credit Volume from Step 3.2 to the RRV you calculated in Step 3.1. Once your Credit Volume is equal to or greater than your RRV, this requirement is satisfied. If your Credit Volume is initially too low, adjust your design either to (1) increase it with more or bigger trees, or (2) decrease the RRV through DCV reductions.

I.4.3 Step 3.3: Determine the minimum soil volume required in tree well

Determine how much volume you have. The Tree Well Credit Volume is the volume of runoff retention in cubic feet per tree (ft^3/tree) to be provided by each tree well (or group) in the DMA. Together retain a volume that is equal to or greater than the RRV for the DMA.

The minimum soil volume required in the tree well is based on the mature canopy diameter of the proposed tree. A tree well for storm water control requires a minimum of 2 cubic feet of soil per square foot of mature tree canopy projection area. The minimum tree well soil volume can be calculated by the following equation:

$$Minimum\ Tree\ Well\ Soil\ Volume\ (ft^3) = 2\pi \times \left(\frac{D}{2}\right)^2$$

<u>Where:</u>

D = mature canopy diameter (feet)

I.4.4 Step 3.4: Determine tree well soil installation area and show on plans

Based on the required tree well soil volume and proposed tree well soil depth, the minimum area required for the tree well soil can be determined.

$$Minimum\ Tree\ Well\ Soil\ Area\ (ft^2) = \frac{Minimum\ Tree\ Well\ Soil\ Volume\ (ft^3)}{Tree\ Well\ Soil\ Depth\ (ft)}$$

Show the proposed tree well soil area on the project plans. Ensure that the area reserved for tree well soil meets the following requirements:

- The tree well soil must be placed within 1.5 times the mature tree canopy radius.

When multiple trees are used, the trees must be spaced so that the minimum tree well soil volume for each tree does not overlap.

Appendix

J

CARLSBAD BMP DESIGN MANUAL

Trash Capture Implementation Design Requirements

Appendix J Trash Capture Implementation Design Requirements

J.1 Introduction

This appendix details the specific design requirements for trash capture devices to be included in the Trash Capture SWQMP. Section 4.4 outlines trash capture applicability to development projects, design sizing criteria, and approved list of trash capture devices. Refer to Chapter 7 for trash capture device maintenance requirements and Chapter 8 for submittal requirements on projects that are subject to Trash Capture BMPs.

J.1.1 Trash Capture Standard Projects subject only to Building Permits

If a project is deemed a Standard Project subject to Trash Capture Requirements per the city's Storm Water Standard Questionnaire, E-34 Form and is only subject to a building permit per Carlsbad Municipal Code, the property owner and civil engineer will need to follow the submittal requirements for a Trash Capture SWQMP. Refer to the city's Application Trash Capture SWQMP Review, E-23A Form which is available on the city's website.

When preparing a Trash Capture SWQMP, the city's standard Trash Capture BMP Plan is a required attachment to the building plan set and will need to incorporate at a minimum the following:

- Construction notes for any trash capture device
- Design requirements and specifications for the proposed trash capture device
- Any associated on-site drainage systems including size, material, invert elevations
- Signed and sealed by engineer of work

If a project is deemed a Standard Project subject to Trash Capture Requirements and requires a grading permit per Carlsbad Municipal Code, then a Trash Capture SWQMP shall be submitted with the review of the grading plans per city's Grading Plan Submittal Checklist, E-8 Form.

J.2 Trash Capture Design Requirements

For the California Water Board certified list of trash capture devices, refer to Section 4.4. Certain trash capture devices are based on design flow rate and can utilize the design methodology identified below. Other devices are dependent on the storm drain facility that the device will be installed in. For these devices, see Section J.2.2 for design requirements.

J.2.1 Design Flow Rate

The selected trash capture device shall be based on the manufacturer's device specification and must demonstrate that it has the capacity for a minimum one-year, one-hour design flow rate. The following hydrologic method shall be used to calculate the flow rate to be filtered or treated by the trash capture device:

$$Q = C \times i \times A$$

Where:
Q = Design flow rate in cubic feet per second
C = Runoff factor, area-weighted estimate using Table B.1-1.
i = Rainfall intensity in inches per hour. (typical i=0.471 in/hr)
A = Tributary area (acres) which includes the total area draining to the trash capture BMP, including any offsite or onsite areas that comingle with project runoff and drain to the trash capture BMP.

When calculating for design flow rate, use the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration National (NOAA) Weather Service's Precipitation Frequency Data Server for rainfall intensity values. Projects can use the rainfall intensity of 0.471 in/hr for one-year, one-hour storm event which is based on the precipitation frequency data station at Oceanside Pumping Plant (Latitude:33.2103°, Longitude: -117.3536°). If the engineer chooses to utilize a rainfall intensity within closer proximity to the project location, include the latitude and longitude and/or address in the Trash Capture SWQMP so staff reviewer can verify the rainfall intensity value.

J.2.2 Non-Flow Based Devices Design Requirements

A non-flow based trash capture device is dependent on the manufacturer's sizing requirements and criteria. Include in the Trash Capture SWQMP the product information form, manufacturer device specifications, or any other applicable documentation to demonstrate that the trash capture device complies with manufacturer's design requirements and criteria.

J.2.3 Location of Trash Capture Devices

The trash capture device shall be placed on private property.

If the trash capture device is proposed within any public storm drain facility, it will require approval from the City Engineer. The engineer of work will need to demonstrate in the Trash Capture SWQMP, that all of the storm water runoff coming from the subject property and all off-site contributing drainage area is directed into the public storm drain facility with the proposed trash capture device. The Trash Capture SWQMP shall also document the drainage area of the public storm drain facility.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes

Appendix

K

CARLSBAD BMP DESIGN MANUAL

Forms and Checklists

Appendix K Forms and Checklists

The following Forms/Checklists/Worksheets were developed for use by the project applicant to document the storm water management design:

- K-7: Harvest and Use Feasibility Screening Checklist
- K-9: Factor of Safety and Design Infiltration Rate

Harvest and Use Feasibility Checklist	**Form K-7**

1. Is there a demand for harvested water (check all that apply) at the project site that is reliably present during the wet season?

☐ Toilet and urinal flushing
☐ Landscape irrigation
☐ Other:_______________

2. If there is a demand; estimate the anticipated average wet season demand over a period of 36 hours. Guidance for planning level demand calculations for toilet/urinal flushing and landscape irrigation is provided in Section B.3.2.

[Provide a summary of calculations here]

3. Calculate the DCV using worksheet B-2.1.

DCV = ___________ (cubic feet)

3a. Is the 36 hour demand greater than or equal to the DCV? ☐ Yes / ☐ No ⇨ ⇩	3b. Is the 36 hour demand greater than 0.25DCV but less than the full DCV? ☐ Yes / ☐ No ⇨ ⇩	3c. Is the 36 hour demand less than 0.25DCV? ☐ Yes ⇩
Harvest and use appears to be feasible. Conduct more detailed evaluation and sizing calculations to confirm that DCV can be used at an adequate rate to meet drawdown criteria.	Harvest and use may be feasible. Conduct more detailed evaluation and sizing calculations to determine feasibility. Harvest and use may only be able to be used for a portion of the site, or (optionally) the storage may need to be upsized to meet long term capture targets while draining in longer than 36 hours.	Harvest and use is considered to be infeasible.

Is harvest and use feasible based on further evaluation?

☐ Yes, refer to Appendix E to select and size harvest and use BMPs.

☐ No, select alternate BMPs.

Note: 36-hour demand calculations are for feasibility analysis only. Once feasibility analysis is complete the applicant may be allowed to use a different drawdown time provided they meet the 80% annual capture standard (refer to B.4.2) and 96-hour vector control drawdown requirement.

Factor of Safety and Design Infiltration Rate Worksheet					Form K-9
Factor Category		Factor Description	Assigned Weight (w)	Factor Value (v)	Product (p) $p = w \times v$
A	Suitability Assessment	Soil assessment methods	0.25		
		Predominant soil texture	0.25		
		Site soil variability	0.25		
		Depth to groundwater / impervious layer	0.25		
		Suitability Assessment Safety Factor, $S_A = \Sigma p$			
B	Design	Level of pretreatment/ expected sediment loads	0.5		
		Redundancy/resiliency	0.25		
		Compaction during construction	0.25		
		Design Safety Factor, $S_B = \Sigma p$			
Combined Safety Factor, $S_{total} = S_A \times S_B$					
Observed Infiltration Rate, inch/hr, $K_{observed}$ (corrected for test-specific bias)					
Design Infiltration Rate, in/hr, $K_{design} = K_{observed} / S_{total}$					
Supporting Data					
Briefly describe infiltration test and provide reference to test forms:					

Glossary of Key Terms

50% Rule Refers to an MS4 Permit standard for redevelopment PDPs (PDPs on previously developed sites) that defines whether the redevelopment PDP must meet storm water management requirements for the entire development or only for the newly created or replaced impervious surface. Refer to **Section 1.7**.

Aggregate Hard, durable material of mineral origin typically consisting of gravel, crushed stone, crushed quarry or mine rock. Gradation varies depending on application within a BMP as bedding, filter course, or storage.

Aggregate Storage Layer Layer within a BMP that serves to provide a conduit for conveyance, detention storage, infiltration storage, saturated storage, or a combination thereof.

Alternative Compliance Programs A program that allows PDPs to participate in an offsite mitigation project in lieu of implementing the onsite structural BMP performance requirements required under the MS4 Permit. Refer to **Section 1.8** for more information on alternative compliance programs.

Baseline BMPs Baseline BMP means any BMP that is required where applicable and feasible on all development projects. Baseline BMPs include both Site Design and Source Control BMPs. Some baseline BMPs can be sized to qualify for Design Capture Volume (DCV) reductions on priority development projects (PDP). Baseline BMPs are not required otber sized to qualify for DCV reductions and shall be implemented where applicable and feasible on all development projects even if they do not meet the criteria to qualify for DCV reduction.

Bed Sediment The part of the sediment load in channel flow that moves along the bed by sliding or saltation, and part of the suspended sediment load, that principally constitutes the channel bed.

Bedding Aggregate used to establish a foundation for structures such as pipes, manholes, and pavement.

Biodegradation Decomposition of pollutants by biological means.

Biofiltration BMPs	Biofiltration BMPs are shallow basins filled with treatment media and drainage rock that treat storm water runoff by capturing and detaining inflows prior to controlled release through minimal incidental infiltration, evapotranspiration, or discharge via underdrain or surface outlet structure. Treatment is achieved through filtration, sedimentation, sorption, biochemical processes and/or vegetative uptake. These BMPs must be sized to:[a] Treat 1.5 times the DCV not reliably retained onsite, OR[b] Treat the DCV not reliably retained onsite with a flow-thru design that has a total volume, including pore spaces and pre-filter detention volume, sized to hold at least 0.75 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite. (See **Section 5.5.3** and **Appendix B.5** for illustration and additional information).
Biofiltration Soil Media (BSM)	Biofiltration Soil Media (BSM) is intended to filter stormwater and support plant growth while minimizing the leaching of potential pollutants. BSM used in stormwater treatment BMPs, including biofiltration and bioretention, is required to meet certain specifications (See **Appendix F**). BSM is also referred to as Engineered Soil Media and Bioretention Soil Media.
Biofiltration Treatment	Treatment from a BMP meeting the biofiltration standard.
Biofiltration with Partial Retention BMPs	Biofiltration with partial retention BMPs are shallow basins filled with treatment media and drainage rock that manage storm water runoff through infiltration, evapotranspiration, and biofiltration. Partial retention is characterized by a subsurface stone infiltration storage zone in the bottom of the BMP below the elevation of the discharge from the underdrains. The discharge of biofiltered water from the underdrain occurs when the water level in the infiltration storage zone exceeds the elevation of the underdrain outlet. (See **Section 5.5.2.1** for illustration and additional information).
Bioretention BMPs	Vegetated surface water systems that filter water through vegetation and soil, or engineered media prior to infiltrating into native soils. Bioretention BMPs in this manual retain the entire DCV prior to overflow to the downstream conveyance system. (See **Section 5.5.1.2** for illustration and additional information).
BMP	A procedure or device designed to minimize the quantity of runoff pollutants and / or volumes that flow to downstream receiving water bodies. Refer to **Section 2.2.2.1**.

BMP Sizing Calculator An on-line tool that was developed under the 2007 MS4 Permit to facilitate the sizing factor method for designing flow control BMPs for hydromodification management. The BMP Sizing Calculator has been discontinued as of June 30, 2014.

Cistern A vessel for storing water. In this manual, a cistern is typically a rain barrel, tank, vault, or other artificial reservoir.

Coarse Sediment Yield Area A GLU with coarse-grained geologic material (material that is expected to produce greater than 50% sand when weathered). See the following terms modifying coarse sediment yield area: critical, potential critical.

Compact Biofiltration BMP A biofiltration BMP, either proprietary or non-proprietary in origin, that is designed to provide storm water pollutant control within a smaller footprint than a typical biofiltration BMP, usually through use of specialized media that is able to efficiently treat high storm water inflow rates.

Conditions of Approval Requirements a jurisdiction may adopt for a project in connection with a discretionary action (e.g., issuance of a use permit). COAs may include features to be incorporated into the final plans for the project and may also specify uses, activities, and operational measures that must be observed over the life of the project.

Contemporary Design Standards This term refers to design standards that are reasonably consistent with the current state of practice and are based on desired outcomes that are reasonably consistent with the context of the MS4 Permit and Model BMP Design Manual. For example, a detention basin that is designed solely to mitigate peak flow rates would not be considered a contemporary water quality BMP design because it is not consistent with the goal of water quality improvement. Current state of the practice recognizes that a drawdown time of 24 to 72 hour is typically needed to promote settling. For practical purposes, design standards can be considered "contemporary" if they have been published within the last 10 years, preferably in California or Washington State, and are specifically intended for storm water quality management.

Continuous Simulation Modeling A method of hydrological analysis in which a set of rainfall data (typically hourly for 30 years or more) is used as input, and a continuous runoff hydrograph is calculated over the same time period. Continuous simulation models typical track dynamic soil and storage conditions during and between storm events. The output is then analyzed statistically for the purposes of comparing runoff patterns under different conditions (for example, pre- and post-development-project).

Copermittees	See Jurisdiction.
Critical Channel Flow (Qc)	The channel flow that produces the critical shear stress that initiates bed movement or that erodes the toe of channel banks. When measuring Qc, it should be based on the weakest boundary material – either bed or bank.
Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas (CCSYA)	A GLU with coarse-grained geologic material and high relative sediment production, where the sediment produced is critical to the receiving stream (a source of bed material to the receiving stream). See also: potential critical coarse sediment yield area.
Critical Shear Stress	The shear stress that initiates channel bed movement or that erodes the toe of channel banks. See also critical channel flow.
De Minimis DMA	De minimis DMAs are very small areas that are not considered to be significant contributors of pollutants, and are considered not practicable to drain to a BMP. See **Section 5.2.2**.
Depth	The distance from the top, or surface, to the bottom of a BMP component.
Design Capture Volume (DCV)	A volume of storm water runoff produced from the 85th percentile, 24-hour storm event. See **Section 2.2.2.2**.
Detention	Temporarily holding back storm water runoff via a designed outlet (e.g., underdrain, orifice) to provide flow rate and duration control.
Detention Storage	Storage that provides detention as the outflow mechanism.
Development Footprint	The limits of all grading and ground disturbance, including landscaping, associated with a project.
Development Project	Construction, rehabilitation, redevelopment, or reconstruction of any public or private projects. Includes both new development and redevelopment. Also includes whole of the action as defined by CEQA. See **Section 1.3.**
Direct Discharge	The connection of project site runoff to an exempt receiving water body, which could include an exempt river reach, reservoir or lagoon.

	To qualify as a direct discharge, the discharge elevation from the project site outfall must be at or below either the normal operating water surface elevation or the reservoir spillway elevation, and properly designed energy dissipation must be provided. "Direct discharge" may be more specifically defined by each municipality.
Direct Infiltration	Infiltration via methods or devices, such as dry wells or infiltration trenches, designed to bypass the mantle of surface soils that is unsaturated and more organically active and transmit runoff directly to deeper subsurface soils.
Drainage Management Area (DMAs)	See **Section 3.3.3**.
Drawdown Time	The time required for a storm water detention or infiltration facility to drain and return to the dry-weather condition. For detention facilities, drawdown time is a function of basin volume and outlet orifice size. For infiltration facilities, drawdown time is a function of basin volume and infiltration rate.
Enclosed Embayments (Enclosed Bays)	Enclosed bays are indentations along the coast that enclose an area of oceanic water within distinct headlands or harbor works. Enclosed bays include all bays where the narrowest distance between the headlands or outermost bay works is less than 75 percent of the greatest dimension of the enclosed portion of the bay. Enclosed bays do not include inland surface waters or ocean waters. In Carlsbad: Agua Hedionda Lagoon, Batiquitos Lagoon, and Buena Vista Lagoon..
Environmentally Sensitive Areas (ESAs)	Areas that include but are not limited to all Clean Water Act Section 303(d) impaired water bodies; areas designated as Areas of Special Biological Significance by the State Water Board and SDRWQCB; State Water Quality Protected Areas; water bodies designated with the RARE beneficial use by the State Water Board and SDRWQCB; and any other equivalent environmentally sensitive areas which have been identified by the Copermittees.
Filter Course	Aggregate used to prevent particle migration between two different materials when storm water runoff passes through.
Filter Fabric	A permeable textile material, also termed a non-woven geotextile, that prevents particle migration between two different materials when storm water runoff passes through.

Filtration	Controlled seepage of storm water runoff through media, vegetation, or aggregate to reduce pollutants via physical separation.
Flow Control	Control of runoff rates and durations as required by the HMP.
Flow Control BMP	A structural BMP designed to provide control of post-project runoff flow rates and durations for the purpose of hydromodification management.
Flow-thru Treatment	Treatment from a BMP meeting the flow-thru treatment control standard.
Flow-Thru Treatment BMPs	Flow-thru treatment control BMPs are structural, engineered facilities that are designed to remove pollutants from storm water runoff using treatment processes that do not incorporate significant biological methods. Flow-thru BMPs include vegetated swales, media filters, sand filters, and dry extended detention basins. (See **Section 5.4.4** for illustration and additional information).
Forebay	An initial storage area at the entrance to a structural BMP designed to trap and settle out solid pollutants such as sediment in a concentrated location, to provide pre-treatment within the structural BMP and facilitate removal of solid pollutants during maintenance operations.
Full Infiltration	Infiltration of a storm water runoff volume equal to the DCV.
Geomorphic Assessment	A quantification or measure of the changing properties of a stream channel.
Geomorphically Significant Flows	Flows that have the potential to cause, or accelerate, stream channel erosion or other adverse impacts to beneficial stream uses. The range of geomorphically significant flows was determined as part of the development of the March 2011 Final HMP, and has not changed under the 2013 MS4 Permit. However, under the 2013 MS4 Permit, Q2 and Q10 must be based on the pre-development condition rather than the pre-project condition, meaning that no pre-project impervious area may be considered in the computation of pre-development Q2 and Q10.
Geomorphic Landscape Unit (GLU)	Classifications that provide an estimate of sediment yield based upon three factors: geology, hillslope, and land cover. GLUs are developed based on the methodology presented in the SCCWRP Technical Report 605 titled "Hydromodification Screening Tools: GIS-Based

Catchment Analyses of Potential Changes in Runoff and Sediment Discharge" (SCCWRP, 2010).

Gross Pollutants In storm water, generally litter (trash), organic debris (leaves, branches, seeds, twigs, grass clippings), and coarse sediments (inorganic breakdown products from soils, pavement, or building materials).

Harvest and Use BMP Harvest and use (aka rainwater harvesting) BMPs capture and store storm water runoff for later use. These BMPs are engineered to store a specified volume of water and have no design surface discharge until this volume is exceeded. (See **Section 5.4.1.1** for illustration and additional information).

Hungry Water Also known as "sediment-starved" water, "hungry" water refers to channel flow that is hungry for sediment from the channel bed or banks because it currently contains less bed material sediment than it is capable of conveying. The "hungry water" phenomenon occurs when the natural sediment load decreases and the erosive force of the runoff increases as a natural counterbalance, as described by Lane's Equation.

Hydraulic Head Energy represented as a difference in elevation, typically as the difference between the inlet and outlet water surface elevation for a BMP.

Hydraulic Residence Time The length of time between inflow and outflow that runoff remains in a BMP.

Hydrologic Soil Group Classification of soils by the Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) into A, B, C, and D groups according to infiltration capacity.

Hydromodification The change in the natural watershed hydrologic processes and runoff characteristics (i.e., interception, infiltration, overland flow, interflow and groundwater flow) caused by urbanization or other land use changes that result in increased stream flows and sediment transport. In addition, alteration of stream and river channels, installation of dams and water impoundments, and excessive stream-bank and shoreline erosion are also considered hydromodification, due to their disruption of natural watershed hydrologic processes.

Hydromodification Management BMP A structural BMP for the purpose of hydromodification management, either for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas or for flow control. See also flow control BMP.

Hydromodification Management Plan (HMP) A plan implemented by the Copermittees so that post-project runoff shall not exceed estimated pre-development rates and/or durations by more than 10%, where increased runoff would result in increased potential for erosion or other adverse impacts to beneficial uses. The March 2011 Final HMP and the updated MS4 Permit are the basis of the flow control requirements of this manual.

Impervious Surface Any material that prevents or substantially reduces infiltration of water into the soil.

Infeasible As applied to BMPs, refers to condition in which a BMP approach is not practicable based on technical constraints specific to the site, including by not limited to physical constraints, risks of impacts to environmental resources, risks of harm to human health, or risk of loss or damage to property. Feasibility criteria are provided in this manual.

Infiltration In the context of LID, infiltration is defined as the percolation of water into the ground. Infiltration is often expressed as a rate (inches per hour), which is determined through an infiltration test. In the context of non-storm water, infiltration is water other than wastewater that enters a sewer system (including sewer service connections and foundation drains) from the ground through such means as defective pipes, pipe joints, connections, or manholes. Infiltration does not include, and is distinguished from, inflow [40 CFR 35.2005(20)].

Infiltration BMP Infiltration BMPs are structural measures that capture, store and infiltrate storm water runoff. These BMPs are engineered to store a specified volume of water and have no design surface discharge (underdrain or outlet structure) until this volume is exceeded. These types of BMPs may also support evapotranspiration processes, but are characterized by having their most dominant volume losses due to infiltration. (See **Section 5.4.1.2** for illustration and additional information).

Jurisdiction The term "jurisdiction" is used in this manual to refer to individual copermittees who have independent responsibility for implementing the requirements of the MS4 Permit.

Low Impact Development (LID) A storm water management and land development strategy that emphasizes conservation and the use of onsite natural features integrated with engineered, small-scale hydrologic controls to more

	closely reflect pre-development hydrologic functions. See **Site Design**.
Lower Flow Threshold	The lower limit of the range of flows to be controlled for hydromodification management. The lower flow threshold is the flow at which erosion of sediment from the stream bed or banks begins to occur. See also critical channel flow. For the San Diego region, the lower flow threshold shall be a fraction (0.1, 0.3, or 0.5) of the pre-development 2-year flow rate based on continuous simulation modeling (0.1Q2, 0.3Q2, or 0.5Q2).
Maximum Extent Practicable (MEP)	The technology-based standard established by Congress in CWA section 402(p)(3)(B)(iii) for storm water that operators of MS4s must meet. Technology-based standards establish the level of pollutant reductions that dischargers must achieve, typically by treatment or by a combination of source control and treatment control BMPs. MEP generally emphasizes pollution prevention and source control BMPs primarily (as the first line of defense) in combination with treatment methods serving as a backup (additional line of defense). MEP considers economics and is generally, but not necessarily, less stringent than best available technology (BAT). Refer to the definition in the MS4 Permit. [Appendix C, Definitions, Page C-6] for more details.
Media	Storm water runoff pollutant treatment material, typically included as a permeable constructed bed or container (cartridge) within a BMP.
National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES)	The national program for issuing, modifying, revoking and reissuing, terminating, monitoring and enforcing permits, and imposing and enforcing pretreatment requirements, under Sections 307, 318, 402, and 405 of the Clean Water Act.
New Development	Land disturbing activities; structural development, including construction or installation of a building or structure, the creation of impervious surfaces; and land subdivision.
Operation and Maintenance (O&M)	Requirements in the MS4 Permit to inspect structural BMPs and verify the implementation of operational practices and preventative and corrective maintenance in perpetuity.
Partial Infiltration	Infiltration of a storm water runoff volume less than the DCV.

Partial Retention	Partial retention category is defined by structural measures that incorporate both infiltration (in the lower treatment zone) and biofiltration (in the upper treatment zone).
Priority Development Project (PDP)	As defined by the MS4 Permit provision E.3.b, land development projects that fall under the planning and building authority of the Copermittee for which the Copermittee must impose specific requirements in addition to those required of Standard Projects. Refer to **Section 1.4** to determine if your project is a PDP.
PDPs with only Pollutant Control Requirements	PDPs that need to meet Source Control, Site Design and Pollutant Control Requirements (but are exempt from Hydromodification Management Requirements).
PDPs with Pollutant Control and Hydromodification Management Requirements	PDPs that need to meet Source Control, Site Design, Pollutant Control and Hydromodification Management Requirements.
Point of Compliance (POC)	1. For channel screening and determination of low flow threshold: the point at which collected storm water from a development is delivered from a constructed or modified drainage system into a natural or un-lined channel. POC for channel screening may be located onsite or offsite, depending on where runoff from the project meets a natural or un-lined channel. 2. For flow control: the point at which pre-development and post-development flow rates and durations will be compared. POC for flow control is typically onsite. A project may have a different POC for channel screening vs. POC for flow control if runoff from the project site is conveyed in hardened systems from the project site boundary to the natural or un-lined channel.
Pollutant Control	Control of pollutants via physical, chemical or biological processes
Pollution Prevention	Pollution prevention is defined as practices and processes that reduce or eliminate the generation of pollutants, in contrast to source control BMPs, treatment control BMPs, or disposal.
Post-Project Hydrology Flows, Volumes	The peak runoff flows and runoff volume anticipated after the project has been constructed taking into account all permeable and impermeable surfaces, soil and vegetation types and conditions after landscaping is complete, detention or retention basins or other water

storage elements incorporated into the site design, and any other site features that would affect runoff volumes and peak flows.

Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Area (PCCSYA) A GLU with coarse-grained geologic material and high relative sediment production, as defined in the Regional WMAA. The Regional WMAA identified GLUs as potential critical coarse sediment yield areas based on slope, geology, and land cover. GLU analysis does not determine whether the sediment produced is critical to the receiving stream (a source of bed material to the receiving stream) therefore the areas are designated as potential.

Pre-Development Runoff Conditions Approximate flow rates and durations that exist or existed onsite before land development occurs. For new development projects, this equates to runoff conditions immediately before any new project disturbance or grading. For redevelopment projects, this equates to runoff conditions from the project footprint assuming infiltration characteristics of the underlying soil, and existing grade. Runoff coefficients of concrete or asphalt must not be used. A redevelopment PDP must use available information pertaining to existing underlying soil type and onsite existing grade to estimate pre-development runoff conditions.

Pre-Project Condition The condition prior to any project work or the existing condition. Note that pre-project condition and pre-development condition will not be the same for redevelopment projects.

Pretreatment Removal of gross solids, including organic debris and coarse sediment, from runoff to minimize clogging and increase the effectiveness of BMPs.

Project Area All areas proposed by an applicant to be altered or developed, plus any additional areas that drain on to areas to be altered or developed. Also see **Section 1.3**.

Project Submittal Documents submitted to a jurisdiction or Copermittee in connection with an application for development approval and demonstrating compliance with MS4 Permit requirements for the project. Specific requirements vary from municipality to municipality.

Proprietary BMP BMP designed and marketed by private business for treatment of storm water. Check with City staffprior to proposing to use a proprietary BMP.

Receiving Waters See **Waters of the United States**.

Redevelopment The creation and/or replacement of impervious surface on an already developed site. Examples include the expansion of a building footprint, road widening, and the addition to or replacement of a structure. Replacement of impervious surfaces includes any activity where impervious material(s) are removed, exposing underlying soil during construction. Redevelopment does not include routine maintenance activities, such as trenching and resurfacing associated with utility work; pavement grinding; re surfacing existing roadways, sidewalks, pedestrian ramps, or bike lanes on existing roads; and routine replacement of damaged pavement, such as pothole repair.

Required Retention Volume (RRV) The Required Retention Volume (RRV) is the volume of rainfall that must be retained by tree wells in a DMA to meet flow control requirements. It is calculated by multiplying the Design Capture Volume (DCV) by a DCV multiplier.

Retrofitting Storm water management practice put into place after development has occurred in watersheds where the practices previously did not exist or are ineffective. Retrofitting of developed areas is intended to improve water quality, protect downstream channels, reduce flooding, or meet other specific objectives. Retrofitting developed areas may include, but is not limited to replacing roofs with green roofs, disconnecting downspouts or impervious surfaces to drain to pervious surfaces, replacing impervious surfaces with pervious surfaces, installing rain barrels, installing rain gardens, and trash area enclosures.

Regional Water Quality Control Board (SDRWQCB) California RWQCBs are responsible for implementing pollution control provisions of the Clean Water Act and California Water Code within their jurisdiction. There are nine California RWQCBs.

Retention (Retention BMPs) A category of BMP that does not have any service outlets that discharge to surface water or to a conveyance system that drains to surface waters for the design event (i.e. 85th percentile 24-hour). Mechanisms used for storm water retention include infiltration, evapotranspiration, and use of retained water for non-potable or potable purposes.

Saturated Storage Storage that provides a permanent volume of water at the bottom of the BMP as an anaerobic zone to promote denitrification and/or thermal pollution control. Also known as internal water storage or a saturation zone.

Self-mitigating Areas A natural, landscaped, or turf area that does not generate significant pollutants and drains directly offsite or to the public storm drain system without being treated by a structural BMP. See **Section 5.2.1**.

Self-retaining DMA via Qualifying Site Design BMPs An area designed to retain runoff to fully eliminate storm water runoff from the 85^{th} percentile 24 hours storm event; See **Section 5.2.3**.

Significant Redevelopment Redevelopment that meets the definition of a "PDP" in this manual. See **Section 1.4**.

Significant Site Design BMPs (SSD-BMPs) Significant Site Design BMPs (SSD-BMPs) are Site Design BMPs that are sized and constructed to satisfy Structural Performance Standards for a Drainage Management Area (DMA). Examples of SSD-BMPs are tree wells and impervious area dispersion. SSD-BMPs may be credited in Worksheet B-1.1 of the BMP Design Manual to ***fully*** satisfy the Design Capture Volume (DCV) reductions and/or hydromodification reductions in a DMA.

Site Design BMPs A storm water management and land development strategy that emphasizes conservation of natural features and the use of onsite natural features integrated with engineered, small-scale hydrologic controls to more closely reflect pre-development hydrologic functions. Site Design BMPs can be sized for Design Capture Volume (DCV) reductions using Worksheet B-1.1 of the BMP Design Manual for Priority Development Projects (PDP) (See Enhanced Site Design BMPs and Significant Site Design BMPs)

Sizing Factor Method A method for designing flow control BMPs for hydromodification management using sizing factors developed from unit area continuous simulation models.

Sorption Physical and/or chemical process where pollutants are taken out of runoff through attachment to another substance.

Source Control BMPs Land use or site planning practices, or structures that aim to prevent runoff pollution by reducing the potential for contamination at the source of pollution. Source control BMPs minimizes the contact between pollutants and storm water runoff. Examples include roof structures over trash or material storage areas, and berms around fuel dispensing areas. Source control BMPs are described within this manual.

Standard Industrial Classifications (SIC) — A Federal government system for classifying industries by 4-digit code. It is being supplanted by the North American Industrial Classification System but SIC codes are still referenced by the Regional Water Board in identifying development sites subject to regulation under the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System permit. Information and an SIC search function are available at https://www.osha.gov/pls/imis/sicsearch.html

Standard Project — Any development project that is not defined as a PDP by the MS4 Permit.

Storm Water Conveyance System — A conveyance or system of conveyances (including roads with drainage systems, municipal streets, catch basins, curbs, gutters, ditches, man-made channels, or storm drains): (i) Owned or operated by a State, city, town, borough, county, parish, district, association, or other public body (created by or pursuant to State law) having jurisdiction over disposal of sewage, industrial wastes, storm water, or other wastes, including special districts under State law such as a sewer district, flood control district or drainage district, or similar entity, or an Indian tribe or an authorized Indian tribal organization, or designated and approved management agency under section 208 of the Clean Water Act that discharges to waters of the United States; (ii) Designated or used for collecting or conveying storm water; (iii) Which is not a combined sewer; (iv) Which is not part of the Publicly Owned Treatment Works as defined at 40 CFR 122.26.

Storm Water Pollutant Control BMP — A category of storm water management requirements that includes treatment of storm water to remove pollutants by measures such as retention, biofiltration, and/or flow-thru treatment control, as specified in this manual. Also called a Pollutant Control BMP.

Structural BMP — Throughout the manual, the term "structural BMP" is a general term that encompasses the pollutant control BMPs and hydromodification BMPs required for PDPs under the MS4 Permit. A structural BMP may be a pollutant control BMP, a hydromodification management BMP, or an integrated pollutant control and hydromodification management BMP. Structural BMPs as defined in the MS4 Permit are: a subset of BMPs which detains, retains, filters, removes, or prevents the release of pollutants to surface waters from development projects in perpetuity, after construction of a project is completed.

Structural Performance Standards Structural Performance Standards are numeric design standards for managing stormwater flows from Priority Development Project (PDP) sites. Projects that are exempt from hydromodification management requirements must only satisfy the Pollutant Control Structural Performance Standard. All other project must satisfy both the Pollutant Control Structural Performance Standard and the Hydromodification Management Structural Performance Standard. Both standards may be satisfied through a variety of design approaches, including Structural BMPs and Significant Site Design BMPs.

Subgrade In-situ soil that lies underneath a BMP.

Trash Capture BMPs A treatment control device that traps all particles that are 5 mm or greater, and has a design treatment capacity that is either: a) of not less than the peak flow rate resulting from a one-year, one-hour storm in the sub-drainage area, or b) appropriately designed to carry at least the same flows as the corresponding storm drain. The device must be certified and listed by the State Water Quality Control Board.

Tributary Area The total surface area of land or hardscape that contributes runoff to the BMP; including any offsite or onsite areas that comingles with project runoff and drains to the BMP. Refer to **Section 3.3.3** for additional guidance Also termed the drainage area or catchment area.

Unified BMP Design Approach This term refers to the standardized process for site and watershed investigation, BMP selection, BMP sizing, and BMP design that is outlined and described in this manual with associated appendices and templates. This approach is considered to be "unified" because it represents a pathway for compliance with MS4 Permit requirements that is anticipated to be reasonably consistent across the local jurisdictions in San Diego County. In contrast, applicants may choose to take an alternative approach where they demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Copermittee, in their submittal, compliance with applicable performance standards without necessarily following the process identified in this manual.

Upper Flow Threshold The upper limit of the range of flows to be controlled for hydromodification management. For the San Diego region, the upper flow threshold shall be the pre-development 10-year flow rate (Q10) based on continuous simulation modeling.

Vactor Refers to a sewer or storm drain cleaning truck equipped to remove materials from sewer or storm drain pipes or structures, including some storm water BMPs.

Vector An animal or insect capable of transmitting the causative agent of human disease. An example of a vector in San Diego County that is of concern in storm water management is a mosquito.

Water Quality Improvement Plan (WQIP) Copermittees are required to develop a Water Quality Improvement Plan for each Watershed Management Area in the San Diego Region. The purpose of the Water Quality Improvement Plans is to guide the Copermittees' jurisdictional runoff management programs towards achieving the outcome of improved water quality in MS4 discharges and receiving waters. WQIPs requirements are defined in the MS4 Permit provision B.

Waters of the United States Surface bodies of water, including naturally occurring wetlands, streams (perennial, intermittent, and ephemeral (exhibiting bed, bank, and ordinary high water mark)), creeks, rivers, reservoirs, lakes, lagoons, estuaries, harbors, bays and the Pacific Ocean which directly or indirectly receive discharges from storm water conveyance systems. The Copermittee shall determine the definition for wetlands and the limits thereof for the purposes of this definition, which shall be as protective as the Federal definition utilized by the United States Army Corps of Engineers and the United States Environmental Protection Agency. Constructed wetlands are not considered wetlands under this definition, unless the wetlands were constructed as mitigation for habitat loss. Other constructed BMPs are not considered receiving waters under this definition, unless the BMP was originally constructed within the boundaries of the receiving waters. Also see MS4 permit definition.

Watershed Management Area The ten areas defined by the SDRWQCB in Regional MS4 Permit provision B.1, Table B-1. Each Watershed Management Area is defined by one or more Hydrologic Unit, major surface water body, and responsible Copermittee.

Watershed Management Area Analysis (WMAA) For each Watershed Management Area, the Copermittees have the option to perform a WMAA for the purpose of developing watershed-specific requirements for structural BMP implementation. Each WMAA includes: GIS layers developed to provide physical characteristics of the watershed management area, a list of potential offsite alternative compliance projects, and areas exempt from hydromodification management requirements.

Blank Page for 2-sided formatting purposes